

Bit by Bit
كتب فى اللغة الإنجليزية
New Hello!
1st PREP 2024
SECOND TERM
الصف الأول الإعدادي
التعليم العام والأزهري
هدية مجانية
غير مخصصة للبيع
دار غزة
للطبع والنشر والتوزيع
ghazzahouse@gmail.com

Contents

Part 1

National Centre For Examinations & Educational Evaluation (NCEEE) Test Development Dep.

Specifications for First Year Preparatory (2nd term) English Examination (2023-2024)

مواصفات امتحان اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الأول الإعدادى الفصل الدراسى الثانى للعام الدراسى ٢٠٢٣ / ٢٠٢٤

Ministry of Education ELT Counsellor's Office

(Time: 2 Hours) **(24 Marks)**



A Listening 4 Marks

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Students listen to a text from **(25-30)** words. Topics should be from the Set Books. Students listen and answer **FOUR (4)** multiple-choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each.

(One mark each)

B Language Functions 2.5 Marks

2 Complete the following dialogue:

A dialogue of **TEN (10)** exchanges with **FIVE (5)** deletions (3 responses & 2 stimuli) is provided. The students are asked to complete the deletions completely without providing them with any part of the answers. The situation should be provided and clear. The first sentence is given in full. **(Half a mark each)**

C Reading Comprehension 4.5 Marks

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

An unseen text of about **ONE HUNDRED (100)** words is provided. This can be a short story, a factual text, a timetable or a letter. Most lexical items and all structures in the text should be from the Set Books. The students are required to answer **THREE (3)** multiple-choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each (Half a mark each) and **THREE (3)** open-ended questions. **(One mark each)**

These questions should test the following reading comprehension skills:

- **Giving the main idea** **(1 question)**
- **Extracting information** **(2 questions)**
- **Understanding reference** **(1 question)**
- **Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context** **(1 question)**
- **Critical thinking skill** **(1 question)**

D Vocabulary & Structures — 7 Marks

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

TEN (10) multiple-choice questions (**7** vocabulary & **3** structures) based on the Set Books are provided. Students are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given. **(Half a mark each)**

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: **(2 Marks)**

FOUR (4) structure sentences are provided. Students are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets. The given word(s) in brackets could be verbs, adjectives, adverbs... etc. related to what students have studied. **(Half a mark each)**



E Writing — 6 Marks

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on....: **(6 Marks)**

The students are asked to write a paragraph from **SEVENTY FIVE (75) to EIGHTY FIVE (85)** words on a specific topic related to the Set Books.

(One mark for organization — One mark for relevance of ideas — One mark for choice of vocabulary — One mark for spelling — One mark for punctuation — One mark for grammar)

OR

Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words on...: **(6 Marks)**

Students are asked to write an email from **SEVENTY FIVE (75) to EIGHTY FIVE (85)** words on a specific topic related to the Set Books.
Students must write who the email is to and from, as well as the subject of the email. Names and addresses are provided.

(One mark for organization — One mark for relevance of ideas — One mark for choice of vocabulary — One mark for spelling — One mark for punctuation — One mark for grammar)

Email Writing

كيفية الإجابة عن سؤال رسالة البريد الالكترونى



Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words:

- مطلوب من الطالب كتابة رسالة بريد الكترونى (Email) مكون من حوالى ٧٥ إلى ٨٥ كلمة، عن موضوع من موضوعات الكتاب المدرسى.

- على الطالب كتابة البريد الالكترونى للمرسل إليه والراسل وموضوع الرسالة المعطاة له فى السؤال.

تعليمات مهمة للطالب بخصوص الشكل العام لرسالة البريد الالكترونى (Email)

1. نكتب أعلى الصفحة جهة اليسار:

To :	عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه
From :	عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للراسل
Subject :	الموضوع

2. نكتب أسفل منهم (اسم المرسل إليه + Dear) يليها فاصلة (,).
3. اسفل كلمة (Dear) نكتب مقدمة مناسبة.
4. نكتب محتوى رسالة البريد الالكترونى (يمكنك أحيانًا الاستعانة بجمل من السؤال نفسه مع مراعاة تحويل الضمائر).
5. نكتب خاتمة مناسبة.
6. ننهي رسالة البريد الإلكتروني بـ (Yours,) وأسفل منها اسم الراسل.

Useful phrases to use in an email

عبارات مفيدة تستخدم فى كتابة رسالة البريد الالكترونى

- يمكنك أن تستخدم التالى لتبدأ رسالة البريد الالكترونى:

Dear ......,	عزيزى ....
Hi ......,	أهلاً ....
Hello ......,	أهلاً .../مرحبًا....

- يمكنك أن تستخدم التالى لتسأل عن صحة شخص:

How are you?	كيف حالك؟
How are things? / How's life? / How's it going?	كيف تسير الأمور؟

- يمكنك أن تستخدم التالى لتقديم أخبار:

I'd like to tell you about	أود أن اخبرك عن ....
I'm writing to invite you to	اكتب لك لكي أدعوك إلى .....

- يمكنك أن تستخدم التالى للحديث عن المشاعر:

I / We miss you.	إنى أفتقدك / نحن نفتقدك.
I / We hope that you are	أتمنى / نتمنى أن تكون ....
I'm so excited / sad because	إنى متشوق / حزين لأن .....

- يمكنك أن تستخدم التالى للحديث عن المستقبل:

I'm looking forward to	أتطلع إلى ....
I can't wait to	لا أستطيع الإنتظار أن ....

- يمكنك أن تستخدم التالى لتنهى حديثك:

Write soon.	اكتب لى سريعاً.
See you soon.	أراك قريباً.
With my best wishes.	مع أطيب تمنياتي.
Keep in touch.	كن على اتصال.

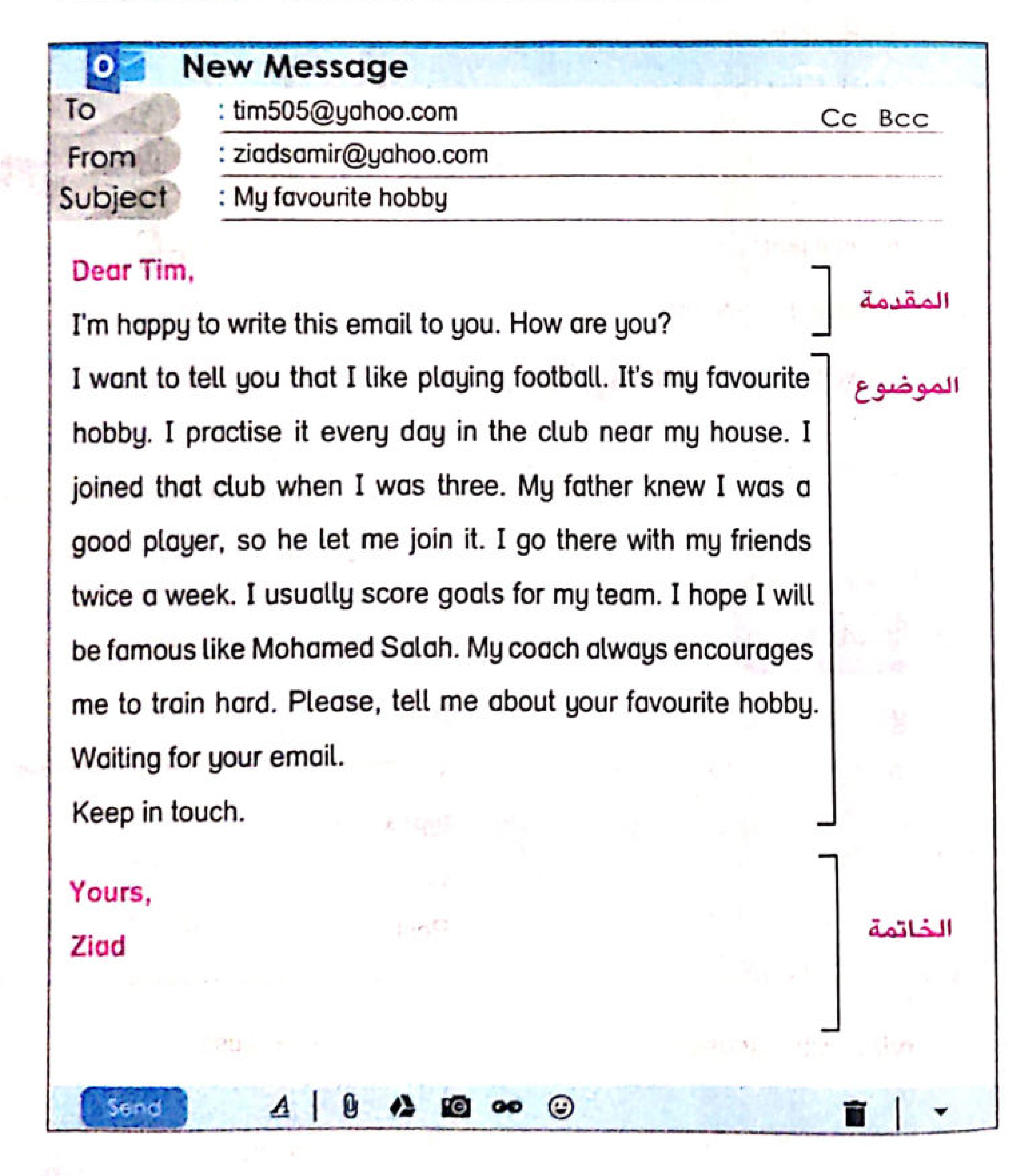
Model question ? موذج السؤال كما يأتى فى الامتحان مع الإجابة النموذجية

Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words:

To your English penfriend, Tim, telling him about your favourite hobby and whe
you practise it.

- Your name is Ziad and your email address is ziadsamir@yahoo.com.

- Your penfriend's email address is tim505@yahoo.com.



New Message

To : tim505@yahoo.com Cc Bcc

From : ziadsamir@yahoo.com

Subject : My favourite hobby

Dear Tim, — المقدمة

I'm happy to write this email to you. How are you?

I want to tell you that I like playing football. It's my favourite hobby. I practise it every day in the club near my house. I joined that club when I was three. My father knew I was a good player, so he let me join it. I go there with my friends twice a week. I usually score goals for my team. I hope I will be famous like Mohamed Salah. My coach always encourages me to train hard. Please, tell me about your favourite hobby. — الموضوع

Waiting for your email.

Keep in touch.

Yours, — الخاتمة

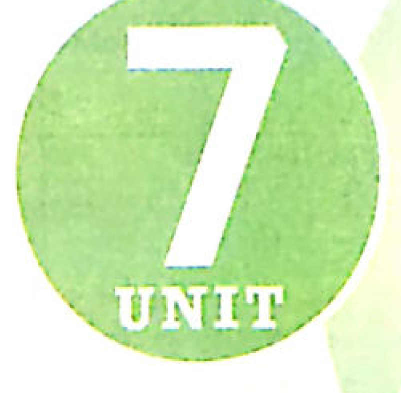
Ziad

Send



Adventure





How was your weekend?

Objectives

Reading:

A diary entry; Robinson Crusoe

Writing:

A diary entry giving your opinion about a fantastic day

Listening:

An interview with a musician

Speaking:

Talking about your weekend; discussing types of music

Language:

Past simple time expressions; questions review; responding to past events with although or because

Life Skills:

Making decisions



Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 2-5 WB pages 70-71

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات فى ملحق الكتاب



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

aquarium	معرض أحياء مائية	restaurant	مطعم
planetarium	مبنى القبة السماوية	bowling alley*	صالة البولينج
sports centre	مركز رياضي	nervous	متوتر
shopping centre	مركز تسوق	exhibition	معرض
funfair	مدينة ملاهى	canteen	مقصف (كانتين)
football stadium	ستاد كرة قدم	dolphin	سمكة الدولفين
museum	متحف	beach	شاطئ

Vocabulary

wheel	عجلة دوارة (فى الملاهى)	together	معًا
whale	حوت	fun	متعة - ممتع
the Earth	كوكب الأرض	swimming pool	حمام سباحة
café	مقهى	statue	تمثال
diary	مفكرة (يوميات)	salad (s)	سلطة/أنواع السلطات
school uniform	زي مدرسي موحد	arrive (d)	يصل
quite	إلى حدٍ ما/ إلى حد كبير	move (d)	ينتقل/يتحرك
fantastic	رائع	hope (d)	يأمل
shark	سمكة القرش	cook (ed)	يطهو/يطبخ
area	منطقة		

Expressions & Prepositions

Let's + inf.	هيا بنا..	move house	ينتقل لمنزل جديد (يعزِّل)
go swimming	يذهب للسباحة	on the other side	على الجانب الآخر
go shopping	يذهب للتسوق	ride on a wheel	يركب عجلة دوارة
go bowling	يلعب لعبة البولينج	on my birthday	فى عيد ميلادى
take a bus	يستقل أتوبيس	help...with...	يساعد ... في ....
(be) called	يُسمى/يُدعى	frightened of	مرعوب من
aged five	بالغ من العمر خمس سنوات	good at	جيد فى

have a haircut	يحصل على قصة شعر	at the end of...	في نهاية...
have a fantastic weekend	يقضي عطلة نهاية أسبوع رائعة	look at	ينظر إلى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يوجد تجميع لأهم الأفعال غير المنتظمة في آخر الكتاب

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
learn	يتعلم	learned / learnt	learned / learnt
bear	تلد	bore	born
ride	يركب	rode	ridden
win	يفوز	won	won
take	يستقل (مركبة)/يستغرق(وقت)/يأخذ	took	taken
teach	يُعلم/يُدرس	taught	taught

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
nervous	متوتر	worried	calm	هادئ
great	رائع	good	bad	سيئ
friendly	ودود	nice	unfriendly	غير ودود
exciting	مثير	interesting	boring	ممل

Definitions

aquarium	معرض أحياء مائية	an indoor[1] centre where you can look at sea animals and fish living in water
bowling alley	صالة البولينج	a place where you can go bowling
canteen	مقصف (كانتين)	a dining room in an office, building[2] or school
museum	متحف	a building to keep and display[3] important things from the past
nervous	متوتر	worried or frightened[4] about something
sports centre	مركز رياضي	a place where you can do sports indoors
stadium	ستاد رياضي	a place where you can play or watch sports matches
planetarium	مبنى القبة السماوية	an indoor centre where you can learn about stars and planets[5]
funfair	مدينة ملاهي	a park with fun[6] rides[7] and games

١- داخلي
٢- مبنى
٣- يعرض
٤- خائف
٥- كواكب
٦- ممتع
٧- ألعاب في الملاهي

Language Notes

1 • go + (ing activities)

• go + (ing activities)

- تستخدم **(go)** مع الرياضات والأنشطة التى تنتهى بـ **(-ing)** :

- go bowling يلعب البولينج	- go fishing يذهب للصيد
- go swimming يذهب للسباحة	- go shopping يذهب للتسوق

Ex. I go swimming every Friday.

Ex. Mum goes shopping at the weekend.

go shopping/do the shopping

- لاحظ أنه إذا سبقت **shopping** أداة التعريف **(the)** يستخدم معها الفعل **(do)**

Ex. Mum does the shopping at the weekend.

2 like

- يأتى بعد الفعل **(like)** فعلاً مضافاً له **-ing** أو **(to + inf.)** أو اسم **(n)** :

Ex. He likes (playing) games.

Ex. I like to read short stories.

- لاحظ شكل **(be)** بعد **like** :like to be/ like being

Ex. Ali likes being outside.

3 • call • called / (be) called

- يستخدم فعل **(call)** بمعنى ينادي/يتصل هاتفياً:

Ex. Salma calls her father at work every day.

- تستخدم **(called)** أو **(be) called** بمعنى المسمى/المدعو:

Ex. I met a boy called Farid.

Ex. This girl is called Rawan.

4 take

- يمكن للفعل **(take)** أن يأتى بأكثر من معنى حسب سياق الجملة:

It takes / took (ضمير مفعول) + وقت + to + inf.

Ex. It will take two hours to answer the test.

• take يركب (مواصلة) / يلتقط (صورة) / يأخذ / يستغرق (وقتاً)

Ex. He takes the bus to school.

Ex. I took many photos at the zoo yesterday.

Ex. She takes her shopping bag to the market.

5) quite / quiet

• **quite (adv)** تمامًا/إلى حد ما

Ex. At the weekend, I am usually quite lazy.

• **quiet (adj)** هادئ

Ex. Please, be quiet in the lesson.

6) • a lot of • a lot

• **a lot of** كثير من (عدد/كمية) •

Ex. A lot of people watched the match.

Ex. There was a lot of rain last week.

• **a lot (adv) = very much** كثيرًا: تأتى فى الغالب في نهاية الجملة ولا يأتى بعدها اسم أبدًا. •

Ex. I like basketball a lot.

Check on Language Notes ✓

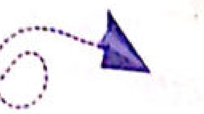
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mona .... shopping last Sunday.
   a. did b. went c. took d. made
2. How often do you go ....?
   a. swimming b. swims c. to swimming d. swim
3. Fatma .... the shopping with her mother every Friday.
   a. makes b. goes c. does d. plays
4. Hamdy .... his friends to invite them to his birthday party.
   a. is called b. called c. be called d. was called
5. How long does it .... you to finish this test?
   a. take b. keep c. spend d. pass
6. The food is .... good.
   a. quite b. quit c. quick d. quiet
7. In English class we learned ....
   a. lot b. lots c. a lot d. a lot of



Reading

SB Page (2)

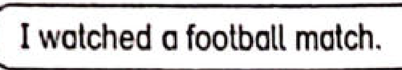




استمع إلى النصوص



Ziad: What did you do last weekend[1]?

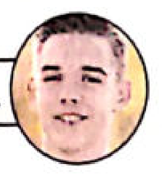




I watched a football match.



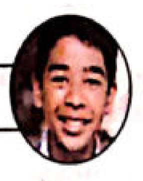
I rode on a big wheel[2].



I saw an exhibition*[3] about dolphins[4].



I looked at the stars[5].



I went bowling[6].



I played tennis.

١- عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
٢- عجلة دوارة
٣- معرض
٤- سمك الدولفين
٥- نجوم
٦- البولينج



- **bowling alley**
  ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل نطق الجزء الملون من كلمة (sit).
- **exhibition**
  ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل صوت (إكس) مع عدم نطق حرف (h)

SB Page (4)



Adam's diary



Sunday 8th May

Yesterday our family moved to[1] our new house in Alexandria. It took[2] three hours to drive from our old house in Cairo.

Monday 9th May

This morning, Mum and I went shopping[3] to buy a new school uniform[4] for me. I hope students are friendly[5] in my new school!

١- ينتقل إلى (يعزّل)
٢- إستغرق
٣- ذهبنا للتسوق
٤- زي مدرسي
٥- ودود

Tuesday 10th May

Today I went to my new school. I was quite nervous[6], but I sat next to a boy called[7] Sami and he was friendly. We had lunch together in the school canteen[8].

Monday 16th May

What a fantastic weekend! I went to Sami's house on Saturday and we played football in the park[9]. I don't usually like football, but all his brothers wanted to play. It was a lot of fun! On Sunday, Mum helped me with my homework. Then Dad and I went to the sports centre[10]. It is great[11], there is a really big swimming pool[12].

٦- متوتر
٧- يُدعى/يُسمى
٨- مقصف (كانتين)
٩- متنزة
١٠- مركز رياضي
١١- رائع
١٢- حمام سباحة

WB Page (71)

Nahla's diary



I had a fantastic[1] weekend! It was my friend Dalia's birthday[2] and her family took us to some exciting[3] places. In the morning, we went to the funfair[4]. I didn't go on the big wheel but I enjoyed my time there. In the afternoon, we visited a museum[5]. We saw some very old statues*[6]. I remembered all the things that our teacher taught us in history[7]! In the evening, I ate at Dalia's house and I came home very late!

١- رائع
٢- عيد ميلاد
٣- مثير
٤- مدينة الملاهي
٥- متحف
٦- تماثيل
٧- تاريخ



* statue ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل نطق كلمة (shoe) تماماً.

WB Page (71)

Dad likes sports. He is very good at[1] swimming. Mum loves cooking[2]. Her salads[3] are delicious![4] Ismail likes being outside[5] and he doesn't like the city. Ismail's sister is five. She likes making things.

١- جيد في
٢- الطهي
٣- أنواع السلطات
٤- لذيذ
٥- بالخارج

Audioscript SB Page (3)



Dina: It was my birthday last Saturday, so I went to the museum with my mum and sister, and we saw some old statues. We learned a lot. In the evening I wanted to go to the funfair but my brother wanted to go to his favourite restaurant[1]. I love my brother so we went to the restaurant. We went there four months ago for his birthday too! And two days ago, on Sunday we went to the planetarium*[2] but it was closed. So we took a bus to the aquarium*[3] on the other side of town. It was fantastic, I saw a shark[4]!



١- مطعم
٢- مبنى القبة السماوية
٣- معرض أحياء مائية
٤- سمكة قرش



* planetarium / aquarium

ينطق حرف (a) فى هذه الكلمات مثل نطقه فى كلمة square

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. You can see sharks and dolphins at the .... (المنيا أبو قرقاص 2023)
   a. funfair b. museum c. planetarium d. aquarium
2. We decided to play basketball at the sports .... (مصر 2023)
   a. match b. shop c. funfair d. centre
3. Let's go on the big wheel at the ...... this weekend! (WB) (اجا 2023)
   a. aquarium b. museum c. planetarium d. funfair
4. We learn a lot about the Earth and the moon at the .... (WB)
   a. bowling alley b. aquarium
   c. planetarium d. football stadium
5. I .... on the big wheel. (المنيا أبو قرقاص 2023)
   a. saw b. rode c. did d. heard
6. Yesterday, I went to my new school. I was quite .... because it was my first day. (العمرانية 2023)
   a. expensive b. nervous c. dangerous d. funny

7. It was great at the .... My team won 2-0! WB

a. museum b. football stadium c. canteen d. theatre

8. A/An .... is a dining room in an office, building or school. SB

a. canteen b. stadium c. museum d. aquarium

9. The balls at the .... are heavy. WB

a. aquarium b. museum c. bowling alley d. theatre

10. I saw a / an .... about dolphins. SB

a. planetarium b. canteen c. exhibition d. bowling

11. I had a / an .... two weeks ago. My hair was so long.

a. statue b. meal c. haircut d. activity

12. My weekend was .... I enjoyed it very much.

a. bad b. fantastic c. boring d. terrible

Bit by Bit Exercises

13. We swam in the sea and played on the .... in Alexandria.

a. beach b. diary c. statue d. wheel

14. We saw old statues at the ....

a. funfair b. museum c. café d. canteen

15. This girl .... Rahaf.

a. call b. calling c. be called d. is called

16. It took an hour .... the test.

a. finish b. finished c. to finish d. to finishing

17. Mum always helps me .... my homework.

a. with b. on c. at d. above

18. .... live in seas.

a. Dolphins b. Goats c. Birds d. Monkeys

19. There are fantastic paintings at the ....

a. sports centre b. funfair c. aquarium d. exhibition

20. I had lunch at a big .... in Giza.

a. dish b. cooker c. restaurant d. menu

21. I went .... with my mum last week.

a. shops b. shopping c. the shopping d. a shop



Past time expressions

1- Revise the past simple tense راجع زمن الماضي البسيط

Form التكوين

→ Subject (كل الضمائر) فاعل + التصريف الثاني للفعل

الأفعال المنتظمة: هي الأفعال التي يتكون منها الماضي بإضافة (ed) لآخر الفعل

work → worked walk → walked

- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) نضيف (d) فقط للفعل

like → liked dance → danced

- إذا انتهى الفعل بـ حرف ساكن ثم حرف y نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (ied)

study → studied carry → carried

- إذا انتهى الفعل بـ حرف متحرك ثم حرف y نضيف (ed) بدون أي تغيير

stay → stayed play → played

- يضاعف الحرف الأخير في بعض الأفعال عند إضافة (ed)

stop → stopped travel → travelled

الأفعال غير المنتظمة: هي الأفعال التي لا يضاف لها ed في الماضي وتحفظ كما هي

go → went eat → ate do → did

am / is → was are → were have / has → had

Usage الاستخدام

- يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن فعل تم وانتهى في الماضي:

Ex. We met a famous footballer yesterday.

Ex. Once, there was a fire in our street.

- يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط لسرد أحداث وقعت وانتهت في الماضي:

Ex. Yesterday I got up early, had breakfast and went to school.

Affirmative الاثبات

Ex. We climbed a mountain yesterday. Ex. I played games last week.

Negative النفي

- بشكل عام يحول الماضي البسيط للنفي باستخدام (didn't) مع تحويل الفعل للمصدر.

→ Subject + didn't + inf.مصدر الفعل

Ex. I didn't visit my family. Ex. He didn't eat fish.

- يمكن استخدام (never) بدلاً من (didn't) ويأتي بعدها الفعل في زمن الماضي البسيط.

→ Subject + never + الفعل في الماضي البسيط

Ex. Khalid never went to Aswan.



السؤال بـ "هل...؟"

→ Did + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل...?

Ex. Did she ride her bike?

وللإجابة المختصرة نقول:

- Yes, she did. - No, she didn't.

السؤال بكلمة استفهام (Wh-)

→ كلمة استفهام + did + فاعل + inf....?

Ex. A: What did you do yesterday? B: We went to the funfair.

Notes

١. يمكن استخدام فعل (be) في السؤال كفعل أساسي باستخدام (was / were) كالتالي:

يستخدم فعل (be) للسؤال عن اسم أو صفة، ونستخدم (Did) للسؤال عن فعل

Ex. Was Hany a doctor?

Ex. Were they late?

وللإجابة المختصرة نقول:

- Yes, they were. - No, they weren't.

be	present	simple past
I	am	was
he - she - it	is	was
you - we - they	are	were

٢. نستخدم فعل (have) في السؤال كفعل أساسي ونسأل عنه بـ (did):

Ex. Did you have a bike in the past?

- Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

٣. كلمة (and) تربط جملتين فى نفس الزمن (ماضي بسيط).

Ex. I went to the market and bought many things.

2- Past time expressions التعبيرات الدالة على زمن الماضى

- تستخدم الكلمات الزمنية التالية مع زمن الماضي البسيط لتحديد زمن حدوث الفعل:

yesterday	أمس	once	ذات مرة
in the past	فى الماضي	once upon a time	ذات مرة (لسرد قصة)
in (2010)	فى عام (٢٠١٠)	...ago	منذ .... (يأتي قبلها فترة زمنية)
last...	... السابق	this morning	هذا الصباح

Ex. I visited the museum last night.

Ex. We bought a car four years ago.

Exercises on Language

- يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلي في ملحق الكتاب

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. Hany .... some new shoes last Saturday. WB
   a. buys b. bought c. is buying d. buy
2. Nahla .... a fantastic weekend last month. WB
   a. has b. have c. having d. had
3. What time did you arrive ....? WB
   a. now b. tomorrow c. yesterday d. ago
4. I .... went to the aquarium a year ago. SB
   a. last b. next c. ago d. yesterday
5. It's January now. It was December .... month. WB
   a. ago b. next c. last d. in
6. Ahmed had lunch with his family .... الجيزة/ أوسيم 2023
   a. tomorrow b. yesterday c. now d. next month
7. They .... the sports centre two weeks ago. العمرانية 2023
   a. visited b. visits c. visiting d. visit
8. Where .... you last Friday? الحسينية 2023
   a. did b. were c. are d. was
9. He .... the bus to the city last Sunday. الإسكندرية 2023
   a. takes b. take c. took d. taking
10. I .... a football match two days ago. المنيا أبو قرقاص 2023
    a. play b. played c. plays d. playing
11. Ahmed: Did you have a tablet? دسوق 2022
    Osama: Yes, I .... one.
    a. had b. did c. was d. has

Bit by Bit Exercises

12. A: .... you ready for yesterday's exam? B: Yes, sure.
    a. Were b. Did c. Could d. Do
13. The students went to the funfair .... week.
    a. in b. next c. ago d. last
14. Ali was very thirsty, so he .... all the juice.
    a. didn't drink b. drank c. drinks d. drinking

15. I .... buy anything from this shop last night.
    a. don't   b. didn't   c. won't   d. wasn't
16. What time .... he get up last Monday?
    a. does   b. do   c. is   d. did
17. Last week, I .... to London on holiday.
    a. go   b. went   c. goes   d. am going
18. .... Ramy at the aquarium yesterday?
    a. Was   b. Did   c. Is   d. Does
19. I went shopping with my Grandad ....
    a. next week   b. yesterday   c. in 2025   d. now
20. **A:** When .... Fatma move house?   **B:** Last month.
    a. do   b. will   c. does   d. did

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Exams

1. Adam did his homework an hour .... (age). SB
2. He .... (driving) to Alex with his family last Saturday. SB
3. Hassan .... (move) to Cairo ten years ago. WB
4. My uncle bought a car .... (tomorrow). 2023
5. .... (Do) you go to the park yesterday? 2023
6. Yesterday, it .... (were) my friend Dalia's birthday. 2023
7. I last .... (go) to the concert in 2010. 2023

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. We .... (arrive) early and caught the bus.
9. .... (Were) Maged early for work?
10. I .... (ride) on the big wheel last week.

Speaking

1 Talking about your weekend

-الحديث عن عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الخاصة بك

Questions	Response
- What did you do last weekend? ماذا فعلت فى العطلة الأسبوعية الماضية؟	- I watched a football match. شاهدت مباراة كرة قدم.
- Where did you go last weekend? أين ذهبت فى العطلة الأسبوعية الماضية؟	- I went to the funfair. ذهبت إلى مدينة الملاهى.

2 Ask and answer questions about past events

- السؤال والإجابة عن أحداث فى الماضى:

Questions	Response
- When did you have breakfast? متى تناولت الإفطار؟	- I had breakfast this morning. تناولته هذا الصباح.
- When did you meet your best friend? متى قابلت صديقك المفضل؟	- I met my best friend yesterday. قابلته أمس.
- When was Dina's birthday? متى كان عيد ميلاد دينا؟	- It was in October. كان فى شهر أكتوبر.

General Exercises on Lessons 1& 2



1 Complete the following dialogue:

إدارة شرق المنصورة 2023

Ahmed and Karim are talking about weekends:

Ahmed : What did you do last weekend, Karim?

Karim : ❶ ....

Ahmed : Wow! The funfair! ❷ ....?

Karim : I rode on the big wheel.

Ahmed : ❸ ....?

Karim : The ticket is 10 pounds.

Ahmed : Great! What else did you do there?

Karim : ❹ ....

Ahmed : Can I come with you next time?

Karim : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. My family went to the .... and looked at the stars. أجميم 2023

   a. stadium b. planetarium c. museum d. aquarium

2. The best place to buy a new pair of shoes is the ....

   a. bowling alley b. aquarium c. shopping centre d. beach

3. Her father cooks great food at a famous .... WB

   a. restaurant b. library c. football stadium d. museum

4. A/An .... is a place where you can play or watch sports matches. SB

a. aquarium b. funfair c. museum d. stadium

Language

5. It's Wednesday today, so it was Tuesday .... WB

a. yesterday b. this morning c. tomorrow d. next week

6. What did you do .... weekend? WB

a. next b. ago c. last d. now

7. I was born .... 2010. الإسماعيلية 2023

a. at b. on c. in d. by

8. My brother arrived home ten minutes .... قنا - قفط 2022

a. ago b. past c. last d. yesterday

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Mervat .... (is) nervous when she missed the bus.
2. Samy .... (doesn't) do his homework yesterday.
3. What .... (do) you see last week? الوحدة الجديدة 2022
4. He .... (doesn't) at school yesterday. قنا 2022
5. Omar .... (enjoy) his time at the museum yesterday.

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: أخميم 2023

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Your last weekend"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **How was your last weekend?**
- **What did you do?**
- **What places did you go to?**
- **How did you feel?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **I had a fantastic weekend!**
- **It was my friend's birthday.**
- **His / Her family took us to ....**
- **In the morning, we went to ....**
- **We saw ....**
- **I came back home very late!**

Lessons 3 & 4



يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات فى ملحق الكتاب

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

musician	موسيقار	nearby (adj)	قريب - مجاور
sailor	بحار	alone	بمفرده - وحده
cave	كهف	coconut	جوز الهند
terrible	فظيع/سئ جدا	sink (sank / sunk) / (n)	يغرق/يغوص - حوض
jungle	أدغال (غابة كثيفة)		
diary	مفكرة/يوميات		

Types of music

jazz music	موسيقى الجاز	opera music	موسيقى الأوبرا
rock music	موسيقى الروك	classical music	الموسيقى الكلاسيكية
pop music	موسيقى البوب	traditional music	الموسيقى التقليدية

Vocabulary

interview	مقابلة شخصية	without	بدون
interviewer	المحاور (مدير الحوار)	although	بالرغم من
sound	صوت (شئ)	wet	مبلل
voice	صوت (إنسان)	warm	دافئ
What type of...?	ما نوع...؟	rocks	صخور
band	فرقة موسيقية	shape	شكل
adventure story	قصة مغامرة	prefer (red)	يفضل
island	جزيرة	happen (ed)	يَحدُث
storm	عاصفة	play (ed)	يعزف (موسيقى)/يلعب
dead	ميت	stress (ed)	يضغط/يشدد الصوت
the trumpet	البوق (آلة موسيقية)		

Expressions & Prepositions

have different opinions	لهم آراء مختلفة	good for	مفيد لـ
It's difficult to + inf.	من الصعب أن ...	look for	يبحث عن
play the piano	يعزف على البيانو	by bus	بالأتوبيس
like ... best	يحب ... كثيراً	a story by ...	قصة كتبها ...
work on a boat / a ship	يعمل على قارب/سفينة	at the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
all over the world	في كل أنحاء العالم	on the island	على الجزيرة

make sure	يتأكد	on the beach	على الشاطئ
		walk along...	يمشى بطول ...
		walk through...	يمشى خلال ...

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يوجد تجميع لأهم الأفعال غير المنتظمة في آخر الكتاب

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
sink	يغرق	sank	sunk
find	يجد	found	found
think	يعتقد/يفكر	thought	thought
write	يؤلف (موسيقى)/يكتب	wrote	written
rise	يرتفع/يعلو	rose	risen
fall	يسقط/ينخفض	fell	fallen
get up	يستيقظ	got up	got up

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
terrible	سيئ/فظيع	horrible	nice	لطيف
nearby	قريب - مجاور	close	far	بعيد
alone	وحيدا	single	together	معًا

Definitions

alone	بمفرده - وحده	not with other people
coconut	جوز الهند	large brown[1] nuts[2] that grow on palm trees[3]
sailor	بحّار	someone who sails[4] or works on a boat or ship
terrible	فظيع/سيئ جدًا	very bad
sink (n)	حوض	something in a kitchen we wash dishes in
sink (v)	يغرق/يغوص	go down into water
traditional	تقليدي	using ideas or ways that people first used a long time ago
jazz	موسيقى الجاز	a type of music first played by black Americans
classical music	الموسيقى الكلاسيكية	a type of serious[5] music by people like Mozart and Bach
opera	موسيقى الأوبرا	a type of music where actors[6] sing the words of a story
pop music	موسيقى البوب	a type of popular music
rock music	موسيقى الروك	a type of popular music usually played with electric[7] guitars

١- بنى اللون
٢- ثمار جوز/بندق
٣- أشجار النخيل
٤- يُبحر
٥- جاد
٦- ممثلون
٧- كهربى

Language Notes

1) • dead • death • die

• **dead (adj)** ميت

Ex. Crusoe found a dead fish on the beach.

• **death (n)** الموت

Ex. The death of Hamdy's mother made him so sad.

• **die (v.d)** يموت

Ex. She died at an early age.

2) • alone • lonely

• **alone** بمفرده

Ex. You shouldn't leave a child alone in the house.

• **lonely** شاعر بالوحدة

Ex. Although I know a lot of people, I feel lonely.

3) • learn • teach

• **learn + to + inf.** يتعلم أن

Ex. When did you learn to play the trumpet?

• **learn + noun** يتعلم (لغة مثلاً)

Ex. Amira will learn English at school.

• **teach + noun** يُعلِّم - يدرِّس

Ex. Mr Osama teaches maths.

• **teach + object مفعول + to + inf** يُعلِّم... أن...

Ex. Karim's dad taught him to drive.

4) • prefer • would ('d) prefer

• **prefer + v-ing / n .... to + v-ing / n** يفضل شئ على شئ آخر

Ex. I prefer watching TV to playing.

Ex. Salim prefers tennis to basketball.

• **would ('d) prefer to + inf ....** يفضل أن (يفعل شئ)

Ex. She'd prefer to cook rice.

5 • nearby • near

• **nearby** قريب : صفة تأتى قبل الاسم.

Ex. My friend Ahmed lives in a nearby village.

Don't say : He lives in a near village. ×××

• **near** (my - the) قريب : حرف جر يأتى بعده الاسم مسبوق بـ

Ex. The bank is near my house/the park.

6 arrive (in - at)

• **arrive in** يصل مكان كبير (مدينة/دولة)

Ex. We arrived in Cairo late.

• **arrive at** يصل مكان صغير (مبنى)

Ex. We arrived at school on time.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She is sad because of her husband's ---------.
   a. death b. died c. dead d. die
2. Her son is away and she feels ---------.
   a. alone b. line c. only d. lonely
3. Mr Hossam --------- music at school.
   a. cooks b. teaches c. builds d. watches
4. They'd prefer --------- Alexandria.
   a. visit b. visiting c. visited d. to visit
5. Crusoe swam to a --------- island.
   a. behind b. under c. nearby d. near
6. I arrived --------- the airport yesterday.
   a. in b. on c. at d. of

Audioscript SB Page (6)



استمع إلى النصوص

Interviewer : Marvin Allstar is a famous musician[1]. He writes[2] songs and plays[3] in a band[4]. Hello, Marvin, what type[5] of music do you like?

Marvin : Hello. Well, I like jazz*music[6] best. I play the trumpet[7] in a jazz band.

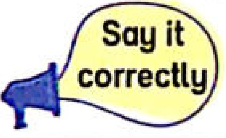
Interviewer : The trumpet? When did you learn to play the trumpet?

Marvin : Oh, when I was about 12. I learned the piano first when I was four, and I moved on to[8] the trumpet at 12. I like the sound of the trumpet.

Interviewer : Amazing! Do you like pop music[9]?

Marvin : No, I don't, and I don't like rock music[10]. But I quite like [11] traditional music[12].

١- موسيقار
٢- يؤلف
٣- يعزف
٤- فرقة موسيقية
٥- نوع
٦- موسيقى الجاز
٧- آلة البوق
٨- ينتقل الى
٩- موسيقى البوب
١٠- موسيقى الروك
١١- أحب إلى حد كبير
١٢- موسيقى تقليدية/قديمة



* jazz — لاحظ أن حرف (j) فى هذه الكلمة ينطق مثل صوت (د چ).



Robinson Crusoe



Robinson Crusoe is an adventure story[1] by Daniel Defoe. Robinson Crusoe was a sailor[2]. One day his ship sank[3] because there was a really terrible[4] storm. Crusoe swam to a nearby[5] island*, but there were no other people there. Crusoe wrote a diary[6] of what happened to him on the island.

18th December

I arrived on the island four days ago. Today I walked along the beach again, but I saw nobody and I think I am alone[7]. This afternoon I found a dead[8] fish and ate it but it was not nice. Although I am hungry, I don't want to eat another dead fish!

١-قصة مغامرة
٢-بحّار
٣-يغرق/يغوص
٤-فظيع/سيئ جدًا
٥-قريب
٦-يوميات
٧-بمفردى
٨-ميتة

Say it correctly

* island — لاحظ أن حرف (s) فى هذه الكلمة لا ينطق.

19th December

I found a coconut[9] on the beach today. It was delicious. It rained last night and I was cold and wet, so today I went to look for a cave[10]. I want a warm place to sleep. I walked through a jungle[11] and there were some rocks, but no caves.

20th December

I found a cave!!

٩- ثمرة جوز الهند
١٠- كهف
١١- غابة كثيفة

Videoscript

SB Page (6)



There are lots of different styles[1] of music such as classical, jazz and opera. Did you know that people first watched the famous opera Aida,[2] by Giuseppe Verdi, in Cairo in 1871?

You can often hear music at weddings[3] and other celebrations[4].

Egypt also has a lot of traditional music. You can hear it from Alexandria to Aswan.

In traditional music, you can hear instruments[5] like drums[6] and the ney[7]. The ney is a type of flute[8].

Another traditional instrument is the qanun[9]. This is a string instrument[10] that you play with your fingers. You can also hear the violin[11] and the oud[12]. The oud is similar to[13] the guitar, but it usually has more strings[14].

You can also hear these instruments in many other countries.

Do you like music? What styles of music do you like?

١- أساليب/أنماط
٢- أوبرا عايدة
٣- حفلات الزفاف
٤- احتفالات
٥- آلات
٦- الطبول
٧- الناي
٨- المزمار
٩- آلة القانون
١٠- آلة وترية
١١- آلة الكمان
١٢- آلة العود
١٣- مشابه لـ
١٤- أوتار

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. A .... is someone who works on a boat or ship. WB 2023
   a. seller b. musician c. sailor d. dentist
2. .... are large brown nuts that grow on palm trees. WB
   a. Coconuts b. Melons c. Apples d. Cucumbers
3. I didn't like this story. I thought the writing was .... WB 2023
   a. clear b. brave c. annoyed d. terrible
4. The ship .... because there was a terrible storm. WB 2023
   a. flew b. sailed c. drove d. sank
5. Do you like working with other people, or do you prefer to work ....? WB
   a. lonely b. alone c. only d. not

6. Crusoe wrote a .... of what happened to him on the island. بنا 2023

   a. dairy b. daily c. day d. diary

7. Jazz is a type of .... البحيرة 2023

   a. subject b. material c. music d. metal

8. My grandfather likes .... music. He usually listens to old songs. الشرقية 2022

   a. funny b. modern c. traditional d. new

9. I like ...., but it's difficult to open them. قنا 2023

   a. bananas b. apples c. oranges d. coconuts

10. The .... is a musical instrument بنا 2022

   a. trumpet b. tablet c. laptop d. mobile phone

Bit by Bit Exercises

11. Some wild animals sleep in .... in the desert.

   a. tents b. caves c. beds d. streets

12. A/An .... is someone who plays music as a job.

   a. sailor b. architect c. farmer d. musician

13. There are too many trees in the ....

   a. jungle b. sky c. cave d. sea

14. It's not safe to leave a child .... at home.

   a. abroad b. dead c. popular d. alone

15. The ship sailed to a .... island because there was a storm.

   a. near b. silly c. nearby d. finally

16. Robinson Crusoe lived .... an island.

   a. on b. out c. with d. about



Types of questions

• يوجد في اللغة الإنجليزية نوعان من الأسئلة:

1- Yes / No Questions

- هي الأسئلة التي تبدأ بفعل مساعد أو ناقص، ويجاب عنها بـ (Yes) أو (No).

Am / Is / Are / Was / Were Do / Does / Did Will / Can / Must / Should ....etc. فعل مساعد أو ناقص	+	Subject الفاعل	+	Verb الفعل	..........?

Ex. Did you go to the park? Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

Ex. Are you happy? Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.

2- Wh- questions

- هي الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمات الاستفهام.

Question word كلمة إستفهام + am / is / are / was / were, do / does / did, will / can / must / should ....etc. فعل مساعد أو ناقص + Subject الفاعل + Verb الفعل ....?

Ex. What music does he like?

- He likes pop music.

Question words

What	ما/ماذا (للأشياء)	What colour	ما لون
Where	أين (للمكان)	What subject	ما المادة الدراسية
Who	من (للأشخاص)	What type / kind	ما نوع
Whose	لمن (للسؤال عن الملكية)	How many	كم العدد
When	متى (للزمن)	How long	ما المدة/طول (مسافة)
Why	لماذا (للسبب)	How heavy	ما وزن
Which	أيهما (للتخيير)	How much	ما ثمن/كم كمية
How	كيف (للطريقة/للحال)	How often	كم عدد المرات
What class	ما الصف الدراسى	How far	كم يبعد (للمسافة)
What time	ما الوقت	How old	ما (للعمر)
What price	ما ثمن	How tall	ما (للطول)



١- إذا كانت الإجابة تتضمن فعل مضافاً له (s / es / ies) تستخدم (does) كفعل مساعد فى السؤال:

A: How often does he go to school late?

B: He never goes to school late.

أما إذا كانت الإجابة تتضمن فعل بالمصدر فتستخدم (do) كفعل مساعد:

A: How often do you visit your grandad? **B:** I visit him every week.

وإذا كانت الإجابة تتضمن فعل فى الماضى البسيط تستخدم (did) كفعل مساعد:

A: Where did he go yesterday?

B: He went to the aquarium.

٢- تذكر أن (are you) فى السؤال تتحول إلى (I am / We are) فى الإجابة:

A: What are you doing?

B: I am studying.

OR B: We are studying.

٣- تذكر أن (were you) فى السؤال تتحول إلى (I was / We were) فى الإجابة:

A: Where were you yesterday?

B: I was in Giza.

OR B: We were in Giza.

٤- نسأل عن فعل يمتلك (have / has) مثل باقي الأفعال بـ (do / does) بمعنى (هل تمتلك....؟)

Ex. Do you have a car?

- Yes, I have a car. للإجابة الكاملة / - Yes, I do. للإجابة المختصرة

- No, I don't have a car. إجابة كاملة / - No, I don't. للإجابة في النفي

Ex. Does he have a car?

- Yes, he has a car. وللإجابة الكاملة نقول: - Yes, he does. وللإجابة المختصرة:

- No, he doesn't have a car. إجابة كاملة - No, he doesn't. وللإجابة في النفي:

٥- يمكن أن نسأل عن الملكية أيضًا بـ:

Have you / they got ....?
Has he / she got ....?

Ex. Have you got a new house?

Ex. Has he got a new house?

	إجابة مختصرة	إجابة كاملة
إثبات	- Yes, I have. - Yes, he has.	- Yes, I have got a new house. - Yes, he has got a new house.
نفي	- No, I haven't. - No, he hasn't.	- No, I haven't got a new house. - No, he hasn't got a new house.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. **A:** .... time is it? **B:** It is quarter past ten. SB
   a. What b. Where c. How d. When
2. **A:** .... do you come to school?
   B: I come to school by bus. WB
   a. What b. How c. Where d. When
3. **A:** .... you like classical music? **B:** No, I don't. SB
   a. Are b. Have c. Do d. Did
4. **A:** When .... go to the sports centre? SB
   B: I went there four days ago.
   a. you do b. do you c. you did d. did you
5. **A:** .... you like jazz? WB
   B: No, I don't like jazz, but I like pop.
   a. Are b. Will c. Did d. Do
6. **A:** Have you got a new jacket? **B:** No, I .... SB
   a. don't b. doesn't c. am not d. haven't
7. **A:** .... do you go to school? **B:** At half past seven. WB
   a. When b. What c. Where d. How
8. .... you visit your uncle ? -Yes, we visited him yesterday.
   a. Do b. Did c. Does d. Are
9. **A:** Can you play chess? **B:** No, I ....
   a. do b. can c. can't d. would
10. **A:** How .... do you play football? **B:** Twice a week.
    a. many b. often c. long d. much

Bit by Bit Exercises

11. **A:** What .... she do? **B:** She read a story.
    a. do b. does c. did d. is
12. .... Farah go to school tomorrow?
    a. Will b. Does c. Is d. Was
13. Why .... you get up late yesterday?
    a. do b. did c. does d. were
14. **A:** .... schoolbag is this? **B:** It's my schoolbag.
    a. Who b. When c. Where d. Whose

15. .... helps you with your homework?
   a. Where   b. Whose   c. Who   d. Why
16. **A:** Can you run fast?   **B:** Yes, I ....
   a. can't   b. have   c. am   d. can
17. **A:** Are you ready for your exams?   **B:** Yes, I ....
   a. are   b. is   c. am   d. was
18. **A:** .... did you spend your holiday?
   B: I spent it in Alexandria.
   a. Where   b. When   c. Who   d. Whose
19. .... you visit Luxor last year?
   a. Did   b. Were   c. Are   d. Do

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

WB & Exams

1. .... (Do) you taller than your brothers and sisters? WB
2. **A:** Do you have any sisters?   **B:** Yes, I .... (have). ملوف 2022
3. **A:** Can you play the piano?   **B:** Yes, I .... (do). قفط 2022
4. **A:** Have you got a new jacket?   **B:** No, I .... (doesn't). لوحمص 2022

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. **A:** .... (When) was the exam?   **B:** It was great.
6. **A:** .... (Where) did you have for lunch? **B:** We had rice with meat.
7. **A:** .... (Can) you run fast when you were young? **B:** Yes, I could.
8. **A:** Does Ziad like science?   **B:** Yes, he .... (do).
9. **A:** .... (What) often do you go to school?   **B:** Every day.
10. **A:** What type of music .... (does) he play? **B:** He played jazz.

Speaking

1 Discussing the type of music someone likes

مناقشة نوع الموسيقى التى يفضلها شخص

Questions	Answers
- What type of music do you like? ما نوع الموسيقى التى تحبها؟	- I like jazz, but I don't like opera. احب موسيقى الجاز لكن لا أحب موسيقى الأوبرا.
- Do you like pop music? هل تحب موسيقى البوب؟	- No, I don't. لا، لا احبها.

2 Talking about what someone can / can't do

الحديث عما يستطيع / لا يستطيع شخص القيام به

Questions	Answers
- What can Crusoe do? ماذا يستطيع كروزو أن يفعل؟	- He can walk on the beach. يستطيع أن يمشى على الشاطئ.
- What can't Crusoe do? ماذا لا يستطيع كروزو أن يفعل؟	- He can't sleep on a bed. لا يستطيع أن ينام على فراش.

General Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4



- يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلى فى ملحق الكتاب

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Fatma and Sara are talking about music. صعيد 2023

Fatma : I like music very much, what about you?

Sara : ❶ ....

Fatma : ❷ ....?

Sara : I prefer jazz music.

Fatma : ❸ ....?

Sara : Because it is very quiet.

Fatma : Do you play it in the school band?

Sara : ❹ ....

Fatma : Can you play any musical instruments?

Sara : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. Healthy food is good .... your health.
   a. from b. of c. for d. with

2. He is a musician. He plays the trumpet in a ....
   a. sand b. hand c. band d. land

3. Old ships sometimes .... in the sea.
   a. fly b. sink c. play d. write

Language

4. **A:** What place did you visit? **B:** I .... the Pyramids.
   a. visit b. visits c. visited d. am visiting
5. **A:** Do you play tennis? **B:** No, I ....
   a. do b. didn't c. did d. don't
6. .... you got a car?
   a. Do b. Did c. Have d. Has

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. How often .... (do) Salim get up early?
2. .... (Do) you visit Ali yesterday?
3. Which shirt did Magdy .... (bought)?
4. **A:** Can you drive a bus? **B:** Yes, I .... (can't).

4 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

To your friend Ahmed about an adventure story.
- Your name is Omar and your email address is omar@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is ahmed77@gmail.com.

....
....
....
....
....
....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الالكتروني:
- **What is the story called?**
- **Who are in the story?**
- **What happens in the story?**
- **Where does it happen?**
- **How does it end?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- **The story is called** ....
- **It's full of** ....
- **It happens in** ....
- **The end is** ....



Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 9-11 WB pages 74-76

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات فى ملحق الكتاب



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

barbecue	حفل شواء	concert	حفلة موسيقية
olives	زيتون	pepper(s)	فلفل
windy	شديد الرياح	theatre	مسرح

Vocabulary

tired	مُتعب	tips	نصائح
whiteboard	سبورة بيضاء	Siwa	واحة سيوة
musical instrument	آلة موسيقية	journey	رحلة طويلة
writer	كاتب	stone	حجر
interesting	شيق	try (ied)	يحاول/يجرب
hotel	فندق	plan (ned)	يخطط
favourite	مفضل	drop (ped)	يُسقط/يقع

Expressions & Prepositions

have a barbecue	لديه حفل شواء	happy about	سعيد بخصوص
go on holiday	يذهب فى إجازة	look around	يتجول
get a ticket for	يحصل على تذكرة لـ	with olives	بالزيتون
enjoy + V-ing.	يستمع بـ ...	for breakfast	على الإفطار
take a selfie	يلتقط صورة سيلفي	plan to + inf	يخطط أن
stop working	يتوقف عن العمل	get in	يدخل
read a book by	يقرأ كتاب من تأليف	by my favourite writer	من تأليف كاتبي المفضل
in the afternoon	بعد الظهر		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يوجد تجميع لأهم الأفعال غير المنتظمة في آخر الكتاب

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
lose	يخسر / يضيع	lost	lost
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
break	يكسر / ينكسر	broke	broken
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	woken up
drive	يقود/يصطحب (بالسيارة)	drove	driven
mean	يعني/يقصد	meant	meant

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
loud	عالي الصوت (صاخب)	noisy	calm/quiet	هادئ

Definitions

windy	شديد الرياح	when the wind blows[1], the weather is windy	١- تهب

Language Notes

1) • because • so

- تستخدم (because) بمعنى (لأن) حيث تأتي النتيجة قبلها والسبب بعدها.

النتيجة + because + السبب

Ex. The ship sank because there was a terrible storm.

- تستخدم (so) بمعنى (لذلك) حيث يأتي السبب قبلها والنتيجة بعدها.

السبب + so + النتيجة

Ex. Ali worked hard, so he passed his test.

- كما تستخدم (so) بمعنى (جداً) ويأتي بعدها صفة/حال.

Ex. She was so tired.

2) • although • but

- تستخدم (although) بمعنى (بالرغم من) للتعبير عن التناقض.

Ex. Although they came late, they caught the train.

Ex. They caught the train although they came late.

- تستخدم (but) بمعنى (لكن) للتعبير عن التناقض وتأتي في وسط الجملة:

Ex. Samy is short, but he plays basketball.

3) • What + be + subject + like?

- يستخدم هذا الأسلوب للسؤال عن سمات إنسان/شيء.

Ex. A: What is Khalid like?
B: He is polite and kind.

Ex. A: What was the History class like?
B: It was very interesting.

4) stop

• stop + to + inf. يتوقف لكي يفعل شيء .....

Ex. He stopped to have a drink on his way home.

• stop + V - ing. يتوقف عن فعل شيء .... (نهائياً)

Ex. He stopped smoking 3 years ago.

5) • lose • miss

• **lose (v) (lost - lost)** -يفقد (يُضيّع) شيء / يخسر «مباراة مثلاً»

Ex. I lost my ticket so I bought another one.

Ex. Our team lost the last match.

- تأتي في التصريف الثالث بعد فعل (be / get) بمعنى (تائه / ضل الطريق)

Ex. Those tourists are lost; we should help them.

• **miss (v) (ed)** - يفوته شيء / يفتقد (شخص)

Ex. I missed the bus, so I took a taxi.

Ex. Dalia really misses her family.

6) Break

• **break** -يكسر، ينكسر - من الأفعال التي يمكن أن تكون لازمة (لا يأتي بعدها مفعول) أو متعدية (يأتي بعدها مفعول).

Ex. I broke my phone.

Ex. My phone broke.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **A:** What are your friends .... ? **B:** They are so helpful.
   a. as b. like c. same d. similar
2. I never get .... in my city.
   a. missed b. wasted c. lost d. broken
3. Hurry up or we will .... the train.
   a. lose b. come c. lift d. miss
4. Dad was angry .... I got bad marks.
   a. because b. although c. so d. but
5. I was tired, ... I continued to work.
   a. with b. but c. so d. because
6. My mobile stopped ....
   a. to working b. to work c. working d. works
7. I dropped my phone and it ....
   a. breaking b. broke c. broken d. breaks

Audioscript

SB Page (9)

استمع إلى النصوص



١- صورة سيلفي
٢- اسقطت

1- **Woman** : Hi Lina. How was your weekend?

Lina : Oh, it was terrible.

Woman : Oh dear, what happened?

Lina : I watched a football match at the stadium. It was terrible because my team lost 5-2. Then I took a selfie[1] but I dropped[2] my mobile phone and it broke.

Woman : Oh dear!

2- **Man** : Hi Hisham. How was your weekend?

Hisham : It was great because I went to the bowling alley with my cousins. Then we went to a pizza restaurant. I had a pizza with olives[3] and pepper[4]. The pizza was really good, although it was expensive.

٣- زيتون
٤- فلفل
٥- مسرح

3- **Woman 2** : Hi Judy. How was your weekend?

Judy : It was OK on Saturday, although I had lots of homework. But I went to the theatre[5] in the evening.

WB Page (74)

(1) **Judy** : I went to my cousin's house last weekend. It was fantastic[1] because we played all my favourite[2] games!

(2) **Khaled** : I read a book by[3] my favourite writer last week. It was OK, although it was not her best book.

١- رائع
٢- مفضل
٣- قرأت كتاب من تأليف
٤- اصطحب بالسيارة
٥- فظيع

(3) **Marwa** : My father drove[4] us to the park on Saturday. It took an hour to go two kilometres! It was terrible[5] because there were so many cars.

(4) **Hany** : We read an English book at school today. It was very good, although I didn't understand every word!




Dalia's diary



Sunday 13th August

Today was a terrible day! My baby brother woke me up at 5 am! I am so tired[1] now. I went to the kitchen for breakfast but we had no milk or bread[2]. So Mum asked me to go to the shop but it was closed[3] because it was only 6.30 am!
Then I tried to do my maths homework but I lost all my work because my laptop[4] stopped working. Although we planned to[5] have a barbecue[6] in the afternoon, it was very windy[7]. We could not have it!
I hope[8] tomorrow is a better day!

١- متعب
٢- خبز
٣- مغلق
٤- جهاز لابتوب
٥- خططنا ل
٦- حفل شواء
٧- شديد الرياح
٨- يأمل

WB Page (75)

Amir's diary

Sunday 30th August

Today was a fantastic day. First, I got up at 5 am. and had breakfast. Then, I got in[1] the car with my family and we drove to Siwa[2]. Although it was a very long journey[3], I enjoyed reading my favourite book in the car. We arrived very late but it is a beautiful place. We planned to look around[4], but we stayed in the hotel[5] because we were all very tired. I think tomorrow will be very interesting[6].

١- يدخل
٢- واحة سيوة
٣- رحلة
٤- يتجول
٥- فندق
٦- شيق

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



1. I had a nice pizza .... olives and peppers. (2023 تجاري)
   a. on b. of c. with d. for
2. I watched a wonderful play by Adel Emam in the .... (2022 الجيزة)
   a. theatre b. cinema c. museum d. funfair
3. The piano is a musical .... (2022 أسيوط)
   a. equipment b. instrument c. machine d. white board

4. It was terrible .... my team lost 5 - 2.
   a. although b. because c. so d. but

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. We use tomatoes and .... to make salad.
   a. papers b. pipes c. peppers d. barbecues
6. Mum usually adds .... to my pizza.
   a. olives b. concerts c. instruments d. stones
7. My dad .... me to school in his car.
   a. rode b. went c. came d. drove
8. How did you .... the ticket for the match?
   a. get b. make c. do d. clean
9. We plan to go .... holiday in Luxor.
   a. at b. on c. with d. about
10. He worked hard, so he was ....
    a. tiring b. careless c. boring d. tired
11. We went to the desert and had a .... The food was delicious.
    a. show b. cinema c. barbecue d. concert
12. Tourists usually stay at comfortable ....
    a. hospitals b. hotels c. schools d. theatres
13. We went to the .... and enjoyed the music.
    a. classroom b. sky c. mountain d. concert
14. We enjoyed .... pizza at the new restaurant.
    a. eating b. to eat c. eat d. to eating
15. What .... the island like?
    a. do b. has c. was d. does
16. The music was so ...., so I left the party.
    a. fantastic b. amazing c. nice d. loud
17. We couldn't go to the park because it was ....
    a. favourite b. interesting c. windy d. nice

Speaking

1) Asking and responding to past events
السؤال والرد على أحداث ماضية

Questions	Answers
- How was your weekend? كيف كانت عطلتك الأسبوعية؟	- It was great / fantastic! كانت عظيمة / رائعة.
- What was the (food) like? كيف كان (الطعام)؟	- It was OK. كان لا بأس به.
- How was your birthday? كيف كان عيد ميلادك؟	- It was (really / very) interesting. كان شيقًا جدًا.
- How was your last maths lesson? كيف كانت حصة الرياضيات الأخيرة؟	- It was (really / very) good. كانت جيدة جدًا.
	- It was terrible! كانت فظيعة.
	- It was (really) bad. كانت سيئة للغاية.

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6



- يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلى فى ملحق الكتاب.

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is talking with Ali about Siwa.

Ahmed : Did you go to Siwa?

Ali : ❶ ....

Ahmed : When did you go there?

Ali : ❷ ....

Ahmed : ❸ ....?

Ali : I swam in the lake.

Ahmed : ❹ ....?

Shereen : I slept in a tent in the desert.

Ahmed : What was your favourite food there?

Ali : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. His voice was very ...., everyone heard him.

a. expensive b. loud c. tired d. windy

2. Wake ...., it is time for school.

a. on　　b. off　　c. up　　d. for

3. Today is ...., we won't be able to swim.

a. loud　　b. windy　　c. expensive　　d. early

4. I took a .... with my mobile phone at the funfair yesterday.

a. self　　b. selfie　　c. selfish　　d. shelf

Language

5. The pizza was really good .... it was expensive.

a. because　　b. so　　c. but　　d. through

6. He got good marks .... he didn't study hard.

a. so　　b. and　　c. although　　d. or

7. I went to the funfair .... I wasn't happy.

a. and　　b. but　　c. too　　d. so

8. The car stopped .... so I went to the mechanic.

a. to work　　b. work　　c. worked　　d. working

3 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"A trip to an island"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- When did you decide to go on a trip?
- At what time did you leave home?
- What was the weather like?
- How did you get to the island?
- Was there anyone on the island?
- What did you do during the day?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Last week, my family and I decided to go on ....
- The weather was ....
- We took a boat at about ....
- We had .... for breakfast.
- We found .... on the beach of the island.
- We went home at about .... We were really happy.

Unit 7

Review

Key Vocabulary

English	Arabic
aquarium	معرض أحياء مائية
planetarium	مبنى القبة السماوية
sports centre	مركز رياضي
shopping centre	مركز تسوق
funfair	مدينة ملاهي
football stadium	ستاد كرة قدم
museum	متحف
restaurant	مطعم
bowling alley	صالة البولينج
haircut	حلاقة الشعر
nervous	متوتر
exhibition	معرض
school canteen	مقصف المدرسة (كانتين)
diary	مفكرة/يوميات
dolphin	سمكة الدولفين
beach	شاطئ
musician	موسيقار
sailor	بحّار
cave	كهف
terrible	فظيع/سئ جدًا
jungle	أدغال (غابة)
nearby	قريب - مجاور
alone	بمفرده - وحده
coconut	جوز الهند
sink (sank / sunk) / (n)	يغرق/يغوص - حوض
jazz music	موسيقى الجاز
rock music	موسيقى الروك
pop music	موسيقى البوب
opera music	موسيقى الأوبرا
classical music	الموسيقى الكلاسيكية
traditional music	الموسيقى التقليدية
barbecue	حفل شواء
olives	زيتون
windy	شديد الرياح
concert	حفلة موسيقية
pepper(s)	فلفل
theatre	مسرح



Past time expressions

1) Revise the past simple tense



Form التكوين

→ **Subject** (كل الضمائر) فاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل

الأفعال المنتظمة: هى الأفعال التى يتكون منها الماضى بإضافة (ed) لآخر الفعل

الأفعال غير المنتظمة: هى الأفعال التى لايضاف لها ed فى الماضى وتحفظ كما هى

go → went	eat → ate	do → did
am / is → was	are → were	have / has → had

Ex. We visited our uncle last week.

Usage الاستخدام

• يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن فعل تم وانتهى فى الماضى:

Ex. We watched a good film yesterday.

• يستخدم لسرد أحداث وقعت وانتهت في الماضي.

Ex. I went to the shops, bought some things and came back home.

Negative النفى

• يحول الماضى البسيط للنفى بإستخدام (didn't) مع تحويل الفعل للمصدر.

→ **Subject + didn't + inf.**مصدر الفعل

Ex. I didn't go to the theatre.

→ **never +** فعل في الماضي البسيط

Ex. We never visited the funfair.

Question السؤال

سؤال بـ "هل.....؟"

Ex. Did they visit Luxor?

وللإجابة المختصرة نقول:

- Yes, she did. - No, she didn't.

سؤال بكلمة استفهام

Ex. When did you leave home?

(2) Past time expressions

– تستخدم الكلمات الزمنية التالية مع زمن الماضي البسيط لتحديد زمن حدوث الفعل:

yesterday	امس	once	ذات مرة
in the past	فى الماضي	once upon a time	ذات مرة (لسرد قصة)
in (2010)	في عام (٢٠١٠)	...ago	منذ .... (يأتي قبلها فترة زمنية)
last...	... السابق	this morning	هذا الصباح

Ex. Hala visited the museum last month.

(3) Yes / No Questions

– هي الأسئلة التي تبدأ بفعل مساعد أو ناقص، ويجاب عنها بـ (Yes) أو (No).

Ex. Did they go to the beach?

- Yes, they did. / No, they didn't.

4 Wh- questions

- هي الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمات الاستفهام.

Ex. What team does Salim like?
- He likes Liverpool.

Question words

What	ما/ماذا (للأشياء)	What colour	ما لون
Where	أين (للمكان)	What subject	ما المادة الدراسية
Who	من (للأشخاص)	What type / kind	ما نوع
Whose	لمن (للسؤال عن الملكية)	How many	كم العدد
When	متى (للزمن)	How long	ما المدة/طول
Why	لماذا (للسبب)	How heavy	ما وزن
Which	أيهما (للتخيير)	How much	ما ثمن/كم كمية
How	كيف (للطريقة/للحال)	How often	كم عدد المرات
What class	ما الصف الدراسي	How far	كم يبعد (للمسافة)
What time	ما الوقت	How old	ما (للعمر)
What price	ما ثمن	How tall	ما (للطول)

Speaking

1 Talking about your weekend

الحديث عن عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الخاصة بك

Questions	Response
- What did you do last weekend?	- I watched a football match.
- Where did you go last weekend?	- I went to the funfair.

2 Ask and answer questions about past events

السؤال والإجابة عن أحداث فى الماضى

Questions	Response
- When did you have breakfast?	- I had breakfast this morning.
- When did you meet your best friend?	- I met my best friend yesterday.
- When was Dina's birthday?	- It was in October.

3 Discussing the type of music someone likes

مناقشة نوع الموسيقى التي يفضلها شخص

Questions	Answers
- What type of music do you like?	- I like jazz, but I don't like opera.
- Do you like pop music?	- No, I don't.

4 Talking about what someone can/can't do

الحديث عما يستطيع /لا يستطيع شخص القيام به

Questions	Answers
- What can Crusoe do?	- He can walk on the beach.
- What can't Crusoe do?	- He can't sleep on a bed.

5 Asking and responding to past events

السؤال والرد علي احداث ماضية

Questions	Answers
- How was your weekend?	- It was great / fantastic!
- What was the (food) like?	- It was OK.
- How was your birthday?	- It was (really / very) interesting.
- How was your last maths lesson?	- It was (really / very) good.
	- It was terrible!
	- It was (really) bad.

General Exercises on Unit 7

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Omar is asking Ahmed about his last weekend.

Omar : What did you do last weekend?

Ahmed : 1 ....

Omar : Was the match interesting?

Ahmed : 2 ....

Omar : 3 ....?

Ahmed : I went with my father.

Omar : 4 ....?

Ahmed : Yes, my team won 2-0.

Omar : Did you enjoy there?

Ahmed : 5 ....

2 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Vocabulary

1. I watched a play in the .... WB
   a. museum b. cinema c. theatre d. funfair
2. The food was .... We didn't like it. شبه المنهج 2023
   a. nice b. terrible c. delicious d. good
3. I like fruit because it's good .... me. WB
   a. for b. at c. about d. on
4. My grandfather was a .... and visited many countries. WB
   a. band b. statue c. concert d. sailor
5. I like ...., but it is difficult to open them. 2022 WB
   a. peaches b. coconuts c. apples d. bananas
6. A .... is a building to keep and display important things from the past. SB
   a. museum b. funfair c. canteen d. sports centre
7. Your hair looks terrible. You should have a ....
   a. team b. statue c. fun d. haircut
8. We watched sea animals at the ....
   a. sports centre b. aquarium c. planetarium d. stadium

Language

9. I .... to the museum four days ago. SB
   a. go b. goes c. went d. am going
10. .... the film was interesting, I did not understand it. WB
    a. Although b. Since c. When d. Because
11. **A:** Can you stand on your hands? **B:** Yes, I ....
    a. am b. have c. can d. are
12. **A:** .... you got a bike? **B:** No, I haven't.
    a. Do b. Are c. Will d. Have
13. My aunt and uncle .... to London in 2018.
    a. travelled b. travels c. travel d. are travelling

14. A: .... was the girl sad? B: Because she lost her money.

a. When b. What c. Why d. Where

15. How .... the Egyptians build the Pyramids?

a. do b. did c. does d. done

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

WB

1. .... (Has) you got any sisters?
2. Last week, we............. (are) in Alexandria.
3. .... (Are) you like listening to music?
4. Did you buy these shoes two days............. (yesterday)?
5. We were happy............. (so) we got high marks. مطلوب 2023

4 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words:

مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة

To your friend Sally about a fantastic day.

- Your name is Nour and your email address is nour84@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is sally14@gmail.com.

....

....

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الالكتروني:

- Why was it a fantastic day?

- Where did you spend it?

- Who did you spend it with?

- What did you do?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Last .... was a fantastic day. **- I went to .... in the morning.**

- It was a lot of fun! **- Then dad and I went to ....**

- It was great because .... **- I had a lot of fun.**

Unit 7

Al Azhar Test



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. The speaker's family moved to a new house in ....
   a. Alexandria b. Tanta c. Luxor d. Aswan
2. It took .... hours to drive from the old house in Cairo.
   a. four b. two c. three d. five

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mona : What did you do yesterday?
Sara : ① ....
Mona : The planetarium! What did you do there ?
Sara : ② ....
Mona : Can we go together the next time?
Sara : ③ ....

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We can see whales and sharks at the .... (الإسكندرية 2023)
   a. planetarium b. stadium c. aquarium d. alley
2. We .... to the funfair yesterday.
   a. go b. went c. are going d. will go
3. I can't buy the car .... it is very expensive.
   a. although b. but c. because d. so
4. Let's go on the big wheel at the .... this weekend. (الجيزة 2022)
   a. funfair b. planetarium c. aquarium d. stadium
5. I write what happens to me every day in a ....
   a. photo b. diary c. dairy d. search

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Ramy. Today was a **terrible** day! My little brother woke me up at 5 a.m. I am so tired now. I went to the kitchen for breakfast but we had no milk or bread. My mum asked me to go to the shop but **it** was closed because it was only 6:30 a.m.

Then, I tried to do my maths homework but I lost all my work because my laptop stopped working. Although we planned to have a barbecue in the afternoon, it was very windy and we couldn't have it! I hope tomorrow is a better day!

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

....

2. Do you think the writer was happy at the end of the day?

....

3. When did Ramy's brother wake him up?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ....

a. the shop b. breakfast c. barbecue d. laptop

5. The underlined word "**terrible**" means.

a. nice b. good c. easy d. bad

5 Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. big - rode - **I** - wheel - on - the. ....
2. last - did - do - **What** - you - weekend? ....
3. pop - **Do** - music - like - you? ....
4. the - found - beach - **I** - on - a coconut. ....

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

" What do you do at the weekend? "

....

....

....

....

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل بريد إلكتروني وردت بالوحدة

Your last weekend

I had a fantastic weekend! It was my friend Dalia's birthday. Her family took us to some exciting places. In the morning, we went to the funfair. I rode on the big wheel. It was fantastic. In the afternoon, we visited a museum. We saw very old statues. I remembered all the things that our teacher taught us in history! In the evening, we spent a nice time at her house. We gave her presents. We ate cakes and I came back home very late!

An adventure story

To: ahmed77@gmail.com

From: omar@yahoo.com

Subject: An adventure story

Dear Ahmed,

How are you and your family?

Yesterday I read an adventure story by Daniel Defoe. It is called "Robinson Crusoe." It was about a sailor. One day his ship sank because there was a really terrible storm. Crusoe swam to a nearby island. He arrived on the island and walked along the beach. There were no other people there. He found a dead fish and ate it but it was not nice. Although he was hungry, he didn't want to eat another dead fish! He looked for a cave to sleep. It's a very exciting story.

Best wishes

Yours,
Omar

A trip to an island

Last week, my family and I decided to go on a trip to an island. We left home early in the morning. The weather was so nice. We took a boat at about 8.0 am. It took us about an hour to get to the island. There were many other people there. We put up our tents and had breakfast. We had cheese and bread for breakfast. We found fantastic shells on the beach of the island. We went fishing and caught really big fish. We walked on the beach and had lunch at about 4 pm. We went home at about 7 pm. We were really happy.

A fantastic day

To: sally14@gmail.com

From: nour84@yahoo.com

Subject: A fantastic day

Dear Sally,

It is nice to write to you. Last Friday was a fantastic day. I went to my best friend's house in the morning. We played football in the park. I don't usually like football, but all his brothers wanted to play. It was fun! In the afternoon, I went home. I did my homework. Mum helped me with it. Then dad and I went to the sports centre. It was great because there was a really big swimming pool. I had a lot of fun. After that, I went back home and had a nice meal with my family. I like my family very much. I hope to hear from you soon.

Yours,
Nour

What the people in my family like doing

I have a big family. My father always likes to go to the football stadium. He goes there with my uncle. They like watching football matches there. My brother likes to go to the sports centre. He goes there three times a week. He wants to keep fit. My sister likes to go to the funfair. She goes there with her friends. They like to ride on the big wheel. I like to go to the aquarium. It is a very exciting place. I like to watch interesting sea animals there.

Unit 7







A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. It was Ali's ....

a. wedding b. barbecue c. birthday d. holiday

2. The weekend was ....

a. fantastic b. boring c. tiring d. terrible

3. They visited a/an .... after they went to the funfair.

a. cinema b. theatre c. aquarium d. museum

4. They came home in the ....

a. morning b. evening c. afternoon d. night

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

إدارة بلقاس 2023

Basma is talking to Mona about the party.

Basma : Why didn't you come to the concert yesterday?

Mona : ❶ ....

Basma : ❷ ....?

Mona : Yes, I went to the doctor.

Basma : ❸ ....?

Mona : He gave my some medicine.

Basma : Will you go to school tomorrow?

Mona : ❹ ....

Basma : I hope you get well soon.

Mona : ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Robinson Crusoe was a sailor. One day, his ship sank because there was a terrible storm. He swam to a nearby island, but there were no other people there. He walked along the beach, but he saw nobody there. Then he found a dead fish. He ate <u>it</u> but it was not nice. Once, he found a coconut on the beach. It was delicious. It rained and he was cold and wet, so he went to look for a cave. He wanted a warm place to sleep.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Crusoe's ship sink?

----

2. How did Crusoe get to the island?

----

3. Would you like to live alone on an island? Why / Why not?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Crusoe wanted to find a .... to sleep.

a. island　　b. beach　　c. cave　　d. fish

5. The underlined word "**it**" refers to the ....

a. fish　　b. ship　　c. coconut　　d. island

6. The fish which Crusoe ate tasted ....

a. nice　　b. good　　c. delicious　　d. bad

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There aren't any sharks at the ...., but there are many kinds of fish.

a. planetarium　　b. funfair　　c. stadium　　d. aquarium

2. When you put a stone in water, it .... WB

a. thinks　　b. sinks　　c. hurts　　d. swims

3. Crusoe ate a .... on the island. It was very nice. WB

a. rock　　b. stone　　c. coconut　　d. paper

4. **A:** .... was your weekend? **B:** Fantastic!

a. How　　b. Why　　c. What　　d. How often

5. A/An .... travels on ships for a job. WB

a. dentist　　b. musician　　c. player　　d. sailor

6. Tuesday 20th April was two months ....

a. when b. ago c. because d. in

7. A: When did you visit the museum? B: .... week.

a. Next b. Ago c. For d. Last

8. .... music is sometimes very loud.

a. Rock b. Stone c. Cook d. Knock

9. We went to the .... to learn about planets and stars.

a. canteen b. museum c. stadium d. planetarium

10. People first played .... music a long time ago.

a. cheap b. new c. traditional d. careless

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in bracket

1. What did you .... (did) last weekend?
2. I .... (go) to the museum last weekend.
3. A: .... (Did) you see the island? B: Yes, I can.
4. Did you eat pizza .... (tomorrow)?

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

... عده قبل الاختبار

" What the people in your family like doing "

– يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **Do you have a big family?**
- **What does your father like to do?**
- **What about your brother? What does he like to do?**
- **What does your sister like to do?**
- **What about you? What do you like to do?**

– يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **I have a big family.**
- **My father always likes to ....**
- **He goes there with ....**
- **My brother likes to ....**
- **My sister likes to ....**
- **I like to ....**

8
UNIT

The amazing world around us

Objectives

Reading:
A text about the Tahya Masr Bridge; the Grand Egyptian Museum

Writing:
A paragraph on a museum about the twenty-first century; a fact file; a review of places giving your opinion

Listening:
Facts and figures; a quiz

Speaking:
Talking about measurements; making comparisons

Language:
Comparative and superlative adjectives

Issues:
Loyalty and belonging

Life Skills:
Respecting different opinions



SB / WB Answers جميع أسئلة كتاب الطالب والتدريبات مجاب عنها في آخر الكتاب



Lesson 1

SB pages 22-23 WB page 84

Key Vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

bridge	كوبرى	city	مدينة كبيرة
pyramid	هرم	tower	برج
tunnel	نفق		

Vocabulary

interesting	شيق	building	مبنى - بناء
metre = m	متر	fact file	ملف حقائق
kilometre = km	كيلومتر	the world	العالم
exact	دقيق/محدد	country	بلد
hundred	مائة	bank	ضفة نهر - بنك (مصرف)
thousand	الف	daily	يوميًا / يومى
million	مليون	research (ed) (n)	بحث/يجرى بحث
desert road	طريق صحراوى	guess (ed)	يخمن
around / round	حول/حوالى		
measurements	وحدات قياس		

Famous places

The 6th October Bridge	كوبرى ٦ أكتوبر	The Cairo-Alexandria desert road	طريق القاهرة - الإسكندرية الصحراوى
The Library of Alexandria	مكتبة الإسكندرية		
The Tahya Masr Bridge	كوبرى تحيا مصر	The Leaning Tower of Pisa	برج بيزا المائل
The Luxor Temple	معبد الأقصر	Abraj Al-Bait Clock Tower	برج الساعة بأبراج البيت (بالسعودية)
The Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة	The Channel Tunnel	نفق المانش (بين انجلترا وفرنسا)

Prepositions

deep under the ground عمقاً تحت الأرض	go over the Nile يمر فوق نهر النيل
go under the sea يمر أسفل البحر	It's just under 850 years old اقل قليلاً من ٨٥٠ عاماً
It's about 540 metres long يبلغ طوله حوالي ٥٤٠ متر	

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
important	هام	necessary	unimportant	غير هام
fact	حقيقة	truth	fiction	خيال
link	يربط	join	unlink	يفصل
amazing	مذهل	exciting	terrible	فظيع /سيء

Definitions

bridge	كوبرى	something used for people and cars to cross a road or river
tower	برج	a tall, narrow building
tunnel	نفق	something you can go through to travel under the sea or through[1] a mountain
pyramid	هرم	a large building that is square[2] at the bottom with four triangular[3] sides forming a point at the top
city	مدينة كبيرة	a large town
depth	عمق	The distance[4] from the top to the bottom of something (water)

١- عبر/خلال
٢- مربع الشكل
٣- مثلث الشكل
٤- مسافة

Language Notes

1) Million - hundred - thousand

- هذه الكلمات لا تأتى جمع إذا سبقها عدد أو أحد هذه الكلمات.

(a/one/several/a few)

Ex. 20 Million people live in Cairo

- لكن تأتى جمع إذا تبعها **(of)** أو لم يسبقها عدد أو أى من الكلمات السابقة.

Ex. There are millions of people there.

2) How + adjective.....? = What + noun.....?

-للسؤال عن القياسات يمكننا أن نستخدم How تليها صفة أو What يليها اسم كما يلي:

How + adjective ... ?	What + noun ... ?
How long .....? كم طول ....؟	= What length ....? ما طول .....؟
How high .....? كم ارتفاع ....؟	= What height ....? ما إرتفاع .....؟
How deep ....? كم عمق ....؟	= What depth ....? ما عمق ......؟
How old ......? كم عمر ....؟	= What age ....? ما عمر ......؟
How many ....? كم عدد ....؟	= What is / are the number(s) of ...? ما عدد ......؟
How much ....? كم سعر - كمية ...؟	= What price / amount ....? ما سعر - كمية؟
How tall ......? كم طول ....؟	= What height ....? ما ارتفاع .....؟
How wide .....? كم عرض ....؟	= What width ....? ما العرض ....؟
How heavy ....? كم وزن ....؟	= What weight ....? ما وزن ......؟

Ex. How deep is the lake?
= What depth is the lake?

-للإجابة يمكنك أن تستخدم:

فاعل + be + (درجة القياس «طول-وزن» ....) + صفة

Ex. It's 200 metres deep.

-لاحظ اختصارات وحدات القياس الآتية:

- metre = m متر
- kilometre = km كيلومتر
- kilogram = kg كيلوجرام
- hour = h ساعة
- centimetre = cm سنتيمتر

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: How .... is the bridge? B: It's 20 metres wide.
   a. long b. deep c. wide d. high
2. A: What .... is this bag? B: It is L.E. 300.
   a. price b. much c. deep d. size
3. A: What .... is this bag? B: It's 5 kilograms.
   a. weight b. length c. age d. width
4. .... of people visit Egypt every day.
   a. Million b. hundred c. Millions d. Thousand



SB Page (13)




استمع إلى النصوص

(1) a. The Pyramid of El Castillo[1] in Chichen Itza[2] is 30 metres high.

b. The Tahya Masr Bridge[3] is about 540 metres long.

c. More than 37,500,000 people live in Tokyo[4], Japan[5].

d. The Leaning Tower of Pisa[6] is just under 850 years old.

e. The Gotthard Tunnel[7] in Switzerland*[8] is 2.3 metres under the ground.



(2) **Narrator: 1-** A : How long[9] is the Cairo-Alexandria desert road[10]?

B : It's 220 kilometres long.

Narrator: 2- A : How deep[11] is Lake Baikal in Russia[12]*?

B : It's 1,642 metres deep.

Narrator: 3- A : How high[13] is Abraj Al-Bait Clock Tower in Saudi Arabia[14]?

B : It's 601 metres high.

Narrator: 4- A : How old[15] is the Luxor Temple?

B : It's just under 3,500 years old.

Narrator: 5- A : How many[16] people live in Cairo?

B : More than 20 million people.

١- هرم ال كاستلو
٢- مدينة تشكين ايتزا (بدولة كولومبيا)
٣- كوبري تحيا مصر
٤- مدينة طوكيو
٥- دولة اليابان
٦- برج بيزا المائل
٧- نفق جوتارد
٨- دولة سويسرا
٩- كم طول
١٠- طريق صحراوي
١١- كم عمق
١٢- بحيرة بايكال بروسيا
١٣- كم ارتفاع
١٤- برج الساعة بأبراج البيت بالسعودية
١٥- كم عمر
١٦- كم عدد

Say it correctly

- Switzerland — ينطق حرف (z) في هذه الكلمة (s).
- Russia — ينطق المقطع الملون مثل صوت (شا).

WB Page (77)

Voice 1: forty-eight million

Voice 2: two hundred and eighty-seven thousand

Voice 3: two hundred and fifty two

Voice 4: six million, four hundred and twelve thousand

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. There is a .... over the river. WB شرق المنصورة 2023
   a. tunnel b. bridge c. city d. pyramid
2. Asyut is not a very big .... WB سنورس 2023
   a. river b. tower c. city d. tunnel
3. The Tahya Masr .... goes over the Nile in Cairo. لعمرانية 2023
   a. street b. bridge c. library d. dam
4. How .... is the Qasr El Nile Bridge? لقناطر 2023
   a. long b. many c. tall d. often
5. The Tanta-Alexandria road is 100 kilometres .... منوف 2023
   a. long b. tall c. high d. strong
6. The 6th of October Bridge links the two Nile .... SB
   a. offices b. seas c. beaches d. banks
7. The Cairo .... is the tallest building in Egypt. WB أبو كبير 2023
   a. Tower b. City c. Tunnel d. Bridge
8. The Channel .... goes under the sea between England and France. WB
   a. Tunnel b. Bridge c. Tower d. Building

Bit by Bit Exercises

9. How .... is Lake Baikal in Russia?
   a. many b. often c. tall d. deep
10. The show was .... Everyone liked it.
    a. terrible b. bad c. amazing d. worse
11. There are many bridges that go .... the Nile.
    a. over b. between c. under d. in
12. A: How .... is your new mobile? B: It's 6,000 LE.
    a. many b. much c. long d. wide
13. A: What .... is your grandad? B: 75 years old.
    a. old b. tall c. height d. age
14. The tunnel goes .... the sea.
    a. on b. under c. above d. next
15. Cairo is the largest .... in Egypt.
    a. country b. jungle c. city d. village
16. Tourists enjoy the .... at Giza.
    a. beach b. pyramids c. bank d. ground
17. We visited the .... of Alexandria.
    a. Pyramid b. Mountain c. Cave d. Library

18. The opposite of "amazing" is ....

a. important b. terrible c. expensive d. exciting

19. .... long is the Cairo-Alexandria desert road?

a. How b. What c. Why d. When

20. We use kilometres and metres for ....

a. foods b. fruits c. means d. measurements

Speaking

1 Saying numbers

قراءة الأرقام

- عند قراءة الأرقام نبدأ دائماً بالرقم الأكبر:

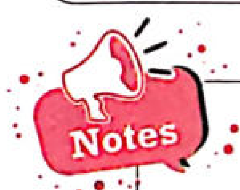
3,87 → **three hundred (and) eighty-seven**

4,073 → **four thousand (and) seventy-three**

435,000 → **four hundred and thirty-five thousand**

37,000,000 → **thirty-seven million**

37,435,191 → **thirty-seven million, four hundred and thirty-five thousand, one hundred and ninety-one**



١. نستخدم (,) comma لتفصل بين الآلاف / الملايين:

٢. نستخدم (-) hyphen لتفصل بين الآحاد / العشرات.

٣. يمكن أيضاً أن نستخدم (.) point لتفصل بين الآحاد / العشرات.

٤. لا نستخدم (and) بين الملايين والآلاف أو بين الآلاف والمئات:

2,056,300 → **two million, fifty six thousand, three hundred**

٥. من الممكن أن نستخدم (and) بين المئات والعشرات:

56,311 → **fifty-six thousand, three hundred (and) eleven**

٦. لاحظ أن (hundred / thousand / million) تكون مفردة فى قراءة الأرقام كما سبق.

٧. تستخدم التعبيرات الآتية عند عدم التأكد من العدد أو الكمية بالضبط:

• more than ...	أكثر من ....
• just under ...	أقل بقليل من ....
• about ...	حوالى ....

فمثلاً

192 → **more than one hundred and ninety**

179 → **just under one hundred and eighty**

2,003 → **about two thousand**

2 Talking about measurements

الحديث عن القياسات

Questions	Answers
- How long is the Cairo-Alexandria desert road? كم طول طريق القاهرة - الإسكندرية الصحراوى؟	- It's about 220 kilometres long. يبلغ طوله حوالى ٢٢٠ كيلومتر.
- How old is the Luxor Temple? كم عمر معبد الأقصر؟	- It's just under 3,500 years old. عمره أقل قليلاً من ٣٥٠٠ سنة.
- How deep is Lake Baikal in Russia? كم عمق بحيره بايكال فى روسيا؟	- It's 1,642 metres deep under the water. يبلغ عمقها ١٦٤٢ متر تحت الماء.
- How high is Abraj Al-Bait Clock Tower in Saudi Arabia? كم إرتفاع برج الساعة بأبراج البيت فى السعودية؟	- It's about 601 metres high. يبلغ إرتفاعه ما يقرب من ٦٠١ مترًا.
- How many people live in Cairo? كم عدد الناس الذين يعيشون فى القاهرة؟ لاحظ : السؤال هنا عن الفاعل فلا يجوز استخدام فعل مساعد.	- More than 20 million people live in Cairo. أكثر من ٢٠ مليون شخص يعيشون فى القاهرة.

General Exercises on Lesson 1



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Farah is asking Jana about the Great Pyramid in Giza. توحماد 2023

Farah : Did you visit the Great Pyramid?

Jana : 1 ....

Farah : 2 ....?

Jana : It is in Giza.

Farah : 3 ....?

Jana : It is 139 m high.

Farah : When did you visit it?

Jana : 4 ....

Farah : What do you think of it?

Jana : 5 ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How -------- is Abraj Al-Bait Clock Tower?

   a. long　　b. deep　　c. high　　d. many

2. The Pyramids are --------, tourists like to visit them.

   a. amazing　　b. lazy　　c. ugly　　d. unimportant

3. I'm very happy to live in my --------, Cairo.

   a. tower　　b. city　　c. tunnel　　d. bridge

4. The Cairo Metro runs through a big --------.

   a. building　　b. tower　　c. pyramid　　d. tunnel

5. How -------- people live in Asyut?

   a. many　　b. high　　c. deep　　d. long

3 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Your visit to the Luxor Temple"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **Where did you go last month?**
- **Who did you go with?**
- **How big is the temple?**
- **How old is the temple?**
- **How was your visit?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **Last month, I ------------------.**
- **I went with ------------------.**
- **It is a big ------------------.**
- **It is about ---------- years old.**
- **The visit was ------------------.**

Lessons 2 & 3

SB pages 14-17 WB pages 78-79

Key Vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

suspension bridge	كوبري معلق	farther / further	أبعد
sunset	غروب الشمس	achievements	إنجازات

Vocabulary

view	منظر	social studies	دراسات اجتماعية
ice skating	التزلج على الجليد (بحذاء خاص)	angry	غاضب
skiing*	التزلج على الجليد (بزلاجات طويلة)	popular	شائع / مشهور
mountain climbing	رياضة تسلق الجبال	forest	غابة
smart phone	هاتف ذكي	capital city	عاصمة
population	تعداد السكان	traffic	حركة المرور
finally	أخيرًا	price	سعر
the express train	القطار السريع	glass floor	أرضية زجاجية
means of transport	وسيلة/وسائل مواصلات	believe (d)	يعتقد
Brazil	دولة البرازيل	cross (ed)	يَعْبر / يتقاطع مع
Brazilians	البرازيليون	protect (ed)	يحمى

Famous places

The Red Pyramid	الهرم الأحمر (بدهشور)	Brazilia	مدينة برازيليا (عاصمة البرازيل)
The Great Pyramid of Giza	الهرم الأكبر بالجيزة	The Qasr El Nil Bridge	كوبرى قصر النيل
		The Warraq Island	جزيرة الوراق
The Pyramids of Giza	أهرامات الجيزة	The Shanghai Tower	برج شنغهاى (بالصين)
Mount Everest	جبل إفرست	The Al Hamra Tower	برج الحمراء (بالكويت)
Mount Kilimanjaro	جبل كلمنجارو	The Amazon	نهر الأمازون
Bangkok	مدينة بانكوك (عاصمة تايلاند)	Thailand	دولة تايلاند

Expressions & Prepositions

Be careful!	كن حذرًا!	crowded with	مزدحم بـ
make much noise	يسبب ضوضاء كثيرة	at sunset	عند غروب الشمس
walk across a bridge	يمشى عبر كوبري	fly at ... km/h	تطير بسرعة ... كم/ساعة
swim across a river	يسبح عبر نهر	proud of	فخور بـ
6 kilometres away	على بعد ٦ كيلومتر	on television	فى التلفاز
look like	يشبه		

do a quiz	يحل اختبار قصير	farther away from	أبعد من
compare with	يقارن بـ	nearer to	أقرب إلى
get the answer correct	يُصحح الإجابة	the same size as	نفس المقاس مثل

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
hit	يضرب/يصدم	hit	hit
build	يبني	built	built
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
make	يصنع / يجعل	made	made
know	يعرف	knew	known

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
crowded	مزدحم	busy	empty	فارغ
old	قديم	ancient	modern	حديث
noisy	ملئ بالضوضاء/ صاخب	loud	quiet	هادئ
beautiful	جميل	pretty	ugly	قبيح
dangerous	خطير	unsafe	safe	آمن
cheap	رخيص الثمن	inexpensive	expensive	غالى الثمن

Definitions

sunset	غروب الشمس	the time when the sun disappears[1] from the sky at the end of the day
suspension bridge	جسر معلق	a long bridge that has thick[2] metal wires[3] to hold it up
crowded	مزدحم	where there are many people
modern	حديث	relating to the present, not old
achievement	إنجاز	a result to be proud of
ugly	قبيح	not nice to look at; not beautiful
safe	آمن	not in a dangerous situation or position
dangerous	خطير	able to cause harm; not safe

١- تختفي
٢- سميك
٣- كابلات معدنية

empty	فارغ	without any people or things in it
low	منخفض	not far from the top to the bottom[4] of something
narrow	ضيق	not far from one side of something to the other; not wide
wide	عريض	far from one side of something to the other, not narrow
noisy	صاخب	making a lot of noise, not quiet
quiet	هادئ	without making much noise, not noisy
farther	أبعد	at a bigger distance[5], the comparative of far
tall	طويل	more than usual height; not short

٤- قاع
٥- مسافة

Language Notes

1) • make

• make + مفعول + inf. يجعل

Ex. The terrible weather made Ali stay home.

• make + مفعول + adjective يجعل

Ex. Shanghai is crowded. That makes it noisy.

2) • tall • long

• tall طويل / عالى (تشير إلى الطول الرأسى ↑ للإنسان - المبانى - الشجر - الحيوانات)

Ex. The Great Pyramid is really tall.

Ex. There are three tall trees in my garden.

Ex. The Cairo Tower is a tall building.

• long طويل (تشير إلى الطول الأفقى ← للمسافات والأشياء)

Ex. That is the longest tunnel in the world.

Ex. Sara has really long hair.

3) • start + (V-ing.) or (to + inf.)

تأتى بعد الفعل (start) صيغة (V-ing.) أو (to + inf.) بدون فارق في المعنى.

Ex. When did you start doing / to do this job?

4) • means

تأتى كلمة (means) مفرد وجمع بمعنى (وسيلة/وسائل)

Ex. The plane is a fast means of transport.

Ex. Trains and buses are comfortable means of transport.

5 • cross • across

• **cross (v) (ed)** فعل بمعنى (يعبر/يتقاطع مع (الكوبري)

Ex. You can cross the road now, it's safe.

Ex. The bridge crosses the Nile Warraq Island.

• **across (adv)** ظرف بمعنى (عَبْر)

Ex. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge.

6 proud of / to فخور بـ/ بأن

• **proud of + (inf. + ing) / (noun)**

Ex. We should be proud of our family.

Ex. I am proud of being a teacher.

• **proud to + inf**

Ex. I am proud to be a teacher.

7 population – pollution

• **population** التعداد السكانى

Ex. The population of Cairo is more than 20 million.

• **pollution** التلوث

Ex. Pollution is bad for our earth.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This big jacket makes the little girl .... funny.
   a. looking b. to look c. looks d. look
2. Mr Ali is very ....
   a. long b. much c. tall d. expensive
3. I started .... to drive a week ago.
   a. learning b. to learning c. learn d. learned
4. The metro .... a good means of transport.
   a. are b. is c. were d. be
5. It took us two hours to drive .... the desert.
   a. cross b. crossed c. across d. crosses
6. He is proud .... be Egyptian.
   a. at b. in c. of d. to
7. Which has a bigger .... Cairo or Giza?
   a. pollution b. information c. population d. answers



Audioscript

SB Page (15)



استمع إلى النصوص

How much do you know about pyramids?

Let's compare[1] two pyramids in Egypt.



The Great Pyramid of Giza is 146 metres tall. It's taller than the Red Pyramid, which is 105 metres tall. But the Red Pyramid is further[2] away from the centre[3] of Cairo, so it's less crowded with visitors[4]. Because it's less crowded, it's also quieter[5].

Now let's compare two very tall buildings. The Shanghai Tower in China[6] is 632 metres tall. The tower first opened in 2015. The Al Hamra Tower in Kuwait[7] is 412.6 metres tall. The building first opened in 2011. So the Shanghai Tower is taller and more modern[8] than the Al Hamra Tower in Kuwait.

Finally, we're going to compare two capital cities[9]. Bangkok[10] became the capital of Thailand[11]* about 600 years ago, so it's much older than Brasilia[12]. Brasilia is a modern city. The Brazilians built it in 1960. More people live in Bangkok than Brasilia. The population[13] of Bangkok is more than 10 million. The population of Brasilia is about four and a half million.

So, how did you do? Did you get the answers correct?

١- يقارن
٢- أبعد
٣- وسط - مركز
٤- زوار
٥- أكثر هدوءاً
٦- برج شنغهاي بالصين
٧- برج الحمرا بالكويت
٨- أحدث
٩- عواصم
١٠- مدينة بانكوك
١١- دولة تايلاند
١٢- مدينة برازيليا
١٣- تعداد السكان



- skiing — ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل صوت (ee) في كلمة (agree).
- Thailand — ينطق المقطع الملون مثل كلمة (tie) تماماً.

SB Page (16)



(1)

Voice: In front of us, you can see the world's widest suspension bridge[1]! It opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 metres wide and 540 metres long. More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016 and they finally[2] finished it 32 months later[3]. The bridge crosses[4] the Nile's Warraq Island[5]. More than 100,000 people live on the island. Many people enjoy walking across[6] the bridge. It has a glass floor[7], so you can see the river under your feet! The best time to cross[8] the bridge is at sunset[9], for a beautiful view[10] of the city.

١- كوبري معلق
٢- أخيراً
٣- فيما بعد/لاحقاً
٤- يتقاطع مع
٥- جزيرة الوراق
٦- تمشية عبْر
٧- أرضية زجاجية
٨- يعبُر
٩- غروب الشمس
١٠- منظر

(2)

1. The express train[11] to Aswan is the fastest one.
2. Cairo streets are the busiest[12] in Egypt.
3. Do you think that Tahya Masr Bridge will be the most popular[13] place in Cairo in the future?
4. Some people believe that buses inside Cairo are the least expensive means of transport[14].
5. This red smart phone[15] is the most expensive one.
6. I think Mohamed Salah is the best player in Egypt.

١١- القطار السريع
١٢- الأكثر ازدحاما
١٣- شائع / مشهور
١٤- وسائل مواصلات
١٥- هاتف ذكي



SB Page (14)

How much do you know? Do our quiz!

Pyramids

1. Which pyramid is taller, the Great Pyramid of Giza or the Red Pyramid?
2. Which pyramid is further from the centre of Cairo?
3. Which one is more crowded with visitors?
   Does that make it noisier or quieter?

Buildings

4. Which building is taller, the Shanghai Tower in China, or the Al Hamra Tower in Kuwait?
5. Which one is more modern?

Capital cities

6. Compare Bangkok, Thailand with Brasilia, the capital of Brazil. Which city is older?
7. Which has a bigger population? Can you guess how many people live in each one?

SB Page (16)

The Tahya Masr Bridge



The world's widest suspension bridge opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 m wide and 540 m long.

More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016. They finished it in 32 months. The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. More than 100,000 people live on the island.

Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet! The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset, for a beautiful view of the city.

WB Page (79)



You probably[1] know that whales[2] are the biggest animals in the world, but did you know that they are also the noisiest? A whale can hear[3] another whale 160 km away. Did you know that the fastest[4] animal in the world is a bird? It can fly at more than 300 km/h. Insects[5] are the most dangerous animals in the world. They make more people ill than any other animal.

Finally, the smallest land animal is the Etruscan shrew[6]. It looks like[7] a mouse and is the same size as a bee[8]!

١- من المحتمل
٢- حيتان
٣- يسمع
٤- الأسرع
٥- حشرات
٦- ذبابة الاتروسكان (حيوان يشبه الفأر)
٧- يشبه
٨- نحلة

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. The best time to cross the Tahya Masr Bridge is at .... **SB**
   a. sunscreen b. sunblock c. sunset d. sunflower
2. We can't swim across the river. It is very .... **WB**
   a. deep b. low c. noisy d. empty
3. The world's widest .... bridge opened in Cairo in May 2019. **SB**
   a. running b. suspension c. swimming d. sleeping
4. We need to buy some more water. This bottle is .... **WB** البحيرة 2022
   a. noisy b. crowded c. low d. empty
5. The teacher asked us to .... a quiz. كفر الشيخ / إدارة دسوق 2022
   a. throw b. cook c. let d. do
6. This street is quite .... The big truck can't cross it. سوهاج 2023
   a. modern b. narrow c. empty d. big
7. People .... rivers over bridges. الأقصر 2023
   a. walk b. go c. cross d. climb
8. Cairo's streets are very .... It takes a long time to go from one place to another. الجيزة 2022
   a. crowded b. far c. easy d. high
9. You can enjoy a beautiful view of the Nile at .... المنيا - مطاي 2023
   a. weather b. sunset c. sky d. storm
10. You should be proud of your .... جنوب سيناء 2022
    a. tails b. achievements c. bridges d. mistakes

Bit by Bit Exercises

11. I'm .... of being Egyptian.
 a. careful b. empty c. wide d. proud
12. It is .... to walk alone very late at night.
 a. safe b. modern c. dangerous d. old
13. Inside the hotel, there is an area for ....
 a. ice skating b. falling c. sinking d. building
14. Mountain .... is a dangerous sport.
 a. moving b. spending c. climbing d. building
15. Some planes can fly .... 900 km/h.
 a. in b. by c. at d. with
16. I feel nervous in .... markets. There are many people and much noise.
 a. crowded b. beautiful c. cheap d. tall
17. We like the beautiful .... of the Nile.
 a. review b. quiz c. view d. ugly
18. This book is really .... It costs only five pounds.
 a. expensive b. cheap c. dangerous d. safe
19. The teacher gave prizes to some students for their ....
 a. dreams b. floors c. bridges d. achievements
20. Bikes are slow .... of transport.
 a. mean b. means c. styles d. roads
21. I can't buy that mobile. It is too ....
 a. safe b. empty c. beautiful d. expensive

Language

Comparative and Superlative adjectives صفات المقارنة والتفضيل

• تنقسم الصفات إلى صفات قصيرة وصفات طويلة.

من أمثلة الصفات القصيرة

big	كبير	fast	سريع	tall	طويل
high	عالي	long	طويل	nice	لطيف

من أمثلة الصفات الطويلة

popular	شائع/مشهور	expensive	غالي الثمن	useful	مفيد
crowded	مزدحم	difficult	صعب	modern	حديث

• نستخدم صيغة المقارنة Comparative للمقارنة بين شيئين أو شخصين.

• نستخدم صيغة التفضيل Superlative للتفضيل بين واحد ومجموعة.

- تختلف صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل حسب الصفة ما إذا كانت قصيرة أو طويلة كما يلى:

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
short adjective "high"	صفة + er + than "higher than" Ex. Mount Kilimanjaro is higher than that mountain.	the + صفة + est "the highest" Ex. Mount Everest is the highest mountain.
long adjective "modern"	أقل / أكثر more / less + صفة + than Ex. My city is more modern than your city. Ex. Basketball is less popular than football.	الأقل / الأكثر The most / least + صفة Ex. Ali's city is the most modern one. Ex. This street is the least crowded in the city.



- عند تكوين المقارنة / التفضيل:

١- إذا انتهت الصفة القصيرة بحرف (e) يضاف (r) فقط عند تكوين صيغة المقارنة، ويضاف (st) فقط عند تكوين صيغة التفضيل.

nice → nicer than → the nicest

٢- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن يليه حرف (y) تحول (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (er) أو (est):

noisy → noisier than → the noisiest / busy → busier than → the busiest

٣- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك يضاعف الحرف الأخير في بعض الصفات:

big → bigger than → the biggest / thin → thinner than → the thinnest

٤- هناك صفات شاذة تحفظ صيغة المقارنة والتفضيل منها مثل:

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
good جيد	better than	the best
bad سيء	worse than	the worst
many كثير (للعدد)	more than	the most
much كثير (للكمية)	more than	the most
little قليل (للكمية)	less than	the least
far بعيد	farther / further than	the farthest / furthest

٢- عنـد الحديـث عن المسـافة المادية التي يمكن قياسـها نسـتخدم الصفتـان **farther** / **further**
لكـن عنـد الحديث عن البُعـد المعنوي بمعنى (إلى حد بعيد - أو أكثر / أبعد من ذلك / علاوة على) نسـتخدم **further** فقط.

Ex. Aswan is farther / further away from Cairo than Al-Menia.

Ex. Do you have any further questions to ask? (~~NOT farther~~)

Ex. Please, I can't do any further homework. (~~NOT farther~~)

٣- من الممكن أن نستغنى عن **than** عند المقارنة وتفهم من المعنى:

Ex. Mona is clever but Habiba is cleverer (than her).

٤- تستخدم صيغة التفضيل بدون **the** بعد الأعداد الترتيبية (the first / the second ... etc.):

Ex. Alex is the second largest city in Egypt.

- كما تستخدم صيغة التفضيل أيضًا بعد **'s** الملكية وبعد صفات الملكية (my / his / her ... etc.) بدون the.

Ex. He lost his best book yesterday.

Ex. Helmi's most difficult subject is Maths.

٥- يستخدم حرف الجر **in** بعد صفات التفضيل **est / the most** إذا جاء بعده اسم مفرد يكون واحد من مجموعة:

Ex. The Nile is the longest river in the world.

Ex. My sister is the tallest in our family. (SB P.17)

- بينما يستخدم حرف الجر **of** بعد صفات التفضيل **est / the most** إذا جاء بعده اسم جمع أو كلمة **all**:

Ex. Ahmed is the cleverest of all his friends.

Ex. Some people think maths is the most difficult of all. (SB P.17)

٦- لاحظ انه يمكن استخدام **the + صفة + er** عند المقارنة بين اثنين:

Ex. Ali is the faster of the two boys.

٧- عند تساوي اثنين في صفة نستخدم **as + صفة + as**:

Ex. Shady is as fast / intelligent as Magdy.

٨- عند عدم تساوي اثنين في صفة نستخدم **not + as / so + صفة + as**:

Ex. Omar is not as /so clever as me.

٩- يمكن استخدام **(much)** قبل صفات المقارنة لإعطاء قوة فى المعنى.

Ex. Bangkok is much older than Brazilia. (SB P.15)

١٠- تأتى **(or)** فى السؤال بـ **(Which)** للمفاضلة بين شيئين.

Ex. Which pyramid is taller, the Great Pyramid or the Red Pyramid? (SB P.14)

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. Old cars are .... than modern cars. WB الدقهلية / إدارة شرق المنصورة 2022
   a. noisier b. noisy c. noisiest d. as noisy
2. The plane is the .... means of transport. WB
   a. expensive b. more expensive c. most expensive d. much expensive
3. Ali is tall, but Rami is .... WB
   a. taller b. tallest c. tall d. as tall
4. My friend lives .... the school than me. SB
   a. nearest b. nearer c. near d. most nearer
5. A lion is .... than a monkey. أكتوبر 2023
   a. strong b. strongest c. as strong d. stronger
6. The Nile River is longer .... the Amazon. SB
   a. as b. most c. more d. than
7. My cousins felt .... after they moved to a new flat. WB
   a. happiest b. happier c. more happier d. as happy
8. The whales are .... sea animals in the world. القسيم 2023
   a. biggest b. the bigger c. the biggest d. bigger
9. My sister is the .... in our family . العمرانية 2023
   a. tallest b. tall c. taller d. as tall
10. Football is .... popular game in Egypt. بلقاس 2023
    a. most b. the most c. more d. less
11. Mountain climbing is .... dangerous sport of all. قها 2023
    a. the b. the most c. less d. more
12. Salma is .... than Rana. الإسكندرية 2023
    a. older b. old c. oldest d. the oldest
13. Hager is wearing her .... dress today. أبو حمص 2023
    a. more new b. newer than c. newest d. the newest
14. I think the train is .... comfortable than the bus. سمالوط 2023
    a. least b. as c. most d. more

Bit by Bit Exercises

15. Samy is .... as his brother Sherif.
    a. as good b. good c. better d. the best
16. Is Doaa the oldest girl .... all her sisters?
    a. for b. at c. of d. in
17. Who is the tallest person .... your family?
    a. in b. of c. to d. on
18. Which city of the two cities is .... from Cairo?
    a. farthest b. than far c. as far d. further
19. I asked the teacher if there are .... questions to answer.
    a. farther b. further c. far d. as far
20. My dad thinks English is .... than French.
    a. difficult b. more difficult
    c. as difficult d. the most difficult
21. That mobile is .... one of all.
    a. cheaper b. cheapest c. cheap d. the cheapest
22. Reading the story is interesting, but watching the film is ....
    a. the most interesting b. interesting
    c. more interesting d. as interesting

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Exams

1. An elephant is............ (big) than a camel. SB
2. Cairo is ....(most) crowded than Aswan. WB إدارة العلوم - المنوفية 2023
3. Milk is .... (good) for you than cake. أسيوط 2023
4. This is the............ (better) restaurant in our city. العمرانية 2023
5. I think the museum is the .... (good) place for a holiday. قنا 2023
6. She is .... (good) at math than her sister. أسيوط 2023
7. Who is............ (tallest), Samy or your brother? غرب المنصورة 2023
8. Is your father .... (oldest) than your uncle? بني سويف / إدارة سمسطا 2022
9. She looks even............ (bad) than last week. الزقازيق / إدارة ديرب نجم 2022

Bit by Bit Exercises

10. The red car is............ (most) expensive one.
11. This is the ....(happy) day in my life.
12. Cairo is noisier............ (that) Tanta.
13. Ahmed is good but Ali is ....(more good).



Speaking

Making comparisons
عمل مقارنات

Questions	Answers
- Which subject is more difficult English or History? أي المواد اكثر صعوبة، اللغة الإنجليزية أم التاريخ؟	- History is more difficult. التاريخ أكثر صعوبة.
- Compare Bangkok with Brasilia. Which city is older? قارن بانكوك وبرازيليا. أي المدينتين أقدم؟	- I think Bangkok is older. أعتقد أن بانكوك أقدم.
- Which pyramid is older, the Great Pyramid or the Red Pyramid? أيهما أقدم، الهرم الأكبر أم الهرم الأحمر؟	- The Great Pyramid is older. الهرم الأكبر أقدم.

General Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Karim and Noor are talking about a visit to the Great Pyramid of Giza.

Karim : Where did you go yesterday?
Noor : ❶ ....
Karim : Wow! The Great Pyramid. ❷ ....?
Noor : It's in Giza.
Karim : ❸ ....?
Noor : It is 146 metres tall.
Karim : Which pyramid is taller, the Great Pyramid or the Red Pyramid?
Noor : ❹ ....
Karim : Can we visit them together?
Noor : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. Sharks are .... animals.
   a. cheap   b. high   c. dangerous   d. safe
2. It's not .... to swim at night.
   a. safe   b. high   c. modern   d. expensive

Language

1. She is .... intelligent than me. بني سويف / مستقبلنا 2022
   a. least b. most c. more d. much
2. This car is .... expensive one in the park. WB
   a. the most b. more c. more d. less
3. The .... place for a summer holiday is the beach.
   a. good b. worse c. better d. best

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Do you think films are .... (good) than books? بلقاس 2023
2. I think motorbikes are .... (most dangerous) bikes. أبو حمص 2023
3. Ice skating is .... (safest) than skiing.
4. The blue pen is .... (expensive) than the red one.
5. Ranya is the .... (tall) girl in our school.
6. Milk is .... (good) than tea. أخميم 2023

4 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

To your friend Osama about amazing places around the world.
- Your name is Essam and your email address is essam77@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is osama88@yahoo.com.

....

....

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة بريد اليكترونى:
- **What amazing places can you visit around the world?**
- **Which place is in Egypt? What is it like?**
- **Which place is outside Egypt? What is it like?**
- **Is there any amazing mountain you would like to visit?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- **We can visit many amazing places around the world.**
- **The Pyramids of Giza are ....**
- **They are very ....**
- **.................... in China is another amazing place.**
- **It is really ....**

Lessons 4, 5, & 6

SB pages 18-21 WB pages 80-83


استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

treasure	كنز	entrance	مدخل
space	فراغ/مساحة/فضاء	column	عمود
competition	مسابقة/منافسة	fountain	نافورة
collection	مجموعة	museum	متحف

Historical places & objects

The Valley of the Kings	وادى الملوك	The Rosetta Stone	حجر رشيد
The Karnak Temple	معبد الكرنك	Al Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر
Habu Temple	معبد هابو	The British Museum	المتحف البريطانى
The Hypostyle Hall	قاعة الأعمدة (فى معبد الكرنك)	The Great Court	الساحة الكبرى (بالمتحف البريطانى)
The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM)	المتحف المصرى الكبير		

Vocabulary

valuable	قيِّم/ثمين	article	مقال
display	عرض (الآثار/لسلعة مثلًا)	century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)
objects	أشياء	TV show	عرض تليفزيوني
picnic	نزهة (فى الهواء الطلق)	holiday places	أماكن الإجازات
website	موقع (على الإنترنت)	hieroglyphics	اللغة الهيروغليفية
city centre	وسط المدينة	covered	مُغطى
review	مراجعة نقدية	motorbike	دراجة نارية (موتوسيكل)
guide book	دليل إرشاد (للسياح)	measure (d)	يقيس
square metre	متر مربع	welcome (d)	يرحب بـ
playground	ملعب/فناء	expect (ed)	يتوقع
car park	موقف سيارات	design (ed) (n)	يصمم/تصميم
mountain climbing	تسلق الجبال		

Expressions & Prepositions

spend time + ing	يقضي وقت في	(be) able to	قادر على
have space for	به مساحة لـ	special about	مميز بخصوص
have the same opinion	له نفس الرأي	similar to	مشابه لـ
get busier	يزداد ازدحامًا	for longer	لفترة أطول
do a sport	يمارس رياضة	for the first time	لأول مرة
from top to bottom	من القمة للقاع	arrive at	يصل إلى (مكان صغير)
look nice	يبدو لطيفًا	the same as	نفس الشيء مثل
I'm afraid ...	أخشى أن ...	in my opinion	في رأي
show opinion of /about.	يعرض رأي بخصوص	later on	فيما بعد
on display	معروض	part of	جزء من

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
put	يضع	put	put
spend	يقضي/ينفق	spent	spent
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
take	يأخذ/يستغرق	took	taken
choose	يختار	chose	chosen

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
agree	يوافق	accept	disagree	لا يوافق
public	عام	general	private	خاص
allow	يسمح	let	prevent	يمنع

Definitions

entrance	مدخل	the way into a building, such as a door or gate[1]
treasure	كنز	a quantity[2] of valuable metals, jewels[3] etc.
competition	مسابقة	an event[4], often followed by a prize[5], in which people try to be the best at something
column	عمود	a tall structure[6] that holds up[7] part of a building
museum	متحف	a building to keep and display[8] important objects from the past

١-بوابة
٢-مقدار
٣-مجوهرات
٤-حدث
٥-جائزة
٦-بناء - مبنى
٧-يدعم - يرفع
٨-يعرض

Language Notes

1) even + comparative adjectives

تأتي **even** قبل صفات المقارنة لتحديد مقدارها (التقوية المعنى):

Ex. Al Azhar Park is even larger than that park.

Ex. Habiba is even more beautiful than Naglaa.

2) • allow • let

• **allow + object مفعول + to + inf.** يسمح لـ ... أن ...

Ex. My dad always allows me to use his car.

• **let + object مفعول + inf.** يسمح لـ ... أن ...

Ex. My dad always lets me use his car.

3) • similar (to) • the same as

• **similar (to)** مشابه لـ (ولكن هناك بعض الاختلاف البسيط)

Ex. Ali's house is similar to Farid's house.

• **the same (as)** نفس (الشئ - المكان) تفيد التطابق تماماً

Ex. Farid's T-shirt is the same as Ziad's.

4) spend

• **spend + وقت + (in) + فعل + ing**

Ex. I spend too much time (in) reading stories.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My room is .... cleaner than yours.
   a. many b. most c. even d. few
2. Our teacher allowed us .... a rest for ten minutes.
   a. to take b. take c. to taking d. taking
3. Let me .... you.
   a. helping b. help c. to help d. to helping
4. My book is .... to your book.
   a. same b. the similar c. similar d. the same
5. Eman spends too much time .... computer games.
   a. play b. to play c. plays d. playing

Audioscript

SB Page (18)



استمع إلى النصوص

Girl 1 : Which subject do you think is more difficult, English or science?

Girl 2 : In my opinion[1], science is the most difficult of all.

Boy 1: I think Dahab[2] has the most beautiful beach in Egypt. Do you?

Boy 2: I agree[3]. It's also the least crowded.

Girl 3 : What's your opinion of ice skating[4]? Do you agree that it's more dangerous than mountain climbing[5]?

Girl 4 : I'm afraid[6] I don't agree.

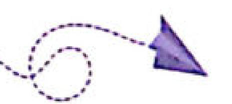
Boy 3: What do you think about the new TV show[7]?

Boy 4: I think it's the funniest show on TV right now.

١- في رأيي
٢- مدينة دهب (بالبحر الاحمر)
٣- يوافق
٤- التزلج على الجليد
٥- تسلق الجبال
٦- اخشى أن
٧- عرض تليفزيوني



Reading



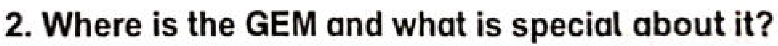
SB Page (19)

The Grand Egyptian Museum



1. Why did the museum in Tahrir need to move?

The oldest museum in Cairo opened in 1835. There were more than 160,000 of Egypt's most valuable[1] treasures[2] on display[3]. However[4], the museum did not have space[5] for 100,000 other objects[6]. In 2002, there was a competition[7] to design[8] a bigger and more modern museum. The competition had 1,557 designs[9] from more than 80 different countries.



2. Where is the GEM and what is special about it?

The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) welcomed[10] its first visitors in 2019. It is farther[11] from the city centre than the old museum, but only two kilometres from the pyramids at Giza. It has more space for valuable objects, more people can see them and it is able to[12] look after[13] the objects really well.

3. What can you see in the new GEM?

One of the most beautiful parts[14] of the museum is the entrance[15], with its big plants and statues. The biggest statue is that of Ramses II, which is 12-metres high.

Moving these objects from the old museum in Tahrir to the Grand Egyptian Museum is not easy. It is expected[16] to take many years of hard work.

١- قيّم
٢- كنوز
٣- معروض
٤- مع ذلك
٥- مساحة - فراغ
٦- أشياء
٧- مسابقة
٨- يصمم
٩- تصميمات
١٠- رحب بـ
١١- أبعد
١٢- قادر على
١٣- يعتني بـ
١٤- أجزاء
١٥- مدخل
١٦- من المتوقع

SB Page (20)

A website review



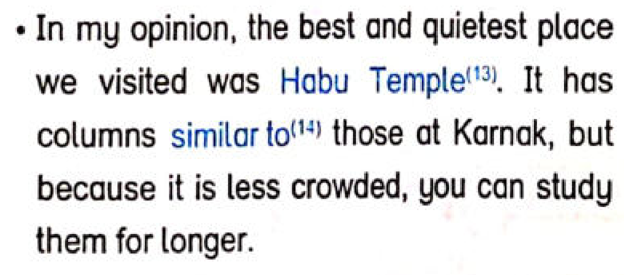
- We had a wonderful holiday[1] in Egypt. These are my opinions[2] about three of the most interesting places[3].
- The Valley of the Kings[4] in Luxor is one of the most popular places for tourists to visit. We went early because that is the quietest[5] time. My brother said, "This is fantastic"! I am sure it gets busier[6] later on[7] during the day[8].
- The biggest place we went to was the Karnak Temple[9]. My favourite part was the Hypostyle Hall[10], a 5,000-square- metre[11] "room" with 134 stone columns*[12]. I think it was more crowded than the Valley of the Kings.





- In my opinion, the best and quietest place we visited was Habu Temple[13]. It has columns similar to[14] those at Karnak, but because it is less crowded, you can study them for longer.

١- إجازة رائعة
٢- آراء
٣- أماكن
٤- وادي الملوك
٥- الأهدأ
٦- أكثر ازدحامًا
٧- فيما بعد
٨- أثناء النهار
٩- معبد الكرنك
١٠- قاعة
١١- متر مربع
١٢- أعمدة حجرية
١٣- معبد هابو
١٤- مشابه لـ



Say it correctly

* column — لا ينطق حرف (n) في هذه الكلمة.

SB Page (81)

The British Museum

- The British Museum[1] in London is the oldest public[2] museum in the world. It opened in 1759 and now has more than 13 million objects. About six million visitors go there every year.
- The museum has the largest / biggest collection[3] of Egyptian objects outside Egypt. One of its most important objects is the Rosetta Stone[4]. This arrived at the museum in 1802.The writing on the stone is in three different languages. This allowed[5] people to understand ancient Egyptian hieroglyphics[6] for the first time.
- In my opinion, the most beautiful part of the museum is the Great Court[7]. Its big glass room makes it the largest / biggest covered[8] square in Europe[9]. It opened in 2000 so it is also the most modern part of the museum.

١- المتحف البريطاني
٢- عام
٣- مجموعة
٤- حجر رشيد
٥- يسمح
٦- اللغة الهيروغليفية
٧- الساحة الكبرى
٨- مغطاة
٩- قارة اوروبا

SB Page (82)

Al Azhar Park

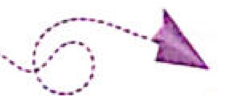


Al Azhar Park[1] is the largest and most beautiful park in Cairo. It is much larger than the small park near my house.

That park has a few trees and plants and I enjoy going there after school. You can spend[2] an hour or two in that park, but you can spend a lot of time at Al Azhar Park. The trees there are taller and it has more plants. It also has fountains[3], a lake[4] and cafés, too. I like going there because there is space for all our family to have a big picnic[5] at the weekends! My sister always says, "I love it here."

١- حديقة الأزهر
٢- يقضي
٣- نافورات
٤- بحيرة
٥- نزهة





Do you know about the seven wonders[1] of the ancient world? People thought that they were the most fantastic buildings in the world. Many of them were in or near Egypt. For many centuries, the Lighthouse of Alexandria[2] was the tallest building ever made. The sea was dangerous for boats because there were a lot of rocks near Alexandria. The lighthouse warned[3] boats about the rocks. This was a very important invention[4].

We use similar technology[5] today. We still use lighthouses to warn boats about rocks. Boats are safer[6] now thanks to[7] the work of the ancient Egyptians. The Hanging Gardens of Babylon[8] were probably in modern day Iraq. These were beautiful gardens around a huge palace[9].

The Statue of Zeus[10] was in ancient Greece[11]. This was believed to be the biggest statue in the world. Another wonder of the world was the Colossus of Rhodes[12]. This was another big statue in Ancient Greece. The Ancient Greeks also built the Temple of Artemis[13]... and the Tomb of Mausolus[14]. Time and earthquakes destroyed[15] most of these wonders of the world. After an earthquake in Alexandria, they built Fort Qaitbay[16] at the same place as the Lighthouse of Alexandria and used many stones from the same building.

١- عجائب
٢- منارة الإسكندرية
٣- حذرت
٤- اختراع
٥- تكنولوجيا
٦- أكثر أمانًا
٧- بفضل
٨- حدائق بابل المعلقة
٩- قصر ضخم
١٠- تمثال زيوس
١١- اليونان القديمة
١٢- تمثال رودس العملاق
١٣- معبد أرتميس (فى اليونان)
١٤- ضريح موسولوس
١٥- دمر
١٦- قلعة قايتباى
١٧- خبراء
١٨- أماكن جذب سياحى

Today, only the Great Pyramid of Giza remains. Experts[17] believe that this was the first ancient wonder because it is older than the others. Every year, millions of people come to see the pyramids of Egypt. They are some of the most visited tourist attractions[18] anywhere. For many people, the Great Pyramid of Giza is also a wonder of the modern world. Which building do you like the best? Why?

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. The .... of the Kings is one of the most popular places. 2023 إدارة العبور SB
   a. Valley b. Nile c. Cave d. River
2. The British .... is the oldest one in London. WB
   a. Review b. Picnic c. Museum d. Space
3. There are valuable .... in the museum. SB
   a. spaces b. walls c. subjects d. treasures
4. She won the maths .... 2022 دمياط
   a. collection b. competition c. fountain d. column
5. The British Museum has the biggest .... of Egyptian objects outside Egypt. 2023 أبو حماد
   a. collection b. competition c. design d. playground
6. We .... things by using the metre or the kilometre. 2023 حمص
   a. weigh b. count c. measure d. guess
7. A/An .... is the way into a building, such as a door or a gate. 2023 غرب المنصورة
   a. statue b. entrance c. treasure d. article
8. Mrs Mai has a fantastic .... of old stories. 2022 القناطر
   a. board b. collection c. achievement d. information

Bit by Bit Exercises

9. The tourist took a photo of the museum ....
   a. beach b. bank c. entrance d. website
10. There is a big water .... inside the garden. It looks fantastic!
    a. storm b. mountain c. volcano d. fountain
11. The Karnak Temple has a lot of stone ....
    a. websites b. guides c. columns d. competitions
12. That museum has a lot of .... objects. They are wonderful.
    a. valuable b. bad c. terrible d. horrible

13. The Grand Egyptian Museum has .... for a lot of objects.
a. picnic b. sunset c. fountain d. space
14. How many ancient objects were .... display in the museum?
a. on b. at c. of d. about
15. My T-shirt is similar .... yours.
a. at b. of c. on d. to
16. It's a .... watch. How much is it?
a. similar b. busy c. valuable d. public
17. .... my opinion, English is the most interesting subject.
a. On b. In c. For d. By
18. It is important to .... a sport to be healthy.
a. make b. say c. do d. take

Language

and / but / because — أدوات الربط

١- تستخدم (and) للربط بين أفكار متشابهة:

Ex. He is fast **and** always wins races.

٢- تستخدم (but) للربط بين أفكار متناقضة أو بين جملتين أحداهما مثبتة والأخري منفية:

Ex. He is fat **but** he always wins races.

Ex. She likes apples **but** she doesn't like oranges.

٣- تستخدم (because) للربط بين السبب والنتيجة:

النتيجة + **because** + السبب

Ex. He couldn't win **because** he was tired.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My sister didn't like the book, ... I loved it. WB
a. so b. because c. but d. also
2. I don't like this hotel .... it is not very modern. WB
a. because b. so c. although d. but
3. Ahmed did not come to school .... he was ill. WB
a. but b. so c. because d. although
4. We went to the shop for some bread, ... it was closed. WB
a. or b. but c. because d. so
5. A lion is louder .... stronger than a horse. WB
a. or b. so c. and d. but

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I like pizza .... (and) I don't like rice.
2. He was poor .... (and) he was happy. SB
3. I didn't like the music .... (and) it was too loud.
4. The computer was very expensive .... (because) I bought it. WB
5. He didn't pass the exam .... (so) he didn't study hard. نوفمبر 2023
6. I don't like this car .... (and) it is very old. يناير 2023

Speaking

1 Asking for and giving opinions

طلب واعطاء الآراء

- نسال عن الرأي بـ:

- Which ... do you think is more ..., ... or ...? اى ... تعتقد انها اكثر ... ... ام ...؟
- I think ... is the most ... . Do you agree? اعتقد أن ... هى الأكثر ... هل توافقنى؟
- What is your opinion of / about ...? ما رأيك فى ...؟
- What do you think of / about ....? ما رأيك فى ....؟
- Do you agree that ....? هل توافق أن ....؟

- لاعطاء الرأى:

- In my opinion, ... في رأيي، ....
- I'm afraid, ... اخشى، ....
- I think ... . اعتقد ....

2 Responding

الرد على الاقتراح

Agreeing

- That's right. هذا صحيح.
- I think so. إعتقد ذلك.
- I agree (with you). اوافق (اتفق معك).

Disagreeing

- I don't feel the same as you about that. لا أشعر مثلك بخصوص ذلك.
- I'm sorry, but I don't have the same opinion. آسف، لكن ليس لدى نفس الرأى.
- You are wrong! انت مخطئ!
- What? No way! ماذا؟ هذا مستحيل!
- That's impossible. هذا مستحيل.
- I don't think so. لا أعتقد ذلك.
- I disagree (with you). لا اوافق (لا اتفق معك)

- للتعبير عن عدم التأكد نستخدم:
- I'm not sure about that. لست متاكدًا من ذلك.

General Exercises on Lessons 4,5 & 6



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Adel and Ahmed are talking about sports.

Adel : What's your opinion of doing sports?

Ahmed : ❶ ....

Adel : I think football is the most interesting. ❷ ....?

Ahmed : ❸ .... Tennis is more interesting.

Adel : I don't agree with you.

Ahmed : ❹ ....?

Adel : Because I like team sports.

Ahmed : Let's go to the sports club tomorrow.

Adel : ❺ ....

Ahmed : OK! We can go next week.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There are more than 160,000 of Egypt's most valuable .... in the Grand Museum.
   a. subjects b. treasures c. walls d. spaces
2. The .... of the Karnak Temple are amazing.
   a. motorbikes b. columns c. mountains d. competitions
3. Amir is short .... he can play basketball.
   a. because b. for c. but d. so
4. He came first in the .... and took a prize.
   a. column b. competition c. space d. entrance
5. I can't buy this mobile .... I don't have enough money.
   a. but b. so c. while d. because

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I passed the exam............. (so) it was easy.
2. I play football well............. (but) my brother does, too.
3. I woke up late .... (because) I could catch the bus.

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

ب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

An important building in Egypt "The Grand Egyptian Museum"

- يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **What is the Grand Egyptian Museum?**
- **When did it open?**
- **Where is it?**
- **Why is it special?**
- **What is the most beautiful part of the museum?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **The Grand Egyptian Museum is a/an .... museum.**
- **It welcomed its first visitors in ....**
- **It is only two kilometres from ....**
- **One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is ....**

Unit 8

Review

Key Vocabulary

bridge	كوبرى	sunset	غروب الشمس	collection	مجموعة
pyramid	هرم	farther / further	ابعد	entrance	مدخل
tunnel	نفق	treasure	كنز	column	عمود
city	مدينة كبيرة	space	فراغ / مساحة / فضاء	fountain	نافورة
tower	برج	competition	مسابقة / منافسة	museum	متحف
suspension bridge	كوبري معلق				
achievements	إنجازات				

Language

1) Comparative and Superlative adjectives

• تنقسم الصفات إلى صفات قصيرة وصفات طويلة.

من أمثلة الصفات القصيرة

big	كبير	fast	سريع	tall	طويل

من أمثلة الصفات الطويلة

popular	شائع / مشهور	expensive	غالى الثمن	useful	مفيد

• نستخدم صيغة المقارنة **Comparative** للمقارنة بين شيئين أو شخصين.

• نستخدم صيغة التفضيل **Superlative** للتفضيل بين واحد ومجموعة.

• تختلف صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل حسب الصفة ما إذا كانت قصيرة أو طويلة كما يلى:

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
short adjective "tall"	صفة + er + than "higher than"	the + صفة + est "the highest"
long adjective "popular"	أقل / اكثر more / less popular than	الأقل / الأكثر The most / least popular

- هناك صفات شاذة تحفظ صيغة المقارنة والتفضيل منها مثل:

Adjective		Comparative	Superlative
good	جيد	better than	the best
bad	سيء	worse than	the worst
many	كثير (للعدد)	more than	the most
much	كثير (للكمية)	more than	the most
little	قليل (للكمية)	less than	the least
far	بعيد	farther / further than	the farthest / furthest

٢- عند الحديث عن المسـافة المادية التي يمكن قياسـها نستخدم الصفتان **farther** / **further** لكن عند الحديث عن البُعد المعنوي بمعنى (إلى حد بعيد - أو أكثر / أبعد من ذلك / علاوة على) نستخدم **further** فقط.

2) and / but / because

١- تستخدم (and) للربط بين أفكار متشابهة:

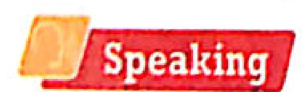
Ex. He is lazy **and** always fails exams.

٢- تستخدم (but) للربط بين أفكار متناقضة:

Ex. He is weak **but** he works hard.

٣- تستخدم (because) للربط بين السبب والنتيجة:

Ex. He didn't go to the club **because** he was ill.



1) Talking about measurements

الحديث عن القياسات

Questions	Answers
- How long is the Cairo-Alexandria desert road?	- It's about 220 kilometres long.
- How old is the Luxor Temple?	- It's just under 3,500 years old.
- How deep is Lake Baikal in Russia?	- It's 1,642 metres deep under the water.
- How high is Abraj Al-Bait Clock Tower in Saudi Arabia?	- It's about 601 metres high.
- How many people live in Cairo?	- More than 20 million people live in Cairo.

Making comparisons

عمل مقارنات

Questions	Answers
- Which subject is more difficult English or History?	- History is more difficult.
- Compare Bangkok with Brasilia. Which city is older?	- I think Bangkok.
- Which pyramid is older, the Great Pyramid or the Red Pyramid?	- The Great Pyramid is older.

Asking for and giving opinions

طلب وإعطاء الآراء

• نسأل عن الرأي ب

- Which ... do you think is more ..., ... or ...?
- I think ... is the most ... . Do you agree?
- What is your opinion of / about ...?
- What do you think of / about ....?
- Do you agree that ....?

• لإعطاء الرأي:

- In my opinion, ...
- I'm afraid, ...
- I think ... .

Responding

الرد

Agreeing	Disagreeing
- That's right.	- I don't feel the same as you about that.
- I think so.	- I'm sorry, but I don't have the same opinion.
- I agree (with you).	- You are wrong!
	- What? No way!
	- That's impossible.
	- I don't think so.
	- I disagree (with you).

- للتعبير عن عدم التأكد نستخدم:

- I'm not sure about that.

General Exercises on Unit 8

1 Complete the following dialogue:

2022 [illegible]

Mona and Noha are talking about the Tahya Masr Bridge.

Mona : Where did you go last week?

Noha : ❶ ....

Mona : The Tahya Masr Bridge! ❷ ....?

Noha : It is 540 metres long.

Mona : Is it old?

Noha : ❸ .... It is new.

Mona : ❹ ....?

Noha : It opened in 2019.

Mona : What is its floor made of?

Noha : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. The Nile is quite .... in Cairo. It's not narrow. SB
   a. wide b. cheap c. modern d. expensive
2. What do you think .... the new TV show? SB
   a. off b. about c. at d. for
3. The market is busy at this time. It will be very .... WB
   a. empty b. crowded c. quiet d. wide
4. A: Where did you buy that laptop? B: From a shop in the city ....
   a. town b. screen c. centre d. circle
5. I said it was a very good film but Hassan ....
   a. agreed b. liked c. admired d. disagreed
6. I like working in my office because it is always ....
   a. noisy b. quiet c. quite d. narrow
7. What does he look .... ?
   a. like b. as c. dislike d. hate
8. Please, buy some milk. The bottle is ....
   a. full b. crowded c. empty d. low

Language

9. Let's buy green apples because the red apples are .... WB
   a. more expensive b. as expensive
   c. expensive than d. the expensive

10. London is .... than Brasilia.
    a. modern
    b. more modern
    c. the most modern
    d. as modern
11. What is the .... place in Egypt?
    a. most popular b. more popular c. as popular d. popular than
12. When my uncle died, it was the .... day in my life.
    a. bad b. as bad c. worse d. worst
13. The green shirt is the .... one.
    a. cleanest b. clean c. as clean d. cleaner
14. I didn't have lunch .... I was hungry.
    a. and b. although c. but d. or
15. The plane is more expensive .... the ship.
    a. than b. so c. thin d. that

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Salem is .... (strong) than Sameh.
2. Samir is .... (most careful) than Ali.
3. I couldn't attend the meeting .... (but) the traffic was busy.
4. Manal is smart .... (but) clever.

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

WB

"The most beautiful place you know"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **What is the most beautiful place you know?**
- **When did it open?**
- **Why is it special?**
- **Does it have many visitors?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- .... **is the most beautiful place I know.**
- **It opened in** ....
- **It has more than** .... **objects.**
- **About** .... **visitors go there every year.**
- **In my opinion, the best part of** .... **is** ....

Unit 8

Al Azhar Test



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Al Azhar Park is the .... and most beautiful park in Cairo.
   a. largest b. smallest c. longest d. furthest
2. That park has a few .... and plants.
   a. people b. benches c. trees d. palms

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Hamza : Hi! What are you reading?

Mohamed : ❶ ....

Hamza : The Tahya Masr Bridge! ❷ .... ?

Mohamed : It's 540 m long.

Hamza : How about visiting it?

Mohamed : ❸ .... ?

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The lion is .... than the dog.
   a. dangerous b. most dangerous c. least dangerous d. more dangerous
2. How .... is the Qasr El Nile Bridge?
   a. many b. often c. long d. tall
3. We need to buy more water. This bottle is ....
   a. empty b. low c. noisy d. crowded
4. The teacher asked the students to .... a quiz.
   a. do b. throw c. make d. let
5. I like the .... of this school. It has many flowers on the right and the left.
   a. equipment b. bedroom c. skeleton d. entrance

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Egypt is a big country in Africa. It is a great country. Every year, a lot of tourists come to visit Egypt . They visit a lot of beautiful places. They come by air or by sea. Most of them prefer visiting Egypt in winter because it is usually warm. They visit the Egyptian Museum in Cairo. They also go to Giza to see the Pyramids and the Sphinx. They go to Luxor to see the Temple of Karnak. In summer, they go to the beaches to enjoy swimming and fishing. **They** spend a lot of money which is important for Egypt.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think tourists prefer visiting Egypt in winter?

----

2. Give a suitable title for this passage.

----

3. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Tourists can see the .... in Giza.
   a. sea   b. pyramids   c. beaches   d. temple

5. The tourists go to the beaches in ....
   a. winter   b. spring   c. summer   d. fall

5 Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. walking - **Many people** - across - the - enjoy - bridge. ....
2. pyramid - modern - more - **Which** - is? ....
3. museum - 1835 - **The** - opened - in - oldest. ....
4. of - opinion - ice - **What's** - your - skating? ....

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"An important building in Egypt"

Paragraphs & E

Your visit to Luxor Temple

Last year my school made a trip to Luxor. It was my dream to visit Luxor. So, I went there with my friends. We visited Luxor Temple. It's a very old temple. It was built thousands of years ago. We saw many huge statues there. They were amazing. They are statues of ancient Egyptian kings. My friends and I took many photos beside these statues. There were writing and painting on the walls of the temple. We spent a wonderful time in Luxor and went back home very happy.

Amazing places around the world

To: osama88@yahoo.com

From: essam77@gmail.com

Subject: Amazing places around the world.

Dear Osama,

How are you? I'd like to tell you about amazing places around the world.

We can visit many amazing places around the world. The Pyramids of Giza are fantastic. They are very tall. They are always crowded with visitors. The Shanghai Tower in China is another amazing place. It is very high. It is really modern. Bangkok, the capital of Thailand, is a very old city. A lot of people live there. Mount Everest is also amazing. It is the highest mountain in the world. I hope I will visit these places when I grow up.

Yours,

Essam

An important building in Egypt (The Grand Egyptian Museum)

The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) is a great museum. It welcomed its first visitors in 2019. It is only two kilometres from the Pyramids of Giza. It has a lot of space for

mails

valuable objects. More people can see them. It is able to look after the objects really well. One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance, with its big statues. The biggest statue there is that of Ramses II which is 12 metres high.

The most beautiful place I know

The British Museum in London is the most beautiful place I know. It is the oldest public museum in the world. It opened in 1759 and now has more than 13 million objects. About six million visitors go there every year. The museum has a beautiful collection of Egyptian objects. One of its objects is the Rosetta Stone. This arrived at the museum in 1802. The writing on the stone is in three different languages. In my opinion, the best part of the museum is the Great Court.

The Tahya Masr Bridge

To: sarahamdi@hotmail.com

From: salmazaki@gmail.com

Subject: The Tahya Masr Bridge

Dear Sara,

How are you? I want to tell you about the Tahya Masr Bridge. It is the world's widest suspension bridge. It opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 m wide and 540 m long. More than 4.000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016. They finished it in 32 months. The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. More than 100.000 people live on the island. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset.

Yours,

Salma

Unit 8 TEST



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. The oldest museum in Cairo opened in ....

   a. 1835 b. 1853 c. 1385 d. 1583

2. There were a lot of .... there.

   a. trees b. treasures c. trucks d. entrances

3. It didn't have .... for many objects.

   a. science b. skies c. rooms d. space

4. It was a .... museum.

   a. bad b. terrible c. wonderful d. careless

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Hossam is asking Sameh about the Grand Egyptian Museum.

Sameh : Yesterday I visited the Grand Egyptian Museum.

Hossam: Wow! ❶ ....?

Sameh : It is not far from here.

Hossam: ❷ ....?

Sameh : It opened in 2019.

Hossam: Is it interesting?

Sameh : ❸ ....

Hossam: What did you see there?

Sameh : ❹ ....

Hossam: ❺ .... Would you tell me the way to it?

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The ancient Egyptians were very powerful. They built tombs to be buried in. T thought that the King was a god. They didn't wear many clothes. Most men wore a k of short skirt, but women used to wear long dresses.

Women didn't go out to work. **They** stayed at home. Most men were farmers. Th children did the same jobs as their parents. Girls stayed at home with their mothe They learned to look after their families. Boys worked with their fathers. They o went to school if they wanted to learn to do new jobs. Children used to run, jump c play games. Their toys were made of wood.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where were the Kings of Ancient Egypt buried?

----

2. Why did the girls stay at home?

----

3. Do you like life in Ancient Egypt? Why / Why not?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Most Men in Ancient Egypt wore ....

a. caps b. blouses c. trainers d. skirts

5. The ancient Egyptians thought that their King was a ....

a. father b. god c. prince d. leader

6. The underlined word "**They**" refers to ....

a. sons b. children c. men d. women

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A village is .... than a city.

a. quieter b. quiet c. quietest d. as quiet

2. The museum is usually .... on a Saturday than a Sunday.

a. crowded b. more crowded c. as crowded d. most crowded

3. I think the blue dress is .... than the red dress.

a. nice b. nicest c. nicer d. as nice

4. People use .... to cross roads or rivers.
   a. planes b. towers c. rockets d. bridges
5. There was a .... in the garden of the villa.
   a. fountain b. sky c. star d. mountain
6. The teacher was angry because the students were very .... WB
   a. quiet b. narrow c. noisy d. low
7. There is not much noise in that village. It's really ....
   a. quiet b. quit c. loud d. noisy
8. Be careful you don't hit your head on the door. It's very .... WB
   a. empty b. wide c. noisy d. low
9. Only people and bikes can go down that road because it is very .... WB الغربية / إدارة السنطة 2022
   a. wide b. narrow c. big d. long
10. .... is the time when the sun disappears. WB
   a. Sunlight b. Sunscreen c. Sunset d. Sun cream

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Tennis is............ (little) dangerous than football. SB
2. The boy can't carry the bag .... (but) it is very heavy.
3. Who is............ (more tall), Ali or his sister? أبوحماد 2023
4. The Tahya Masr Bridge is about 67 metres............ (old). بلقاس 2023

E Writing

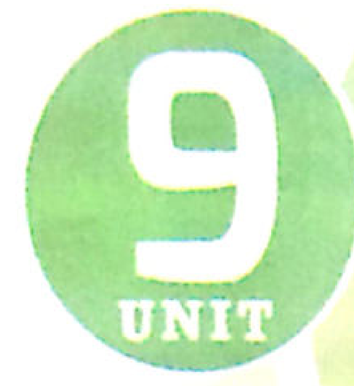
6 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words:

To your friend Sarah about the Tahya Masr Bridge. (مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار)
- Your name is Salma and your email address is salmazaki@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is sarahamdi@hotmail.com.

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:
- **Why is the Tahya Masr Bridge special?**
- **When did it open?**
- **Why do people enjoy walking across the bridge?**

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- **The Tahya Masr Bridge is the world's widest suspension bridge.**
- **It opened in ....**
- **More than .... people helped to build it.**
- **It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet.**







Objectives

Reading:
Holiday plans, a postcard; *Around the World in 80 Days*

Writing:
A paragraph about an adventure sport; an email planning a trip

Listening:
Discussing adventure sports; a game; a presentation about a trip to the desert; a conversation about choosing activities

Speaking:
Discussing activities and travel plans; describing the weather

Language:
going to for plans; reflexive pronouns

Life Skills:
Negotiating; respect the opinions of others





SB pages 22-23 WB page 84

Key Vocabulary





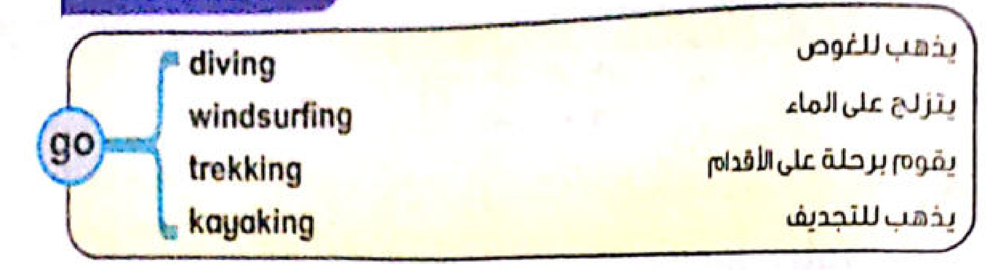
Water sports			Mountain sports		
diving	الغطس		rock climbing	رياضة تسلق الصخور	
kayaking	رياضة التجديف		mountain biking	رياضة ركوب الدراجات على الجبال	
sailing	الإبحار		trekking	الارتحال (نزهة سير طويلة على الأقدام)	
windsurfing	التزلج على الماء (بواسطة الرياح)		zip lining	رياضة الانزلاق بالحبل	

Vocabulary

turn	دور	No way!	مستحيل!
adventure sports	رياضات المغامرات	meal	وجبة
fun (adj / n)	ممتع/متعة	cook (ed)	يطهو
How high...?	كم ارتفاع...؟	look (ed)	يبدو
wind	رياح	walk (ed)	يسير
article	مقال	try (ied)	يجرب «شيء»/يحاول
Sinai	محافظة سيناء		

Expressions & Prepositions

try / do a sport	يجرب/يمارس رياضة	across the desert	عَبْر الصحراء
travel home	يسافر عائدًا للوطن/للمنزل	on the ground	على الأرض
there's no time	لا يوجد وقت	look at	ينظر إلى
there's much to do	يوجد الكثير لفعله	good at	جيد في
a bit dangerous	خطير بعض الشئ	trek in the mountains	يرتحل/يتجول في الجبال
go down rivers	يبحر عبر الأنهار	do something scary	يفعل شيء مخيف
plans for the future	خطط للمستقبل		



Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
go	يذهب	went	gone
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
amazing	رائع	wonderful	terrible	فظيع / سئ
quiet	هادئ	calm	noisy	مزعج / صاخب
fun	ممتع	enjoyable	boring	ممل
scary	مرعب	frightening	calming	مهدئ
dangerous	خطير	unsafe	safe	آمن

Definitions

diving	الغطس	a sport where a swimmer goes deep under water to look at fish, sea animals, etc.
kayaking	التجديف	a sport or hobby[1] where one or two people travel in a narrow[2] boat
mountain biking	رياضة ركوب الدراجات على الجبال	a sport where someone rides a bike not on roads
rock climbing	رياضة تسلق الصخور	a sport where someone climbs up rocks
sailing	الابحار	a sport where someone sails a boat or a yacht[3]
trekking	الارتحال	a sport where someone walks, usually for long distances[4] in the mountains or countryside[5]
windsurfing	التزلج على الماء (بواسطة الرياح)	a sport where someone travels on water while standing on a board[6] with a sail[7]
zip lining	رياضة الانزلاق بالحبل	a sport where someone slides[8] along a metal wire[9] between two high points[10]

١- هواية
٢- ضيق
٣- يخت
٤- مسافات
٥- الريف
٦- لوح مسطح
٧- شراع
٨- ينزلق
٩- سلك معدنى
١٠- نقطتين

Language Notes

1) look

١ - يأتي الفعل (look) بمعنى (يبدو) ويتبعه صفة.

look fun	يبدو ممتعًا	look scary	يبدو مخيفًا

Ex. I think that mountain biking looks scary.

٢ - يستخدم الفعل (look) بمعنى (ينظر) ويأتي معه حروف جر تغير معناه مثل:

look for	يبحث عن (شئ مفقود)	look up	يبحث عن معلومات
look after	يعتني بـ	look like	يشبه

Ex. You can look this new word up in a dictionary.

2) • on holiday • in the holidays

• on holiday في إجازة

Ex. I'm on holiday in Rome.

• in the holidays في الإجازات

Ex. I'm going to visit different places in the holidays.

3) • scary • scared

• scary (adj) مرعب/مخيف

Ex. This kind of sport is scary.

• scared (adj) مرعوب/خائف

Ex. She was scared of the terrible storm.

4) • would like • like

• I'd like → to + inf. يريدان

Ex. I'd like to go diving in the sea.

• I like → v. + ing / to + inf. يحب

Ex. I like diving in the sea.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't go near that dog! It .... scary.
   a. sees b. watches c. looks d. runs
2. Please, look .... my child; I'll be back soon.
   a. up b. after c. to d. like
3. Tamer is not here. He is .... holiday.
   a. in b. at c. in the d. on
4. I don't want to watch this .... film.
   a. scary b. frightened c. scared d. lovely
5. I'd like .... windsurfing. It's amazing.
   a. try b. trying c. to try d. tried



Audioscript

SB Page (23)

استمع إلى النصوص



Imad : What are you looking at, Hassan?

Hassan : Hi Imad. It's an article[1] about adventure sports[2] in Egypt.

Imad : Oh yes! Last year, I went diving[3] in the Red Sea. It was amazing[4]!

Hassan : I'd love to do that. I'd like to try windsurfing[5], too.

Imad : What about rock climbing*[6]?

Hassan : I don't know. I think rock climbing is a bit dangerous[7], but I like trekking[8] in the mountains.

Imad : Me, too! I like the mountains. I'm going to visit Sinai[9] with my family in the holidays[10].

Hassan : Are you going to try mountain biking[11], Imad?

Imad : No, I'm not going to do anything scary[12]. It is very difficult to ride a bike in the mountains.

Hassan : I think you're right. Zip lining[13] looks scary, too.

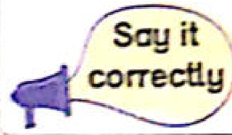
Imad : I think it looks fun[14]! I'm going to try it one day!

Hassan : Really? No way[15]!

١- مقال
٢- رياضات المغامرات
٣- ذهبت للغطس
٤- رائع
٥- التزلج على الماء
٦- تسلق الصخور
٧- خطير بعض الشئ
٨- الإرتحال
٩- سيناء
١٠- في الاجازات
١١- ركوب الدراجات علي الجبال
١٢- مخيف
١٣- رياضة الانزلاق بالحبل
١٤- ممتعة
١٥- مستحيل







• climbing ينطق الحرف الثالث (i) في هذه الكلمة مثل نطق حرف (i) في كلمة (line) ولا ينطق حرف (b).

SB Page (23)

Mustafa : I'm going to go to the mountains.

Hazem : OK. Are you going to go trekking?

Mustafa : No, I'm not.

Hazem : Are you going to go rock climbing?

Mustafa : Yes, I am!

Hazem : Your bag is ....D.

Mustafa : That's right.

Hazem : My turn[1]. I'm going to the beach.

Mustafa : Are you going to go kayaking*[2]?

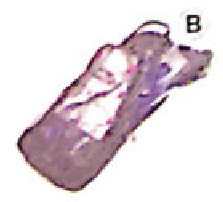
Hazem : No, I'm not.

١- دور
٢- رياضة التجديف





Mustafa : Are you going to go diving?
Hazem : Yes, I am.
Mustafa : Your bag is ... B.







• kayaking ينطق المقطع (kay) مثل (ki) في كلمة (kite).



SB Page (23)

New Message

Hi Eman!

I'm in Dahab with my family. There's so much to do here! This afternoon, we're going to go trekking in the mountains. I'm not going to try rock climbing. It's too scary!
Tomorrow, we're going to try windsurfing in the morning and in the afternoon, we're going to go diving! We're not going to go kayaking. There is no time!



Love, Reem

Send

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. We sometimes go .... across the desert for two days or more. 2023
   a. sailing b. swimming c. trekking d. diving
2. .... is a mountain sport. 2023
   a. Diving b. Sailing c. Windsurfing d. Trekking
3. We can't go .... today because there is no wind! 2023 WB
   a. windsurfing b. climbing c. biking d. shopping
4. All you need to go .... is a boat and some wind!



   a. sailing b. diving c. trekking d. zip lining

5. Rock .... is a dangerous sport. 2022 دمياط إدارة

a. diving b. kayaking c. climbing d. sailing

6. In ...., you start really high, but you finish on the ground.

a. diving b. trekking c. zip lining d. kayaking

7. I love going .... down rivers. It's usually very quiet!

a. kayaking b. running c. trekking d. zip lining

8. I love .... because I'm good at swimming under the water.

a. sailing b. zip lining c. trekking d. diving

9. .... climbing is the most dangerous sport. القليوبية 2022

a. Tree b. Rock c. Cave d. Wall

Bit by Bit Exercises

10. This film .... scary. I don't like it.

a. likes b. sees c. looks d. watches

11. It's your .... to answer the question.

a. turn b. tour c. switch d. queue

12. We usually go .... holiday in the countryside.

a. of b. on c. at d. in the

13. Some people like to .... dangerous sports.

a. wear b. cry c. spend d. try

14. Tourists usually go .... in the Red Sea to see colourful fish.

a. zip lining b. diving c. climbing d. trekking

15. You need a special bike to try ....

a. rock climbing b. trekking
c. kayaking d. mountain biking

16. Diving in the Red Sea is a great ....

a. fan b. fun c. run d. gun

17. I'd like to try .... sports like rock climbing and windsurfing.

a. adventure b. safe c. secure d. calm

18. The opposite of "quiet" is ....

a. calm b. quite c. noisy d. ugly

19. It took us an hour walking .... the desert to reach the temple.

a. across b. under c. for d. cross

20. The word "scary" has the same meaning of the word ....

a. noisy b. frightening c. safe d. calm



Future المستقبل "(be) going to"

1- (be) going to سوف (للتعبير عن المستقبل)

Form التكوين

I	am	+ going to + inf. مصدر الفعل....
He/ She/ It /اسم مفرد	is	
We/ You/ They / اسم جمع	are	

لاحظ الاختصارات: am = 'm / is = 's / are = 're

Ex. He is going to buy a new house next year.

Usage الاستخدام

- نستخدم (be) going to للتعبير عن الآتى:

١- تنبؤ فى المستقبل مع وجود دليل

Ex. It's cloudy. I think it is going to rain.

٢- خطط مستقبلية

Ex. I am ('m) going to visit Sinai.

٣- قرارات مسبقة

Ex. I am going to watch TV in the afternoon.

٤- نوايا

Ex. I'm going to buy a jacket next week.

- أى أننا نستخدم (be) going to للدلالة على الخطط/القرارات/النوايا وتدل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

plan يخطط/خطة - **decide** يقرر - **decision** قرار - **intend** ينوى - **intention** نية

٥- أحداث على وشك الوقوع

Ex. Watch out! A car is going to hit you.

Negative النفى

- للنفى نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

فاعل + am / is / are + not + going to + inf....

لاحظ الاختصارات: am not = 'm not / is not = isn't / are not = aren't

Ex. I'm not going to study Spanish.

Question السؤال

- للاستفهام نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

(كلمة استفهام) Am / Is / Are + فاعل + going to + inf. ......?

للسؤال (بهل):

Ex. Are you going to try rock climbing?

- Yes, I am. - No, I am not (I'm not).

للسؤال بكلمة استفهام:

Ex. When are you going to play tennis?

- On Monday.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

• كلمات تعبر عن المستقبل:

هذه الليلة tonight - قريبًا soon - في المستقبل in the future - غدًا tomorrow - ... القادم ....next

- in (3 hours) في خلال (٣ ساعات)



• يمكن أن نستخدم (be) going to بعد (think) طالما أن هناك دليل:

Ex. Look at the clear sky. I think it's going to be a nice day.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. I am going to .... Sinai. — SB إدارة العجمي/الإسكندرية 2023
   a. visits b. visiting c. visited d. visit
2. What .... going to wear tomorrow? — WB أوسيم 2023
   a. were you b. you will c. you are d. are you
3. The weather tomorrow .... better. — شرق كفر الشيخ 2023
   a. is going to be b. was c. are d. will
4. .... Reem going to try rock climbing? — SB
   a. Are b. Is c. Am d. Will
5. What are you .... do next Saturday? — أبو قرقاص – المنيا 2023
   a. going to b. going c. go d. go to
6. Ahmed's journey .... start in March. — SB
   a. to go b. is going to c. going to d. going
7. Who .... to cook your meal this evening?
   a. going b. is go c. is going d. to go
8. Where .... going to study? — البحر الأحمر/إدارة سفاجا 2022
   a. do you b. you are c. are you d. you do
9. .... you going to travel home by bus after school?
   a. Are b. Is c. Will d. Am
10. What is Reem .... to do tomorrow morning? — SB
    a. go b. to go c. gone d. going

Bit by Bit Exercises

11. It's a very easy test, I think I .... it.
    a. pass b. am going to pass c. am passing d. passing
12. Munir made his decision. He is going .... to London.
    a. to travel b. travelling c. travel d. to travelling

13. Look out! The wall .... fall.
   a. goes to   b. are going to   c. went to   d. is going to
14. Are Salwa and Hala going to go to school .... ?
   a. yesterday   b. last week   c. tomorrow   d. in 2020
15. I .... do this sport, it's dangerous.
   a. am not going to   b. going   c. going not   d. am going
16. She .... buy a car. This is her plan.
   a. going   b. going to   c. is going to   d. is going
17. Ali is still in bed. I think he .... be late for school.
   a. is going to   b. are going to   c. isn't going   d. going to
18. .... they going to go to the party?
   a. Is   b. Are   c. Am   d. Have

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Exams

1. What .... (is) you going to do next Saturday? WB
2. Are you going .... (trying) rock climbing? نا 2023
3. Amira is going to .... (helping) her mother. المدرشين 2023
4. What .... (is) you going to do next Sunday? إدارة العبور 2023
5. Ahmed .... (are) going to go trekking next year. المحمص 2023
6. Is she .... (go) to try rock climbing? بوكير 2023
7. I am going to .... (bought) some milk this afternoon. العمرانية 2023

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. Ola .... (is going to) play games. She has no time.
9. What are you .... (go) to have for dinner, Hala?
10. Are you going to buy a new mobile.............. (last week)?

General Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali is talking to Hassan about adventure sports.

Ali : Hello Hassan. ❶ ....?
Hassan : I'm reading an article.
Ali : What is it about?
Hassan : ❷ ....
Ali : ❸ ....?
Hassan : Yes, I do. I went diving last year.
Ali : That's amazing!
Hassan : What about you?
Ali : ❹ .... Can I go with you next time?
Hassan : ❺ ....

② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. Seham is good at swimming, she wants to try ....
   a. diving b. jumping c. running d. climbing
2. .... is a sport where someone sails a boat or a yacht.
   a. Trekking c. Mountain biking b. Sailing d. Zip lining
3. What are your plans .... the future?
   a. to b. for c. on d. over
4. Where do you usually go .... the holidays?
   a. on b. about c. in d. off
5. I'm going to spend the weekend in the village. It's my ....
   a. article b. way c. point d. plan

Language

6. She is going to .... a new dress.
   a. bought b. buying c. buy d. buys
7. We're going to .... trekking in the mountains.
   a. go b. going c. went d. gone
8. The box isn't heavy. I think he .... to carry it.
   a. is going b. going c. is not going d. not going

③ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Ahmed .... (are) going to go trekking next year. العجمي / الإسكندرية 2023
2. Are you going to .... (sent) the letter?
3. Naglaa is going to .... (buying) a new jacket.
4. What is Samy .... (go) to do at work?
5. I'm very tired. I think I .... (am going) to go out.
6. I think Ramy .... (does) going to win the next match. He trains well.

Lessons 2 & 3

SB pages 24-27 WB pages 85-86

Key Vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات

Bedouin families	عائلات بدوية	adventure	مغامرة
journey	رحلة طويلة	wet	رطب/مبتل
tent	خيمة	weather	الطقس
guide	مرشد	protect (ed)	يحمى

Weather words

Noun	الاسم	Adjective	الصفة	Noun	الاسم	Adjective	الصفة
sun	الشمس	sunny	مشمس	snow	الجليد	snowy	جليدى
rain	المطر	rainy	ممطر	storm	عاصفة	stormy	عاصف
clouds	السُحب	cloudy	ملبد بالغيوم	fog	ضباب	foggy	ملئ بالضباب
wind	الرياح	windy	شديد الرياح				

Vocabulary

dark	معتم/مظلم/غامق	sunglasses	نظارة شمس
towel	منشفة (فوطة)	negotiation	تفاوض/تشاور
mirror	مرآة	argument	نقاش/جدال
experience	تجربة حياتية	frightened	خائف/مرعوب
equipment	معدات	eagle	نسر
trek	رحلة طويلة سيرًا على الأقدام	negotiate (d)	يتفاوض/يتشاور
nearly	تقريباً	sound (ed)	يبدو
plan	خطة	shop (ped)	يتسوق
pool	حمام سباحة		

Expressions & Prepositions

enjoy ourselves	نقضى وقت ممتع	get **to** the top	يصل للقمة
keep warm	يبقى دافئًا	**on** the way **down**	فى الطريق لأسفل
take a photo	يلتقط صورة	**on** the third **of** march	في اليوم الثالث من مارس
have a picnic	يذهب فى نزهة	**at** the start **of**	في بداية
would like + to + inf.	يريد أن	put **on**	يرتدى

get dressed	يرتدي ملابسه	go on a boat trip	يذهب في رحلة بالقارب
go camping	يقيم في معسكر	fall over	يسقط أرضًا
arrive at	يصل (لمكان صغير)	find out about	يكتشف عن
arrive in	يصل (لمكان كبير)	sit by the fire	يجلس بجوار النار
See you soon.	أراك قريباً.		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
hurt	يصيب/يؤذي	hurt	hurt
win	يفوز	won	won
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
fall	يَسقُط	fell	fallen
show	يعرض	showed	shown

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
excited	متحمس	interested	uninterested	غير مهتم
win	يفوز	come first	lose	يخسر
protect	يحمي	keep	hurt	يؤذي

Definitions

guide	مرشد	a person who shows a place to tourists
protect	يحمي	look after, keep safe[1]
journey	رحلة طويلة	a long trip from one place to another
adventure	مغامرة	an exciting experience[2] when something unusual or dangerous happens
wet	رطب/مبتل	covered with[3] water; not dry
tent	خيمة	something you sleep in when you go camping[4]
cloud (n) / cloudy (adj)	سحابة/ملبد بالغيوم	a cloud is a white object[5] that floats in the sky. When there are clouds in the sky, the weather is cloudy
fog (n) / foggy (adj)	ضباب/ملئ بالضباب	fog is a very low cloud, when it becomes difficult to see very far. When there is fog, the weather is foggy

١- آمن
٢- تجربة حياتية
٣- مغطى بـ
٤- إقامة معسكر
٥- شيء

rain (n) / **rainy** (adj) مطر / ممطر	rain is water that falls from the sky. When it rains, the weather is rainy
snow (n) / **snowy** (adj) جليد/جليدى	snow is like cold, soft, white rain and falls from the sky. When it snows, the weather is snowy
wind (n) / **windy** (adj) رياح/شديد الرياح	wind is the movement[6] of air. When the wind blows[7], the weather is windy
storm (n) / **stormy** (adj) عاصفة/عاصف	a storm is very bad weather, with a lot of wind and rain or snow. When there is a storm, the weather is stormy
sun (n) / **sunny** (adj) الشمس/مشمس	The sun is what gives us light. When the sun shines[8], the weather is sunny

٦- حركة
٧- تهب (رياح)
٨- تسطع

Language Notes

1) Ordinal Numbers الأعداد الترتيبية

- هى الأعداد التى تشير الى ترتيب شىء ما فى سلسلة من الأحداث وتستخدم عند قراءة التواريخ.
- عند كتابة هذه الأعداد مختصرة يكتب العدد وبعده آخر حرفين من الكلمة.
- الأرقام الثلاثة (3-2-1) تكتب هكذا:

the first (1st) الأول   the second (2nd) الثاني   the third (3rd) الثالث

- الأعداد (20 - 4) يضاف للعدد (th) فى آخره، وكذلك 30 - 40 حتى 100.

- the fourth (4th) الرابع
- the twentieth (20th) العشرون
- the hundredth (100th) المائة
- the twenty first (21st) الحادي والعشرون

2) Weather words كلمات الطقس

- هى الأسماء التي تعبر عن حالات الطقس:

sun - rain - clouds - wind - snow - storm - fog

- لاستخدام هذه الأسماء كصفات لوصف حالة الطقس نضيف حرف (y) لها:

Noun الاسم		Adjective الصفة		Noun الاسم		Adjective الصفة	
rain	المطر	rainy	ممطر	clouds	الشحب	cloudy	ملبد بالغيوم

Ex. There is a lot of rain. = It's rainy.

Ex. There are a lot of clouds. = It's cloudy.

3) • journey • voyage • flight • trip • picnic

• **journey** رحلة طويلة

Ex. The journey to Luxor takes 9 hours.

• **voyage** رحلة بحرية

Ex. The Titanic's first voyage was in 1912.

Adventure!

- **flight** رحلة جوية

Ex. The flight from Cairo to London takes 5 hours.

- **trip** رحلة قصيرة (للاستمتاع أو لغرض معين)

Ex. My father went on a business trip to Paris.

- **picnic** نزهة خلوية (فى الهواء الطلق)

Ex. We had a picnic in the park yesterday.

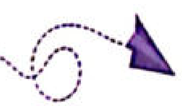
Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I was born on the .... of July.
   a. four b. fourth c. forty d. fourteen
2. It's going to rain; it's very ....
   a. cloud b. clouds c. cloudy d. a cloud
3. I can't go on a .... today, the sea is too high.
   a. flight b. trip c. picnic d. voyage
4. It was a long .... from Cairo to Luxor by train.
   a. journey b. flight c. voyage d. picnic



SB Page (24)



استمع إلى النصوص



New Message

My Trekking Adventure

By Ahmed

Next year, I'm going to go trekking across[1] Sinai. It's going to be a big adventure[2]! I'm going to travel nearly 500 kilometres through mountains from Ras Shetan[3] to Serabit El Khadem[4]. I'm going to sleep in a tent[5] and stay with Bedouin families[6]. I'm going to have a guide[7] to help me find the way and a camel to carry food and water. The journey[8] is going to take me 43 days.

Here's my plan:

3rd March	leave Ras Shetan
14th March	arrive at Ein Kidd[9]
30th March	arrive at St Catherine
1st April	climb Mount Catherine[10]
15th April	arrive at Serabit El Khadem

١- عَبْر
٢- مغامرة
٣- منطقة راس شيطان
٤- منطقة سرابيط الخادم
٥- خيمة
٦- عائلات بدوية
٧- مرشد
٨- رحلة
٩- عين كيد (واحة منعزلة بسيناء)
١٠- جبل سانت كاترين

Send





SB Page (26)

Dear Grandma,

We're really enjoying ourselves on holiday in South Africa[1]! It's beautiful here and there's a lot to do.

Yesterday was an adventure. We went trekking in the mountains. It was sunny[2] when we started, but when we got to the top of the mountain, we saw dark clouds[3]. On the way down, the rain started! Then there was a storm[4]. The rocks were wet[5] and Tamer fell over[6] and hurt[7] himself. But it's OK - his leg is better today.

Tomorrow the weather[8] is going to be better[9], so we're going to try zip lining! I'm a bit frightened[10], but I'm excited[11], too

See you soon,

Dalia.



١- دولة جنوب افريقيا
٢- مشمس
٣- سُحب
٤- عاصفة
٥- رطب/مبتل
٦- سقط
٧- أصاب/جرح
٨- الطقس
٩- أفضل
١٠- خائف قليلاً
١١- متحمس



SB Page (25)

The first of April.
The second of May.
The third of August.
The fourteenth of September.
The twenty first of December.
The thirtieth of January.

SB Page (25)

Mariam : Next year, I'm going to go sailing down the Nile with my family.
We're going to travel from Aswan to Luxor.
We're going to leave Aswan on 28th December.
We're going to arrive in Luxor on 4th January.



SB Page (26)

a: It's very sunny and there aren't any clouds in the sky. I think it's a very hot day.

b: There are lots of clouds and they're very dark. I think that there's going to be a storm.



c: It's a sunny day, but there are some clouds in the sky above the mountain. I think it's quite hot.

d: It's very foggy. I think it's raining. It looks cold and wet.

SB Page (27)

Nader: Last weekend, we went on a trip to the desert. I woke up early and made myself breakfast. Then I got dressed[1]. I put on my clothes and looked at myself in the mirror[2]. I put on a hat and sunglasses[3] to protect[4] myself from the sun. At the desert, we met our guide and we rode with him on our camels. My sister took this photo of herself with her camel. That night, we cooked ourselves dinner on a fire. After dinner, when it got cold, we sat by the fire to keep ourselves warm.



١- يرتدي ملابس
٢- مرآة
٣- نظارة شمس
٤- يحمي

WB Page (85)

Girl: This summer, I'm going on holiday with my family. On 25th July, we're going to drive to the Red Sea. On 30th July, we're going to go on a boat trip. On 3rd August, my cousins are going to visit us. On 6th August, we're going to have a picnic. We're coming home on the tenth. See you then!

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. On his way down, he .... over and hurt himself. إدارة الحسينية 2023
   a. fell b. took c. made d. gave
2. A .... is a person who shows places to tourists. إدارة بنا 2023
   a. visitor b. pilot c. nurse d. guide
3. A .... is something you sleep in when you go camping. WB البحيرة / إدارة رشيد 2022
   a. boat b. journey c. guide d. tent
4. It is usually very .... in August. WB
   a. rainy b. sunny c. funny d. snowy
5. There is .... at the top of that mountain. Look, it is all white! WB
   a. snow b. wind c. rain d. storm

6. It is not very hot today because there are a lot of .... in the sky. WB
   a. storms b. wind c. clouds d. sun
7. The roads are dangerous when it is .... WB
   a. clear b. fine c. foggy d. hot
8. After coming out of the sea, I dried myself with a .... غرب المحلة 2022
   a. tape b. towel c. pool d. tool
9. .... the third of March, Ahmed's going to leave Ras Shetan. شرق شبرا الخيمة 2023
   a. In b. On c. At d. For
10. Travelling to Aswan by car is a long .... إدارة الإسماعيلية 2022 WB
   a. journey b. voyage c. flight d. picnic
11. We can't sail because there is no .... إدارة قنا 2023
   a. snow b. wind c. fog d. rain
12. There was a .... and the ship sank. إدارة أبوحماد 2023
   a. storm b. cloud c. wind d. fog

Bit by Bit Exercises

13. I .... some photos of the animals in the zoo yesterday.
   a. put b. gave c. did d. took
14. It rained heavily and the roads became .... yesterday.
   a. dry b. wet c. excited d. ancient
15. It was so cold, so I wore my jacket to keep ....
   a. cold b. worm c. hot d. warm
16. Sunglasses .... our eyes from the sun.
   a. return b. enjoy c. protect d. complete
17. .... families always live in the desert.
   a. Modern b. Rich c. Funny d. Bedouin
18. Tourists visit Egypt in winter to enjoy its warm ....
   a. rain b. sky c. weather d. moon
19. It's difficult to drive my car in .... weather.
   a. happy b. rainy c. nearly d. lovely
20. They travelled across the forest. It was a great ....
   a. adventure b. article c. equipment d. argument



Reflexive pronouns
الضمائر المنعكسة (التوكيدية)

تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة (التوكيدية) فى الحالات الآتية :

١- عندما يكون فاعل ومفعول الجملة واحد (أى نفس الشخص)

Ex. Sherif hurt himself. — قام شريف بإيذاء نفسه.

Ex. They look after themselves. — إنهم يعتنون بأنفسهم.

Ex. Did you hurt yourself? — هل آذيت نفسك؟

٢- للتأكيد على أن الفاعل قام بفعل شىء بمفرده (بدون مساعدة من أحد)

Ex. Nobody helped me do the work. I did it myself. بنفسى

ادرس الجدول التالى لضمائر الفاعل والمفعول وصفات الملكية والضمائر المنعكسة.

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل	Object pronouns ضمائر المفعول	Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية	Reflexive pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة
I أنا	me	my	myself بـ (نفسى)
He هو	him	his	himself بـ (نفسه)
She هى	her	her	herself بـ (نفسها)
It هو/هى لغير العاقل	it	its	itself بـ (نفسه/بنفسها) لغير العاقل
You أنت	you	your	yourself بـ (نفسك)
You أنتم	you	your	yourselves بـ (أنفسكم)
We نحن	us	our	ourselves بـ (أنفسنا)
They هم	them	their	themselves بـ (أنفسهم)

• لاحظ أن الضمائر المنعكسة التى تعبر عن فاعل مفرد (I / He / She / It / You) تنتهى بـ (self).

Ex. I made a cup of tea myself.

Ex. You should clean your room yourself, Ali. — • (هنا You تعنى أنت)

• أما الضمائر المنعكسة التى تعبر عن فاعل جمع (We / You / They) أو أسماء جمع فتنتهى بـ (selves).

Ex. They went to the party themselves.

Ex. You should clean your rooms yourselves, boys. — • (هنا You تعنى أنتم)

Examples:

Ex. Ahmed painted the house himself.

Ex. Fatma played the drums herself.

Ex. The cat cleans itself.

Ex. Ali and Mona cooked lunch themselves.



١- إذا بدأت الجملة بأمر مثبت ... Inf. أو بأمر منفى ... Don't + inf يكون الضمير المنعكس فى هذه الحالة إما yourself أو yourselves

Ex. Use an umbrella to protect yourself / yourselves from the rain.

٢- يمكن استخدام حرف الجر (by) مع الضمائر المنعكسة بمعنى (بمفرده/بدون مساعدة) وتساوي في المعنى التعبيرات الآتية:

by myself = alone = on my own

Ex. Thank you, I can repair the car by myself.

٣- يأتي بعد الفعل (enjoy) ضمير منعكس بمعنى «يقضي وقتًا ممتعًا».

Ex. We enjoyed ourselves in the park.

Ex. Enjoy yourself / yourselves.

٤- هناك تعبيرات أخرى تأتي مع الضمائر المنعكسة مثل:

- **Help yourself!** ساعد نفسك (تفضل).
- **Take care of yourself.** اعتني بنفسك.
- **Behave yourself.** تأدب (تصرف بأدب).
- **Make yourself at home.** البيت بيتك.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. Children usually enjoy .... when they play on the beach. End of Term Practice
   a. ourselves b. herself c. themselves d. himself
2. I didn't buy this cake. I made it .... WB
   a. yourself b. itself c. herself d. myself
3. We enjoyed .... when we went sailing. SB
   a. themselves b. ourselves c. myself d. himself
4. Fatma took .... a photo with a camel. SB
   a. myself b. himself c. itself d. herself
5. Karim made .... some salad for lunch. SB
   a. yourself b. himself c. myself d. ourselves

6. Sara has a jacket to keep .... warm. WB
   a. myself b. himself c. themselves d. herself

7. The birds sleep in caves to protect .... from eagles. WB
   a. ourselves b. themselves c. yourselves d. yourself

8. Sami came out of the sea and dried .... with a towel. SB
   a. himself b. herself c. itself d. themselves

9. She put on a hat to protect .... العمرانية 2023
   a. himself b. herself c. yourself d. itself

10. Be careful! Don't cut .... الحسينية 2023
   a. yourself b. myself c. himself d. ourselves

11. My mother cut .... while cooking lunch. سملوط 2023
   a. myself b. yourself c. herself d. himself

12. The cat can clean .... البدرشين 2023
   a. herself b. yourself c. itself d. himself

13. Rasha, put away the clothes by .... إدارة كفر الشيخ 2023
   a. herself b. myself c. yourself d. yourselves

14. You don't drive this car. It drives .... إدارة الحالكة 2023
   a. myself b. itself c. herself d. himself

Bit by Bit Exercises

15. Did you paint your room by ....?
   a. myself b. yourself c. himself d. herself

16. The cat jumped when it looked at .... in the mirror.
   a. themselves b. herself c. itself d. yourself

17. I gave my friend the letter ....
   a. myself b. his c. him d. yourself

18. Huda always cleans her room ....
   a. herself b. themselves c. himself d. itself

19. Farid carried all the bags ....
   a. myself b. themselves c. itself d. himself

20. I can park the car ....
   a. herself b. myself c. ourselves d. itself

21. We prepared for the trip ....
   a. ourselves b. themselves c. himself d. itself

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Exams

1. Maher made the bed .... (herself). [illegible] 2023
2. They took a photo of .... (himself). [illegible] 2023
3. The boy looked at .... (herself) in the mirror. [illegible] 2023

Bit by Bit Exercises

4. Animals usually clean .... (itself).
5. Tarek enjoyed .... (herself) when he went on holiday.
6. Did you all enjoy .... (yourself) at the park?
7. A duck usually washes .... (herself) in water.
8. Here are all the toys, Ziad. Enjoy .... (himself)!

Speaking

1 Discussing activities and travel plans مناقشة الأنشطة وخطط السفر

Questions	Answers
1- What are you going to do this weekend? - ماذا ستفعل في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع؟	- I am going to visit Sinai. - سأزور سيناء.
2- Are you going to sleep in a tent? - هل ستنام في خيمة؟	- Yes, I am. - No, I am not.
3- When are you going to leave Sinai? - متى ستغادر سيناء؟	- On 26th October. - في السادس والعشرين من شهر اكتوبر.

2 Describing the weather وصف الطقس

Questions	Answers
1- How is the weather? كيف حال الطقس؟ 2- What is the weather like today? كيف حالة الطقس اليوم؟	- It's hot / cold / sunny / rainy etc. إنه حار / بارد / مشمس / ممطر ... الخ.
3- Is it hot / cold / sunny / rainy etc.? هل الجو حار / بارد / مشمس / ممطر ... إلخ؟ 4- Is it raining outside? هل تمطر بالخارج؟	- Yes, it is - No it isn't. - Yes, it is raining outside. نعم، انها تمطر بالخارج.

General Exercises on Lessons 2 & 3



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Adel and Samy are talking about their plans for the weekend.

Adel : I'm going to go to the mountains in the weekend.

Samy : 1 ....?

Adel : Yes, I am going to go trekking.

Samy : 2 ....?

Adel : Yes, I am going to sleep in a tent. What about you?

Samy : 3 ....

Adel : Are you going to go diving there?

Samy : 4 .... I don't know how to dive.

Adel : Are you going to go swimming?

Samy : Yes, I am. 5 ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. I like the .... life in Sinai.
   a. Wet b. Bedouin c. Country d. Solar
2. It's sunny outside. Take your .... with you.
   a. sunglasses b. skills c. towels d. mirrors
3. I love waking up in a .... and hearing the birds sing when I camp. الإسكندرية 2023
   a. tent b. hotel c. house d. museum
4. An umbrella .... you well from the rain.
   a. protects b. climbs c. shops d. sounds
5. You can sleep in your .... in the desert. إدارة أوسيم 2022
   a. hotel b. house c. tent d. flat
6. When you drive a car you must be careful when it's .... إدارة البدرشين 2023
   a. foggy b. cold c. cloud d. wonderful

Language

7. Salma is very active. She tidies her room ....
   a. myself b. ourselves c. herself d. itself
8. Can you do this quiz by ...., boys?
   a. yourself b. ourselves c. myself d. yourselves

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My father cleans his office............. (myself).
2. Ihab parked the car .... (with) himself.
3. They fixed the door .... (himself).
4. The cat hid .... (himself) from the dog.

4 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words:

WB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

To your friend Ramy about your favourite adventure sport.

- Your name is Yasser and your email address is yasser37@hotmail.com. Your friend's email address is ramy83@yahoo.com.

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة بريد اليكترونى:

- **What is your favourite adventure sport?**
- **Why do you prefer it?**
- **Where can people try it?**
- **Is it dangerous?**
- **Does it need special equipment?**

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **I like adventure sports.**
- **I like .... best.**
- **People can try it in ....**
- **It is sometimes dangerous.**
- **................... needs / doesn't need special equipment.**

Lessons 4, 5, & 6

SB pages 28-31 WB pages 87-90

Key Vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات

advantages	مميزات	challenge (d) (n)	يتحدى - تحدى
railway line	خط سكة حديد	diving	الغوص

Vocabulary

photo album	ألبوم صور	suggestion	اقتراح
special	خاص - مميز	British	بريطانى الجنسية
writer	كاتب	station	محطة (قطار مثلاً)
idea	فكرة	character	شخصية
famous	مشهور	stay (ed)	يقيم
hobby	هواية	return (ed)	يعود
newspaper article	مقال صحفى فى جريدة	suggest (ed)	يقترح
forms of transport	أشكال/أنماط المواصلات	respond (ed)	يرد - يستجيب

Countries & Cities

the UK	المملكة المتحدة	Kolkata	مدينة كلكتا (فى الهند)
England	انجلترا	San Francisco	مدينة سان فرنسيسكو (فى أمريكا)
Mumbai	مدينة مومباى (فى الهند)	New York	مدينة نيويورك (فى أمريكا)

Expressions & Prepositions

do activities	يقوم بأنشطة	by the beach / sea	بجوار الشاطئ/البحر
take a challenge	يقبل تحدى	on time	فى الوقت المحدد
complete a challenge	يكمل تحدى	excited about	متشوق بخصوص
make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ	around the world	حول العالم
make a photo album	يصنع ألبوم صور	look forward to + V-ing.	يتطلع إلى
take a ship back	يستقل سفينة عائدًا	at that time	في ذلك الوقت
travel east	يسافر تجاه الشرق	in eighty days	خلال ٨٠ يوم
play chess	يلعب شطرنج	from ... to ...	من ... إلى ...

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
learn	يتعلم	learnt (learned)	learnt (learned)
meet	يقابل	met	met

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
advantages	مميزات	merits / pros	disadvantages	عيوب
famous	مشهور	well-known	unknown	غير معروف
stay	يقيم	settle	leave	يغادر

Definitions

challenge	تحدى	a difficult task[1] or problem	١- مهمة
railway line	خط سكة جديد	the metal[1] that a train travels on	٢- معدن

Language Notes

1 • 'd rather • 'd prefer

• **'d rather + inf.** (inf) تأتي بمعنى «يفضل» ويأتي بعدها مصدر الفعل بدون

Ex. I'd rather play basketball.

• **'d prefer + to + inf. / n** (n اسم) أو (to + inf) تأتي بمعنى «يفضل» ويأتي بعدها.

Ex. I'd prefer to play tennis.

Ex. I'd prefer tennis.

2 Verbs & Expressions followed by (V-ing.)

هناك أفعال وتعبيرات يأتى بعدها V-ing. مثل:

enjoy	يستمتع بـ	dislike	يكره
finish	ينهي	practise	يمارس
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	How / What about....?	ما رأيك....؟
(be) used to	معتاد على		

Ex. I enjoy playing tennis in my free time.

Ex. I'm looking forward to seeing you soon.

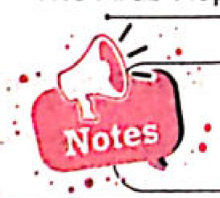
3 Countries

- هناك بعض الدول يمكن أن يختصر اسمها الأصلي إلى الحروف الأولى مثل:

The United States of America (America) = The USA

The United Kingdom (Britain) = The UK

The Arab Republic of Egypt (Egypt) = The ARE



- يجب أن يكون الاختصار بأحرف كبيرة (Capital letters).
- تستخدم أداة التعريف (the) قبل الاسم الكامل أو الاختصار.

4) in - on & at

- **in (2020 - May - winter)** (in) مع السنين/الشهور/فصول السنة نضع

Ex. I went to Aswan in winter.

- **on (Monday - holiday)** (on) مع التاريخ وأيام الأسبوع نضع

Ex. I was born on 21st December 2010.

- **at (6 o'clock - that time)** (at) مع الوقت نضع

Ex. I always wake up at 7 o'clock.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'd rather .... for a walk.
   a. going b. to go c. go d. to going
2. I'd prefer .... a photo album.
   a. buy b. to buy c. buying d. bought
3. I'm looking forward .... medicine.
   a. study b. to study c. studying d. to studying
4. Did you visit .... USA last year?
   a. the b. an c. a d. no article
5. He is going to leave .... 2nd October.
   a. in b. on c. at d. from



SB Page (28)

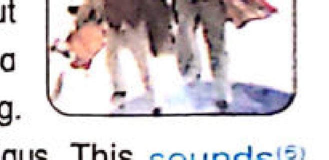




استمع إلى النصوص

Around the World in 80 Days

by Jules Verne



In 1872, the writer Jules Verne read a newspaper article[1] about a new railway line[2] across India[3]. It gave him a great idea for a book. He wrote a story about a British[4] man called Phileas Fogg. He takes a challenge[5] to travel around the world in just 80 days. This sounds[6] easy today, but at that time, there were no cars or planes.

Fogg's plan

London[7] to Suez[8], Egypt	train and ship	7 days
Suez to India	ship	13 days
India to Hong Kong[9]	train and ship	16 days
Hong Kong to Japan[10]	ship	6 days
Japan to the USA[11]	ship	22 days
Across the USA	train	7 days
USA to London	ship	9 days

١- مقال صحفي
٢- خط سكة حديد
٣- دولة الهند
٤- بريطاني
٥- تحدي
٦- يبدو
٧- مدينة لندن
٨- مدينة السويس
٩- مدينة هونج كونج
١٠- دولة اليابان
١١- الولايات المتحدة الامريكية

Leave on 2nd October	Return on 21st December

When Phileas Fogg takes the ship back to London from the USA, there is a big storm[12] at sea and he arrives in London one day late, on 22nd December. But he made a mistake[13]: because he travelled east around the world, it is one day earlier than he thought. So he completes his challenge on time[14]!

-١٢
١٣- عاصفة
١٤-ارتكب خطأ
١٥- في الوقت المحدد

SB Page (30)


New Message

From : Maher
To : Karim
Subject : Your visit

Cc Bcc

Dear Karim,

I'm really excited[1] that you are going to come and stay with us next week. I'm looking forward to[2] seeing you again. What time is your train going to arrive? We can meet you at the station[3].

Our new home is by the beach. We can go swimming every day. There are lots of other things to do, too. How about going windsurfing or diving? On Thursday, Grandad is going to visit us. Let's make him a special present[4]. Why don't we find photos of ourselves and our other cousins? We can make him a photo album[5].

See you on Saturday!

From

Maher

١- متحمس
٢- أتطلع إلى
٣- محطة قطار
٤- هدية خاصة
٥- ألبوم صور





WB Page (89)

New Message

Dear Manal,

I'm writing to tell you my plans[1] for the summer. It's going to be fun but busy. Then you can write to me about your plans!

First, I'm going to visit my cousins in Alexandria. They're going to take me to the famous[2] library. I'm very excited about that. It's a beautiful building.

I'm going to go home on 22nd August. I'm going to have tennis lessons! I can't play tennis now, but I'm going be very good after the lessons!

Let's do some things together[3] before we go back to school. What about going to the beach? You always like swimming. Write to me soon[4] so I know your plans!

From

Judy

١- خطط
٢- مشهور
٣- معاً
٤- قريباً/سريعاً





Audioscript SB Page (29)

Ola : I'm really enjoying myself on our holiday. I love being by the sea[1]. What shall we do this afternoon?

Lamia : Why don't we go swimming?

Ola : I'm not sure. Swimming is fun, but we can do that at home. I'd rather[2] do something more exciting.

Lamia : OK. How about going windsurfing?

Ola : I don't know. I'm not very good at windsurfing and it isn't very windy today.

Lamia : OK, not swimming and not windsurfing. I know! Let's go kayaking.

Ola : Good idea[3]! I love kayaking.

١- بجوار البحر
٢- أفضل
٣- فكرة جيدة

Videoscript SB Page (29)





There are many sports that people enjoy today, such as hockey[1], athletics[2], and archery[3]. But did you know these sports, and many others, were first played in Ancient Egypt?

Very old drawings[4] and paintings[5] show people playing a lot of different sports.

This picture in the Temple of Ramses III shows people fencing[6] with sticks[7]. In fencing today, two people fight each other with swords[8].

The Ancient Egyptians also liked running. During the time of King Taharka[9], there was a race[10] of 100 kilometres. People believe that this was a test so that the king could find his best soldiers[11]. Today, there is a race called the Pharaonic[12] Race. This, too, is 100 kilometres. It starts at the Hawara pyramid[13] and finishes in Saqqara[14].

Running is very popular today. Millions of people around the world go running every week. It is a good way to stay healthy.

Some people think the ancient Egyptians played tennis, because there is a town near the Nile called Tinnis... and because the Arabic word for part of the hand is rahat al-yad[15]. This sounds like the racket[16] you hit[17] the ball with.

Sport was very important in Ancient Egypt. Is sport important for you?

١- رياضة الهوكى
٢- ألعاب القوى
٣- رياضة الرماية
٤- رسومات
٥- رسومات بالألوان
٦- يتبارز
٧- عصى
٨- سيوف
٩- الملك طهارقه (فرعون مصري)
١٠- سباق
١١- جنود
١٢- فرعونى
١٣- هرم هوارة (بالفيوم)
١٤- منطقة سقارة
١٥- راحات اليد
١٦- مضرب
١٧- يضرب

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. I'd rather .... chess. WB

   a. playing b. to play c. play d. to playing

2. Phileas Fogg travels from .... USA to the UK by ship. SB

   a. a b. the c. an d. any

3. I'd prefer .... tennis. WB

   a. to play b. playing c. play d. to playing

4. Most people like to have a photo .... of the most important events in their life. إدارة أبو حماد 2023

   a. note b. leaflet c. diary d. album

5. My father is travelling to Saudi Arabia .... March 2nd. إدارة أبو حمص 2023

   a. in b. on c. at d. for

6. Phileas Fogg takes a .... to travel around the world in just 80 days. إدارة شرق شبرا الخيمة 2023

   a. challenge b. hobby c. station d. activity

7. Rock climbing is quite dangerous. I'd rather .... football. إدارة شرق شبرا الخيمة 2023

   a. to play b. play c. playing d. to playing

8. It's a great .... for me to win. إدارة أسوان 2022

   a. ship b. challenge c. check d. chip

9. I put all my photos in a photo .... الجيزة / إدارة العياط 2022

   a. album b. note c. station d. guide

Bit by Bit Exercises

10. "Famous" means ....

    a. unknown b. well-known c. general d. special

11. A .... is a difficult task or problem.

    a. challenge b. station c. present d. hobby

12. Mohamed Elneny is a .... footballer.
    a. sunny b. delicious c. wet d. famous
13. Manal is excited .... visiting Disney Land.
    a. of b. about c. to d. in
14. I like visiting my cousins; they live .... the beach.
    a. by b. with c. for d. about
15. The boy .... a mistake and lost two marks in the exam.
    a. took b. gave c. did d. made
16. Fogg could finish his journey .... time.
    a. at b. to c. on d. of
17. Trains run on railway ....
    a. lines b. rows c. ropes d. desks
18. Doing sports has many.......... .
    a. suggestions b. hobbies c. presents d. advantages
19. Winning the final match was a great .... for our team.
    a. challenge b. article c. opinion d. transport
20. I'm looking forward to .... Mo Salah one day.
    a. met b. meet c. meeting d. meets
21. We .... many activities in our school.
    a. make b. do c. spend d. stay
22. **A:** How about going out for a meal? **B:** Good ....!
    a. diary b. ideal c. idea d. area

Speaking

1 Making and responding to suggestions عمل اقتراحات والرد عليها

A: Making suggestions

• لعمل اقتراحات نستخدم الأسئلة والتعبيرات الآتية:

1- What / How about + V-ing...? ما رأيك في.....؟

Ex. What / How about going on a trip to Fayoum?

2- Why don't + فاعل + inf....? لم لا.....؟

Ex. Why don't we paint the house green?

3- What shall we + inf....... ? ماذا سوف نفعل.....؟

Ex. What shall we do at the park?

4- Shall we + inf ....? هلا نفعل .....؟

Ex. Shall we go rock climbing?

5- Let's + inf. .... هيا بنا.....

Ex. Let's go home. It's going to rain.

B: Responding to suggestions:

• للرد على الاقتراحات نقول:

Agreeing		Disagreeing	
- Good idea!	فكرة جيدة!	- I'm not sure.	لست متأكدًا.
- That sounds good.	هذا يبدو جيدًا.	- That sounds a bit scary.	هذا يبدو مخيف بعض الشئ.
- I like that.	أحب ذلك.	- I don't know. I'm not good at...	لا أعرف. لست جيدًا فى....
- I know! Let's + inf.	أعرف! هيا بنا...	- I'd prefer + to + inf./ n.	أفضل ...
- OK, why not?	وهو كذلك، ولم لا؟	- I'd rather + inf.	أفضل أن ...
- I agree.	أنا موافق.	- I disagree.	لا أوافق.

2 Talking about your plan for a holiday الحديث عن خطتك لإجازة

• يمكن استخدام (be going to) للحديث عن الخطط كما يلى:

1- On + day, (فاعل) + (am / is / are) going to ....

- فى يوم ..... ، سوف يقوم ...... بـ..........

2- It's going to be a (صفة) adventure .... - سوف تكون مغامرة ....

3- (فاعل) + (am / is / are) going to stay at / in (مكان).

- ..... سوف يقيم فى ....

4- (فاعل) + (am / is / are) looking forward to + V-ing.

- ..... يتطلع إلى ....

5- The journey is going to take + مدة. - سوف تستغرق الرحلة ....

General Exercises on Lessons 4,5 & 6

1 Complete the following dialogue:

نوفمبر 2023

Ali asks Tarek about his favourite hobby.

Ali : What's your favourite sport?

Tarek : ❶ ....

Ali : When do you play it?

Tarek : ❷ ....

Ali : Where do you play it?

Tarek : ❸ ....

Ali : ❹ ....?

Tarek : I like playing it because it is interesting.

Ali : ❺ ....?

Tarek : I play it with my friends.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. Travelling to other countries has many ....
   a. emails b. advantages c. characters d. albums
2. A: How about having a picnic? B: No, I ....
   a. disagree b. prefer c. agree d. accept
3. Samy .... a mistake, so he felt sad.
   a. gave b. took c. travelled d. made
4. Which .... of transport do you like?
   a. from b. farm c. frame d. form

Language

5. Amir looks forwards to .... Japan.
   a. visit b. visits c. visiting d. visited
6. I'd rather .... sport. إدارة رشيد 2023
   a. to do b. did c. do d. doing

3 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"An exciting trip you made" [مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة]

....

....

....

....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Where did you go?
- Who did you go with?
- How did you travel?
- Where did you stay?
- Who did you meet?
- What did you see?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Last month, I went to ....
- I took .... there.
- We travelled ....
- We stayed .... hotel.
- We met my .... who .... there.
- We visited .... and walked .... Nile

Unit 9

Review

Key Vocabulary

diving	الغطس	tent	خيمة	mountain biking	رياضة ركوب الدراجات على الجبال
kayaking	رياضة التجديف	guide	مرشد	trekking	الارتحال
sailing	الإبحار	wet	رطب/مبتل	adventure	مغامرة
windsurfing	التزلج على الماء	weather	الطقس	protect (ed)	يحمى
zip lining	رياضة الانزلاق بالحبل	advantages	مميزات	challenge (d) (n)	يتحدى - تحدى
Bedouin families	عائلات بدوية	railway line	خط سكة حديد		
journey	رحلة طويلة	rock climbing	رياضة تسلق الصخور		

Weather words

Noun	الاسم	Adjective	الصفة	Noun	الاسم	Adjective	الصفة
sun	الشمس	sunny	مشمس	snow	الجليد	snowy	جليدى
rain	المطر	rainy	ممطر	storm	عاصفة	stormy	عاصف
clouds	السحب	cloudy	غائم	fog	ضباب	foggy	ملئ بالضباب
wind	الرياح	windy	شديد الرياح				

Language

1) (be) going to سوف (للتعبير عن المستقبل)

I	am	(not) + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل...
He/ She/ It	is	
We/ You/ They	are	

- نستخدم (be) going to للتعبير عن الآتي:

١- تنبؤ فى المستقبل مع وجود دليل ٢- خطط مستقبلية

٣- قرارات مسبقة ٤- نوايا

- أى أننا نستخدم (be) going to للدلالة على الخطط/القرارات/النوايا وتدل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

plan يخطط/خطة - **decide** يقرر - **decision** قرار - **intend** ينوى - **intention** نية

Ex. I am going to visit Sinai next holiday.

Ex. She is not going to play chess.

Ex. Are you going to buy a car? • Yes, I am. • No, I am not.

2) Reflexive pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة (التوكيدية)

تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة (التوكيدية) في الحالات الآتية:

١- عندما يكون فاعل ومفعول الجملة واحد (أي نفس الشخص)

Ex. I hurt myself.

٢- للتأكيد على أن الفاعل قام بفعل شيء بمفرده (بدون مساعدة من أحد)

Ex. They did all the work themselves.

- لاحظ أن الضمائر المنعكسة التي تعبر عن اسم/ضمير مفرد (I / He / She / It / You) تنتهي بـ (self).
- أما الضمائر المنعكسة التي تعبر عن اسم/ضمير جمع (We / You / They) تنتهي بـ (selves).

Speaking

1) Discussing activities and travel plans مناقشة الأنشطة وخطط السفر

Questions	Answers
1- What are you going to do this weekend?	- I am going to visit Sinai.
2- Are you going to sleep in a tent?	- Yes, I am. - No, I am not.
3- When are you going to leave Sinai?	- On 26th October.

2) Describing the weather وصف الطقس

Questions	Answers
1- How is the weather? 2- What is the weather like today?	- It's hot / cold / sunny / rainy etc.
3- Is it hot / cold / sunny / rainy etc.? 4- Is it raining outside?	- Yes, it is - No it isn't. - Yes, it is raining outside.

3) Making and responding to suggestions عمل اقتراحات والرد عليها

A: Making suggestions

- لعمل اقتراحات نستخدم الأسئلة والتعبيرات الآتية:

1- What / How about + V-ing...?

Ex. What / How about going on a trip to Fayoum?

2- Why don't + فاعل + inf....?

Ex. Why don't we paint the house green?

3- What shall we + inf....... ?

Ex. What shall we do at the park?

4- Shall we + inf ....?

Ex. Shall we go rock climbing?

5- Let's + inf. ....

Ex. Let's go home. It's going to rain.

B: Responding to suggestions: • للرد على الاقتراحات نقول:

Agreeing	Disagreeing
- Good idea!	- I'm not sure.
- That sounds good.	- That sounds a bit scary.
- I like that.	- I don't know. I'm not good at...
- I know! Let's + inf.	- I'd prefer + to + inf./ n.
- OK, why not?	- I'd rather + inf.
- I agree.	- I disagree.

4) Talking about your plan for a holiday الحديث عن خطتك للإجازة

• يمكن استخدام (be going to) للحديث عن الخطط كما يلي:

1- On + day, (فاعل) + (am / is / are) going to ....

2- It's going to be a (صفة) adventure ....

3- (فاعل) + (am / is / are) going to stay at / in (مكان).

4- (فاعل) + (am / is / are) looking forward to + V-ing.

5- The journey is going to take + مدة.

General Exercises on Unit 9

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hamza and Alaa are talking about travel plans.

Hamza : Where are you going to travel?

Alaa : ❶ ....

Hamza : Wow! Sinai is a very nice place.

Alaa : ❷ ....?

Hamza : I plan to go rock climbing.

Alaa : Isn't it dangerous?

Hamza : ❸ .... It's fun.

Alaa : ❹ ....?

Hamza : Yes, I am good at it.

Alaa : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. Don't swim in the sea when it is .... It is dangerous.
   a. funny b. sunny c. cloudy d. windy
2. It was my friend's .... to study together.
   a. hobby b. idea c. station d. trip
3. Reading and playing chess are my ....
   a. mistakes b. albums c. hobbies d. photos
4. After I finish school, I go ....
   a. home b. to home c. at home d. for home
5. I .... going to the park, but no one agreed.
   a. told b. responded c. suggested d. returned
6. My grandpa has a beautiful house .... the beach.
   a. about b. by c. to d. of

Language

7. What .... we do this weekend? WB
   a. have b. are c. does d. shall
8. Would you like to make .... a cup of tea? SB
   a. ourselves b. yourself c. herself d. themselves
9. My sister and I like taking photos of .... when we go out. WB
   a. ourselves b. herself c. myself d. himself
10. .... you going to eat before you do your homework this evening? WB
    a. Will b. Is c. Are d. Am
11. It's dark. It .... rain.
    a. am going to b. is going to c. are going to d. going to
12. Why don't you .... a sports club?
    a. to join b. joining c. join d. to joining
13. What about .... a meal outside?
    a. have b. to have c. to having d. having
14. Thank you, I can do the homework ....
    a. myself b. itself c. yourself d. himself

15. Ahmed is studying really hard. He .... good marks.

a. gets b. going to get c. won't get d. is going to get

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB

1. Ahmed is going to .... (sleeping) in a tent.
2. This boy repaired the broken toy .... (herself).
3. I am .... (gone) to buy a new house next year.
4. My little sister enjoys .... (himself) in the park.

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

WB

"Transport today and in the past"

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **How do people usually travel?**
- **Are there many means of transport in our life?**
- **Why do people prefer each means of transport?**
- **How did people usually travel in the past?**
- **What means of transport did they use? Why?**

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **People travel ....**.
- **There are a lot of means of transport.**
- **Some people like to travel by ....**.
- **Others prefer .... because ....**.
- **In the past, people used .... to travel.**
- **They used .... to go through deserts.**

Unit 9

Al Azhar Test



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. The writer Jules Verne wrote a .... about a British man.
   a. book b. story c. play d. lesson
2. He takes a challenge to travel around .... in just 80 days.
   a. Africa b. London c. France d. the world

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali : What's the most dangerous sport?

Hassan : ❶ ....

Ali : Did you try rock climbing?

Hassan : ❷ ....

Ali : ❸ ....?

Hassan : My favourite sport is diving.

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I love .... because I'm good at swimming under the water.
   a. sailing b. diving c. kayaking d. zip lining
2. I did my homework by ....
   a. himself b. herself c. myself d. ourselves
3. I took an umbrella to .... me from the sun.
   a. stay b. protect c. check d. dry
4. A/An .... helps you to find the way in the desert.
   a. carpenter b. architect c. teacher d. guide
5. Where .... Samy going to spend his next weekend?
   a. do b. does c. were d. is

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Usama was a poor man, but he worked hard. His job was to clean the streets. One day, while he was going back home, he saw an old lady trying to cross the street. He hurried to help her, but she fell down and hurt her leg. He carried her to the nearest hospital. The doctor gave her some medicine, she called Usama and said to him "I have no family." I thank you for your help and this bag is for you". To his surprise, it was full of money and the woman died after half an hour.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

----

2. Do you think Usama was a good man?

----

3. Why was the woman alone?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. After giving Usama the bag, the lady ....
   a. went b. slept c. cried d. died
5. The underlined word "it" refers to ....
   a. hospital b. the bag c. street d. her leg

5 Reorder the following to make meaningful sentences:

1. went - I - in - the - Red - diving - Sea. ....
2. you - trekking - going - to - go - Are? ....
3. in - my - family - Dahab - I'm - with. ....
4. about - windsurfing - going - How - or - diving? ....

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

[مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة]

"A plan for a holiday"

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- When are you going to have a holiday?
- What about your family?
- What are they going to do?
- Where are you going to stay?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Next month, ... are going to have a holiday in ....
- I am going to try ....
- My brothers are going to try ....
- We are going to stay in/at ....

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل بريد إلكتروني وردت بالوحدة

My favourite adventure sport

To: ramy83@yahoo.com

From: yasser37@hotmail.com

Subject: My favorite adventure sport.

Dear Ramy,

How it's going? I like adventure sports. I like diving best. It's the sport of jumping into deep water. It is an old sport. People can try diving in clubs. They can also try it in rivers, but it is sometimes dangerous. Some people enjoy diving from boats. Diving doesn't require special equipment. But, it sometimes needs special glasses. I usually go diving with some friends at weekends. We go diving at a nearby club and we spend a long time diving. We enjoy our time there. It helps us have strong bodies. It also helps us to be fit.

With my Best wishes

Yasser

An exciting trip I made

Last month, I went to Dahab with my family. There was so much to do there. We went trekking in the mountains. I tried rock climbing. It was too scary. I tried windsurfing and diving. I used special equipment for that. This was very enjoyable and exciting. I wanted to go kayaking, but there was no time for that. It was a very nice holiday. I went back home very happy. I asked my father to go there again the following year.

Transport today and in the past

People travel every day. They travel to school, university or work. Travelling often takes a long time. There are a lot of means of transport. Some people like to travel by bikes. Others prefer trains and planes because they are fast and comfortable. Other people travel by cars. In the past, people used animals to travel to different places. They used camels to go through deserts. They also used donkeys. Some people used horses and even elephants. Transport today is more comfortable than in the past. Means of transport were slower than today.

A plan for a holiday

Al Azhar

Next month, my family and I are going to have a holiday in Sinai. I am going to try windsurfing. I think it is amazing. My brothers are going to try rock climbing. They like adventures, but I think rock climbing is a bit dangerous.

A plan for a journey around the world

To: redaomar@gmail. com

From: mahmoud80@yahoo.com

Subject: A plan for a journey

Dear Reda,

How are you? I want to tell you about a plan for a journey. My uncle is a pilot. He always travels around the world. He promises he will take me with him. I have a plan for the journey. First, I'm going to travel to Europe. I'm going to visit France and visit the Eiffel Tower. Then, I am going to travel to India. After that, I'm going to travel to America. I want to see many things there. We are going to travel by plane. The journey is going to take ten days. I am going to take photos everywhere. It will be fun.

Yours,

Mahmoud

Unit 9

TEST



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. The speaker is going to try windsurfing ....
   a. next week b. this evening c. tomorrow d. in the afternoon
2. They are going to try windsurfing in the ....
   a. morning b. evening c. afternoon d. night
3. They are going to go ....
   a. trekking b. kayaking c. swimming d. diving
4. They are not going to go ....
   a. rock climbing b. mountain biking c. kayaking d. diving

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Salma is talking to Aya about adventure sports. سملوط 2023

Salma : Good morning, Aya.

Aya : ❶ ....

Salma : Do you like adventure sports?

Aya : ❷ ....

Salma : ❸ ....?

Aya : Rock climbing is my favorite sport.

Salma : ❹ ....?

Aya : I practice it in Sinai.

Salma : Well, Sinai is a lovely place let's go together next time.

Aya : ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Phileas Fogg was a rich British man who lived in London. He had a servant called Passepartout. Fogg took the challenge to travel around the world in eighty days. Fogg and Passepartout reached the Suez Canal where they took a steamer (سفينة بخارية) to Mumbai, India. They took the train across India from Mumbai to Kolkata. Then **they** got on a steamer to Hong Kong then Yokohama, Japan. Passepartout hired a sailor to take them to Shanghai. They got to San Francisco and got on a train that took them to New York. They got the steamer to Liverpool, England. Finally, they hired an express train to get them to the British capital as quickly as possible. They arrived at the London station on time.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. How many days did Fogg plan to travel around the world?

   ----

2. Who was Fogg's servant?

   ----

3. Do you like travelling? Why / Why not?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The undertined word "**they**" refers to ....
   a. Fogg and his servant　b. Shanghai and America
   c. Yokohama and India　d. Suez and London
5. They took a .... from San Francisco to New York.
   a. bus　b. train　c. steamer　d. plane
6. What is the British capital?
   a. London　b. Hong Kong　c. Liverpool　d. San Francisco

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An .... is a long trip from one place to another.
   a. picnic　b. tent　c. equipment　d. journey
2. Why don't we .... kayaking?
   a. to go　b. going　c. go　d. to going
3. We want to have a/an .... to show us the market. WB
   a. tent　b. guide　c. adventure　d. boat

4. Dalia doesn't want to go zip .... SB
   a. lining b. climbing c. biking d. diving
5. Fogg was going to travel across .... USA.
   a. no article b. a c. the d. an
6. Tamer .... his leg. He was playing football. SB
   a. heard b. hurt c. had d. helped
7. The cats sat by the fire to keep......... warm. SB
   a. itself b. ourselves c. themselves d. herself
8. Nader put on a hat to protect .... from the sun.
   a. yourself b. herself c. themselves d. himself
9. It's cold outside. I'm .... stay at home by the fire.
   a. going to b. go c. to go d. went
10. I don't want to have a/an .... on holiday. I want to sleep by a pool. WB
   a. weather b. equipment c. guide d. adventure

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ....(Are) Noura going to go to your birthday party?
2. A camel is going to ....(carried) the food and water. SB
3. We all looked at .... (yourselves) in the school photo. WB
4. Did you fix the shelf............ (myself)?

E Writing

6 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words:

To your friend Reda about a plan for a journey around the world. (مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار)
- Your name is Mahmoud and your email address is mahmoud80@yahoo.com.
  Your friend's email address is redaomar@gmail.com.

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الاليكتروني :

- **Where are you going to go?**
- **Are you going to travel to Europe?**
- **Who are you going to travel with?**
- **How are you going to travel?**
- **How long is the journey going to take?**

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **I have a plan for a journey around the world.**
- **First, I'm going to travel to ....**
- **I'm going to visit .... in ....**
- **I want to .... there.**
- **We are going to travel by ....**
- **The journey is going to take ....**

Review C

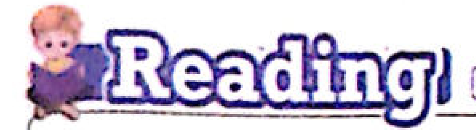
SB pages 32 - 33 WB pages 91-92



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

author	مؤلف	selfie	صورة سيلفى
harbour	ميناء	size	حجم
scary = frightening	مخيف	square kilometre	كيلومتر مربع
view	منظر	classical	كلاسيكى



Reading

SB Page (32)





استمع إلى النصوص



New Message

Hi Dareen,



How are you? I'm really enjoying myself in Sydney[1] with my family. Sydney is about eight hours by car from our home in Melbourne[2]. Yesterday I climbed Sydney Harbour Bridge[3]. It was very high and scary[4]. But the views[5] from the top were fantastic! My sister and I took a great selfie[6] of ourselves!

Tonight I am going to listen to music at the Sydney Opera House[7], but it is not opera, it is classical[8] music! Tomorrow I am going to the Blue Mountains[9]. I am going to swim in a lake and go rock climbing.

Here are some photos!

Love, Amy

١- مدينة سيدني (باستراليا)
٢- مدينة ميلبورن
٣- كوبري ميناء سيدني
٤- مخيف
٥- مناظر
٦- صورة سيلفى
٧- دار أوبرا سيدني
٨- كلاسيكى
٩- الجبال الزرقاء (بكندا)







New Message

Hi Amy,



Your holiday sounds fantastic. My family and I went to Sydney last year but we did not climb the bridge! We went to Bondi Beach[1] and went windsurfing and kayaking. I love water sports[2]!

I hope you enjoy your holiday, send me an email when you are home.

Love, Dareen

١- شاطئ بوندي (استراليا)
٢- الرياضات المائية





WB Page (91)



Last weekend, I watched a TV programme[1] about Robinson Crusoe Island. The author[2] of Robinson Crusoe, Daniel Defoe, wrote about this island because a real sailor[3] called Alexander Selkirk spent four years alone[4] here. Defoe wrote Robinson Crusoe after hearing about this man. However, Crusoe's adventures were different to Mr Selkirk's. Crusoe spent a lot longer on the island (28 years) and the weather was a lot hotter[5] than on the real island. Today, about 800 people live on Robinson Crusoe Island. Life is easier now, although people still have to look after[6] themselves. The nearest land, Chile[7], is 24 hours away by boat. Soon they are going to build a new school and hospital on the island. Those are things that Crusoe did not have!

١- برنامج تليفزيوني
٢- مؤلف
٣- بحار
٤- بمفرده
٥- أكثر سخونة
٦- يعتني بـ
٧- دولة شيلي



SB Page (33)

Women : Egypt is just over one million square kilometres[1].

Man : Australia is the sixth largest country in the world. It is just over seven million, six hundred thousand square kilometres.

Women : The highest mountain in Egypt is Mount Catherine. It is over two thousand six hundred metres high.

١- كيلو مترات مربعة

Man : The highest mountain in Australia is Mount Kosciuszko. It is over two thousand, two hundred metres high.

٢- يتدفق
٣- تماسيح

Women : The River Nile is the longest river in the world. It flows[2] through Egypt and other countries in Africa. It's over six thousand, six hundred kilometres long.

Man : The longest river in Australia is the River Murray. It is over two thousand, five hundred kilometres long. Be careful of the crocodiles[3]!

Women : In Egypt, one of the oldest buildings is the Khufu Pyramid. It is about 4,600 years old.

Man : The oldest building in Australia is Elizabeth Farm, in Sydney. It is over 200 years old.

WB Page (91)

(1)

١- سيء جدًا
٢- قريب
٣- الأسوأ

Girl : Hi Lara. How was your weekend?

Lara : Oh, it was terrible[1].

Girl : Oh dear, what happened?

Lara : I went to the museum, but it was closed. Then I missed the bus so I had to walk home.

Girl : Oh dear!

(2)

Boy 1 : I love tennis. Do you agree that it's more exciting than any other sport?

Boy 2 : I'm afraid I don't agree.

(3)

Girl 1 : What shall we do this afternoon, Lama?

Lama : Why don't we go swimming?

Girl 1 : I'm not sure. The swimming pool is not very near[2].

Lama : OK. How about going to the park?

Girl 1 : Good idea! I love the trees and plants there.

(4)

Boy 3 : What do you think about that book you're reading?

Boy 4 : I think it's the worst[3] book ever!

Test on Units 7, 8 & 9

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. The speaker went to .... last year.
   a. America b. Africa c. Australia d. Asia
2. The speaker visited Sydney .... Bridge.
   a. Port b. Harbour c. Canal d. Lake
3. The bridge was very high and ....
   a. scary b. funny c. old d. modern
4. The .... from the top were fantastic.
   a. water b. buildings c. canals d. views

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Israa suggests going to the library.

Israa : Hi Nadeen. What about going to the library?

Nadeen : ❶ ....! Do you often go there?

Israa : ❷ ....

Nadeen : ❸ ....?

Israa : I often read adventure stories.

Nadeen : ❹ ....?

Israa : Yes, they are very interesting.

Nadeen : What are you going to read?

Israa : ❺ ....

Nadeen : OK! I will come with you.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In the 1600s, people were interested in travelling around the world. Sailors wanted to travel to new countries to see new things. Sometimes sailors were at sea for three or four years. Daniel Defoe took the idea for Robinson Crusoe from the true story of Alexander Selkirk. Selkirk was a sailor who spent four years alone on a small island near South America. In 1709, an English ship saved him. Selkirk wrote about his life and he became very famous. Robinson Crusoe was like Selkirk. Crusoe ate coconuts on the island. He made a good home on the island and grew his own food. He had animals and he made his own clothes. He learnt to live alone.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Who wrote "Robinson Crusoe"?

....

2. Why did the sailors want to travel to new countries?

....

3. Would you like to live alone on an island? Why / Why not?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- The underlined pronoun "**He**" refers to ....

a. Robinson Crusoe b. Daniel Defoe
c. Alexander Selkirk d. a sailor

5- Alexander Selkirk was a/an ....

a. island b. sailor c. coconut d. animal

6- Robinson Crusoe is like ....

a. Daniel b. America c. Defoe d. Selkirk

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like this book .... it is funny.

a. although b. but c. because d. so

2. A lot of ships are waiting in the ....

a. market b. aquarium c. canteen d. harbour

3. At lunchtime, I go to the .... to eat.

a. funfair b. canteen c. library d. aquarium

4. I'm .... try rock climbing next weekend. WB

a. going to b. going c. to go d. to going

5. My little brother enjoyed .... at the family party. WB

a. yourself b. herself c. himself d. myself

6. It .... eight years to build Sydney Harbour Bridge. SB

a. take b. took c. to take d. taking

7. The .... from the top of the Cairo Tower is fantastic.

a. review b. queue c. interview d. view

8. She asked me to look .... her baby as she was too busy.

a. after b. up c. down d. before

9. Sally was frightened when she watched the film. It was ....

a. funny b. beautiful c. easy d. scary

10. There was a/an .... to find out who could spell the most words correctly. WB

a. aquarium b. population c. competition d. funfair

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Soha is .... (gone) to start a new job.
2. My house is............ (largest) than my cousin's.
3. I don't need help; I can do it .... (ourselves).
4. .... (Do) you complete reading the story yesterday?

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A story you like" WB

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Our future



Welcome to my home!

Objectives

Reading:
Homes in ancient Egypt; round houses around the world

Writing:
- A paragraph describing your first school
- A timeline of a famous person's life
- A diagram of future houses

Listening:
A podcast about homes of the future

Speaking:
Saying what things are made of; predicting the future

Language:
is / are made of; there was / were; there will / won't be for predictions with no evidence; saying years

Life Skills:
Creativity; good listening and self-expression



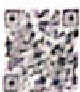
جميع أسئلة كتاب الطالب والتدريبات مجاب عنها في آخر الكتاب



Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 34-37 WB pages 93-94

Key Vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات

roof	سطح (مبنى)	round	مستدير الشكل / دائري
tap	حنفية	curtain*	ستارة
brick	قالب طوب	oven	فرن
cushion*	وسادة (مخدة)	wallet	محفظة (للنقود)
material	مادة خام		

Materials

cotton	قطن	glass	زجاج
metal	معدن	plastic	بلاستيك
wood	خشب	wool	صوف
leather	جلد مدبوغ	stone	حجر

Vocabulary

tablet	كمبيوتر لوحي (تابلت)	ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة
jumper	بلوفر	scarf	كوفية / وشاح
sofa	كنبة	the Stone Age	العصر الحجري
lamp	مصباح/أباجورة	teaspoon	ملعقة شاي
seat	مقعد ثابت	cart	عربة يجرها خيل (كارو)
pencil case	مقلمة	turn (ed)	يلف / يستدير
living room	حجرة معيشة	paint (ed)	يدهن / يرسم بالألوان
fork	شوكة		

Famous Places

Deir el-Madina	the Valley of the Kings	the Nile valley
دير المدينة (قرية بالأقصر)	وادي الملوك (مقابر قديمة بالأقصر)	وادي النيل

Expressions & Prepositions



What colour...?	ما لون...؟	on top of ...	على قمة ...
(be) called	يُسمى / يُدعى	(be) made of	مصنوع من
paint (something) + colour	يلون شيء باللون/بطلاء	with red doors	ذات أبواب حمراء
		get ... from	يحصل على ... من
on the roof	على السطح	about two kilometres away	يبعد حوالي كيلومترين
at night	في الليل		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
build	يبني	built	built
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
round	دائري / مستدير	circular	flat	مسطح
ancient	قديم	old	modern	حديث

Definitions

Word		Definition
brick	قالب طوب	a hard, square[1] object that is used for building houses, walls etc.
cushion	وسادة (مخدة)	a soft[2] object to sit on or rest[3] your head on
leather	جلد مدبوغ	the material from the skins[4] of animals, used to make shoes and bags
oven	فرن	the equipment used for cooking or baking food / bread
roof	سطح (مبنى)	- the place at the top of a house - the top part of a building
round	مستدير الشكل/دائري	with a shape like a circle
tap	حنفية	something you turn on to get water in the house, garden etc.
cotton	قطن	a soft, white material from a plant that is used to make clothes
glass	زجاج	a hard material that you can see through, used to make bottles, windows, etc.
metal	معدن	a hard[5] material, for example, gold, silver[6]

١- مربع الشكل
٢- لين
٣- يريح
٤- جلود
٥- صلب
٦- فضة

Language Notes

1) Materials used for making things

Material								
wool	صوف	⇨	jumper	بلوفر	hat	قبعة	scarf	كوفيه/وشاح
metal	معدن	⇨	knife	سكين	teaspoon	ملعقة شاي	car	سيارة
stone	حجر	⇨	statue	تمثال	building	مبنى	brick	قالب طوب
glass	زجاج	⇨	window	نافذة	glasses	نظارة	screen	شاشة
leather	جلد مدبوغ	⇨	shoes	حذاء	bag	شنطة	wallet	محفظة
cotton	قطن	⇨	dress	فستان	skirt	جيبة	socks	جورب
plastic	بلاستيك	⇨	ruler	مسطرة	tablet	كمبيوتر لوحي	toy	لعبة
wood	خشب	⇨	table	منضدة	chair	كرسي	window	نافذة

2 • seat • chair • sofa

• **seat** مقعد ثابت (في وسيلة مواصلات / مسرح / سينما)

Ex. I always leave my seat for old people on a bus.

• **chair** كرسي (مخصص لشخص واحد ويمكن تحريكه)

Ex. We bought a new table and some chairs.

• **sofa** كنبة (مخصصة لشخصين او ثلاثة)

Ex. All of us like to sit on that sofa to watch TV.

3 • glass • a glass • glasses

• **glass** زجاج (مادة لصنع الأكواب والنوافذ) (اسم لا يعد)

Ex. That window is made of glass and wood.

• **a glass** كوب زجاجي (اسم يعد)

Ex. Would you like a glass of juice?

• **glasses** نظارة (اسم جمع)

Ex. I can't see without my glasses.

4 • tap • tape

• **tap** حنفية (اسم يُعد)

Ex. There's a water tap in the kitchen to wash the dishes.

• **tape** شريط لاصق (اسم لا يُعد)

Ex. I stuck the poster on the wall with tape.

5 • roof • ceiling

• **roof** سطح مبنى (من أعلى)

Ex. I keep my old things in a box on the roof of the house.

• **ceiling** سقف حجرة (من الداخل)

Ex. There's a fan hanging in the ceiling of my room.

6 • leather • skin

• **leather** جلد مصنع / مدبوغ

Ex. My shoes are made of fine leather.

• **skin** جلد (انسان / حيوان)

Ex. This cream is used for dry skin.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .... is made of stone.
a. chair b. jumper c. statue d. screen

2. There is a .... ; we can all sit together on it.
a. sofa b. seat c. chair d. wall

3. I can't see well now; I want new ....
a. glass b. a glass c. glasses d. grass

4. Don't waste water. Turn off the ....
a. tape b. tap c. brick d. table

5. I like sitting on the .... at night in summer.
a. roof b. loaf c. ceiling d. tape

6. She bought a brown .... handbag.
a. skin b. leather c. glass d. metal



SB Page (36)



استمع إلى النصوص

Deir el-Madina

In ancient* Egypt[1], there was a village[2] called Deir el-Madina. The people from the village worked in the Valley of the Kings[3]. There were 68 houses.

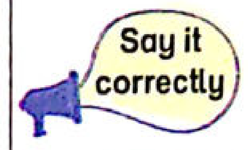


The walls[4] of the houses were made of bricks[5] and the doors were made of wood[6]. The people painted[7] their houses white, with red doors.

The houses had a kitchen[8] and a living room[9], but there weren't any bedrooms[10]. People usually slept on the roof[11] because it was very hot at night.

There was usually an oven[12] for bread in the kitchen, but there weren't any taps[13]. People got their water from the Nile valley[14], about two kilometres away.

١- مصر القديمة
٢- قرية
٣- وادى الملوك
٤- حوائط
٥- قوالب طوب
٦- خشب
٧- دهنوا - لونوا
٨- مطبخ
٩- حجرة معيشة
١٠- حجرات نوم
١١- سطح
١٢- فرن
١٣- حنفيات
١٤- وادى النيل



- curtain — ينطق حرفى (ur) مثل نطق حرفي (ir) فى كلمة (bird) .
- cushion — ينطق حرف (u) في هذه الكلمة مثل حروف (oo) في كلمة (book).
- ancient — ينطق حرفي (ci) في هذه الكلمة مثل صوت (ش).



WB Page (93)



Boy 1 : What is a car made of?

Boy 2 : That's a difficult question! It's made of a lot of things. For example, a car door is made of metal[1] and the windows are made of glass[2].

Boy 1 : What are the seats[3] made of, where you sit?

Boy 2 : I think expensive car seats are made of leather[4]. My father's car is not expensive. The seats are made of plastic[5].

١- معدن
٢- زجاج
٣- مقاعد
٤- جلد
٥- بلاستيك

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. .... are used to cook food or bread. أ.حمص 2023
   a. Fridges b. Ovens c. Taps d. TVs
2. The .... is at the top of a house or a building. أ.حماد 2023
   a. tomb b. roof c. entrance d. corner
3. You can turn the .... to get water. WB قنا 2023
   a. roof b. brick c. oven d. tap
4. Gold is an expensive .... WB
   a. plastic b. metal c. cotton d. glass
5. What .... did they paint their house? SB
   a. size b. colour c. age d. number
6. Expensive car seats are made of .... العمرانية 2023
   a. wool b. wood c. metal d. leather
7. The teaspoons are made of .... SB
   a. leather b. metal c. stone d. wool
8. In ancient Egypt, the walls of houses were made of .... أوسيم 2023
   a. taps b. plastic c. bricks d. wool

9. Car windows are made of .... إدارة البدرشين 2023

a. wood b. glass c. metal d. cotton

10. Bags are usually made of .... سلوبس 2023

a. bricks b. leather c. stone d. water

11. .... is a hard material used for making cars. إدارة سملوط 2023

a. Wool b. Metal c. Leather d. Cotton

Bit by Bit Exercises

12. These .... are very comfortable. They help me sleep well.

a. curtains b. windows c. taps d. cushions

13. It's dark in here, please open the ....

a. roofs b. bricks c. curtains d. taps

14. Cotton is a .... which we use to make clothes.

a. subject b. material c. metal d. cushion

15. My school is about two kilometres .... from home.

a. way b. ways c. a way d. away

16. My father keeps his money in a leather ....

a. wallet b. brick c. tablet d. scarf

17. A ball is .... in shape.

a. square b. around c. round d. tall

18. My belt is made of ....

a. skin b. leather c. wood d. metal

19. Don't forget to turn off the .... after you finish cooking.

a. curtain b. cushion c. oven d. roof

20. I'd like to .... the walls of my room light green.

a. call b. paint c. pay d. look



1- (be) made of / (be) made from

(be) made of

• تستخدم (be) made of بمعنى «مصنوع من» عندما لا تتغير المادة المصنوع منها الشيء ويكون من الممكن التعرف عليها:

المادة المصنع منها + is / are + made of + الشيء/الأشياء

Ex. The cushions are made of cotton.

(be) made from

• تستخدم (be) made from بمعنى «مصنوع من» عندما تتغير المادة المصنوع منها الشيء ولا يمكن التعرف عليها :

المادة المصنع منها + is / are + made from + الشيء/الأشياء

Ex. This cake is made from flour.



Ex. This desk is made from an old door.

Ex. This desk is made of wood.

• فى المثال الأول استخدمنا (made from) لأن الباب تغير شكله فلا يوجد مقبض ولا شىء يدل على أنه باب وقد تم تقطيعه لعمل مكتب، أما فى المثال الثانى فاستخدمنا (made of) حيث يظهر بوضوح أن المكتب مصنوع من الخشب.

• لاحظ أنه إذا انتهت الجملة بمادة خام فإننا فى الغالب نستخدم (made of) لأن أغلب المواد الخام لا يتغير شكلها (wood/glass/metal). ولكن البعض الآخر يتغير (flour).

Question السؤال

• نسأل عن المادة/المواد التي صنع منها شئ/أشياء بالصيغة الآتية:

What + is / are + الشيء/الأشياء + made of / from?

Ex. What are cars made of?

Ex. What is bread made from?

2- some & any

- تستخدم some بمعنى «بعض» في الجملة المثبتة قبل الاسم الذي يعد (في صيغة الجمع) والذي لا يعد:

Ex. She bought some pens / meat.



- يمكن استخدام some في السؤال في حالتي العرض والطلب.

Ex. Would you like some apples? (عرض)

Ex. Can I have some tea? (طلب)

- تستخدم any بمعنى «أي» في الجملة الخبرية المنفية وفي السؤال قبل الاسم الذى يعد (فى صيغة الجمع) والذى لايعد.

Ex. I don't have any apples / rice.

Ex. Did you buy any pens / pasta?

3- There is / was There are / were

Affirmative الاثبات

There is / was يوجد/كان يوجد (للمفرد) There are / were يوجد/كان يوجد (للجمع)

- تستخدم There is / was مع الأسماء التي تعد المفردة والأسماء التي لا تعد في المضارع والماضي كالآتي:

Ex. There is / was a pen on the table.

Ex. There is / was some water on the floor.

- تستخدم There are / were مع الأسماء التي تعد الجمع في المضارع والماضي كالآتي:

Ex. There are / were some pens on the table.

Negative النفي

There is not (isn't) / was not (wasn't) لا يوجد (للمفرد)

There are not (aren't) / were not (weren't) لا يوجد (للجمع)

Ex. There isn't / wasn't a pen there.

Ex. There aren't / weren't any bedrooms in that building.

Question السؤال

Is there / Was there ...? هل يوجد / كان يوجد...؟ (للمفرد)

Are there / Were there ...? هل يوجد / كان يوجد...؟ (للجمع)

Ex. Is / Was there a carrot / an egg on the table? (مع مفرد يعد)

Ex. Is / Was there any soup on the table? (مع مفرد لا يعد)

Ex. Are / Were there any tomatoes? (مع الجمع)

- للاجابة المختصرة نقول:

Yes, there is / was - are / were. No, there isn't / wasn't - aren't / weren't.

تذكر الأسماء التى تعد والأسماء التى لا تعد

Countable nouns أسماء تعد	Uncountable nouns أسماء لا تعد
a book → books	milk - water - oil - butter
an egg → eggs	bread - sugar - tea - coffee - wool -
a child → children	gold - leather - plastic - information
a man → men	- news - money - time
a woman → women	
a mouse → mice	
a foot → feet	
Ex. The doors were made of wood	Ex. There wasn't any water.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. What .... pencil cases made of? SB
   a. is b. was c. does d. are
2. The television is .... of glass and plastic. SB
   a. made b. making c. to make d. make
3. The table is made .... wood. SB
   a. from b. of c. in d. about
4. There .... any cars in ancient Egypt. SB
   a. weren't b. are c. wasn't d. was
5. Scarves are usually made .... wool. SB
   a. at b. in c. from d. of
6. A car door is .... of metal. البحر الأحمر / إدارة سفاجا 2023
   a. make b. making c. made d. makes
7. The cushions are .... of cotton. قنا 2023
   a. make b. made c. making d. makes
8. Cars are .... in Japan. إدارة أوسيم 2023
   a. makes b. make c. made d. making

Bit by Bit Exercises

9. There .... any sugar in my coffee.
   a. is b. are c. isn't d. weren't

10. .... there any camels in the desert?
    a. Are b. Did c. Is d. Was
11. .... there any tea in the kitchen?
    a. Has b. Is c. Were d. Are
12. Walls .... of plastic.
    a. are made b. was made c. isn't made d. aren't made
13. Glasses .... glass and plastic.
    a. is made from b. are made from c. are made of d. is made of
14. Paper .... made from wood.
    a. were b. is c. are d. 're
15. When I went to the desert, there .... people.
    a. wasn't some b. isn't any c. weren't any d. is some
16. I don't need sugar, there is .... in my tea.
    a. some b. any c. no d. an
17. **A:** What is your new dress made ...., Leila? **B:** Cotton.
    a. off b. of c. at d. from
18. There .... any oranges to make juice.
    a. is b. are c. aren't d. isn't
19. .... there any rice for lunch?
    a. Is b. Were c. Are d. Am

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Exams

1. The lamp is .... (making) of glass. **SB**
2. The sofa is made .... (from) leather. **SB**
3. My pencil is made .... (from) wood. إدارة سمالوط 2023
4. There .... (were) any sugar in my tea. إدارة منطقة الحسينية 2023
5. .... (When) is your bag made of? العبور 2023
6. My bed is made .... (up) wood. العمرانية / الجيزة 2023
7. What .... (is) cushions made of? بلقاس 2023

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. There .... (isn't) any books in that box.
9. There .... (wasn't) some milk in the kitchen yesterday.
10. My new laptop is made .... (from) plastic.
11. What .... (is) car seats made of?
12. There .... (are) too much salt in the food. I can't eat it.

Speaking

Asking and answering about what things are made of

السؤال والإجابة عن مما تصنع الاشياء

Questions	Answers
1- What's your pencil case made of? مما تصنع مقلمتك؟	- It's made of plastic. تصنع من البلاستيك.
2- What are the cushions made of? مما تصنع الوسادات؟	- They are made of cotton. تصنع من القطن.
3- What's your bag made of? مما تصنع حقيبتك؟	- I'm not sure; I think it's made of cotton. أنا غير متأكد. أعتقد أنها تصنع من القطن.

General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Complete the following dialogue: الحائكة 2023

Hana is asking Menna about her new bag.

Hana : I like your new bag, what is it made of?

Menna : ❶ ....

Hana : ❷ ....?

Menna : I bought it last week.

Hana : Who got it for you?

Menna : ❸ ....

Hana : ❹ ....?

Menna : Yes, it was my birthday.

Hana : Great. Can you come with me to buy one for me?

Menna : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. We use .... to make jumpers. WB
   a. plastic b. wood c. metal d. wool
2. Cushions are made of .... الحسينية 2023
   a. wood b. bricks c. cotton d. glass
3. My jumper is made of ....
   a. metal b. glass c. wood d. wool

Language

4. The wallet .... of leather. SB

a. is made b. made c. is making d. are made

5. The chairs .... made of wood. SB

a. has b. are c. is d. was

6. When we visited Deir el-Madina, there .... any bedrooms. SB

a. aren't b. isn't c. weren't d. were

7. What is bread made ....?

a. of b. about c. on d. from

③ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

Exams

1. What's your pencil case .... (make) of? العجمي 2023
2. .... (Is) there any friends in Soha's party. الاسكندرية 2023
3. What .... (it is) made of? أبو قرقاص 2023

Bit by Bit Exercises

4. I think cushions are .... (make) of cotton.
5. There .... (weren't) any salt in the kitchen.
6. The dress is made .... (by) cotton.
7. There .... (is) too many people in the street yesterday.
8. There .... (are) any news about the storm.
9. What .... (is) your socks made of?

④ Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: (مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Things in your bedroom" SB

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Do you like your bedroom? Why / Why not?
- What do you have in your bedroom?
- What are things make of?
- What do you use these things for?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I like my bedroom because ....
- I have .... in my bedroom.
- .... is / are made of ....
- I use .... for ....



Lesson 3

SB pages 6-8 WB pages 72-73

Key Vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

electricity	الكهرباء	drone	طائرة بدون طيار
electric car	سيارة كهربائية	Earth	كوكب الأرض
wind turbines	توربينات الرياح	solar panels	ألواح شمسية
driverless car	سيارة بدون سائق	robot	إنسان آلي
architect	مهندس معماري	sign	علامة / إشارة

Vocabulary

podcast	بث صوتي (إذاعي)	space	مساحة / فراغ / الفضاء
charger	شاحن	3D printer	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد
parcel	طرد بريدي	land telephone	تليفون أرضي
guest	ضيف	robot teacher	معلم آلي
ordinary	عادي	pilot	طيار
accident	حادث	petrol	بنزين
machine	ماكينة	produce (d)	ينتج
post	بريد	express (ed)	يعبر عن
safer	أكثر أماناً	design (ed)	يصمم (شئ)
rocket	صاروخ		

Expressions & Prepositions

a sign for electricity	إشارة للكهرباء	(be) a bit different to	مختلف قليلاً عن
design buildings	يصمم مباني	face south	يواجه ناحية الجنوب
get electricity	يحصل على الكهرباء	In what ways...?	كيف .....؟
make electricity	يولد كهرباء	on tablets	على الكمبيوتر اللوحي «التابلت»
have a guest	لدية ضيف	under the sea	تحت سطح البحر
do the housework	يقوم بأعمال المنزل	for a holiday	من أجل إجازة
look like	يشبه	bring ... to ...	يُحضر ... إلي ...
work on a project	يعمل على تطوير مشروع		
drive (someone) to + a place	يوصل (شخص) بالسيارة إلى....		

Unit 10 Welcome to my home!

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
read	يقرأ	read	read
fly	يطير	flew	flown
drive	يقود (سيارة)	drove	driven

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
ordinary	عادى	usual	unusual	غير عادى
safe	آمن	secure	dangerous	خطير
different	مختلف	dissimilar	similar	متشابه

Definitions

driverless car	سيارة بدون سائق	a car that can drive itself, without a driver
electric car	سيارة كهربائية	a car that does not use petrol
robot	إنسان آلى	This machine can do many things for us. Some of them can talk.
rocket	صاروخ	an object that can travel to space
wind turbines	توربينات الرياح	machines that use the wind to make electricity
architect	مهندس معماري	someone whose job is to design buildings
drone	طائرة بدون طيار	a small flying object that you can control[1] from the ground; it has no pilot
solar panel	لوحة شمسية	a flat[2] glass object that uses the sun to make electricity
electricity	الكهرباء	electric power[3]
space	مساحة/فراغ	an area that you can move around in

١- يتحكم في
٢- مسطح
٣- طاقة

Language Notes

1) Word endings (-less)

- هناك نهايات تضاف للكلمات تغير معناها أو تعطي عكسها. من هذه النهايات (-less) التى تضاف للكلمة لتعنى (بدون):

driverless	بلا قائد	careless	مهمل
homeless	بلا مأوى	hopeless	يائس

Ex. We may use driverless cars in the future.

2) • drive • ride

• **drive** يقود (سيارة)

Ex. I can drive a car easily.

• **ride** يركب «دراجة - أتوبيس» / يمتطي «حيوان»

Ex. He always rides a bike to school.

3) • electricity • electric

• **electricity (n)** الكهرباء

Ex. My laptop works with electricity and I can use a battery as well.

• **electric (adj)** كهربي (يعمل بالكهرباء)

Ex. I think we will drive electric cars in the future.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Cars will become .... in the future.
   a. drive b. driverless c. driving d. driver
2. This good man always looks after .... children.
   a. home b. homeless c. at home d. homely
3. I'm not old enough to .... a car.
   a. ride b. walk c. drive d. climb
4. My car doesn't use petrol. It's ....
   a. electric b. electricity c. plastic d. windy

Audioscript

SB Page (38)



استمع إلى النصوص

Presenter : Hello, welcome to our podcast[1]: *Homes of the Future*. Today we have a special guest[2] - Dina Hassan. She is a famous architect[3]. Hello Dina.

Dina : Hello.

Interviewer : What does an architect do?

Dina : Well, I design buildings such as houses or schools. I think about what materials[4] to use and I draw pictures of them.

Interviewer : What are you designing at the moment?

Dina : I'm working on a project[5] for houses for the future. They'll be a bit different to our houses today.

١- نشرة صوتية
٢- ضيف
٣- مهندسة معمارية
٤- مواد خام
٥- مشروع

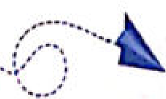
Interviewer	:	In what ways will they be different?
Dina	:	Well, I think we'll need more gardens in the future, but there won't be much space[6]. So the garden will be on the roof.
Interviewer	:	A garden on the roof, great!
Dina	:	And I think people will all use electric cars[7] in the future, so there'll be chargers[8] for electric cars next to the house.
Interviewer	:	How will people get their electricity[9]?
Dina	:	There'll be lots of solar panels[10] and a wind turbine*[11]. They'll make the electricity.
Interviewer	:	Great. What else will be different in 2050?
Dina	:	Well, I think there will be robots[12] to do all the housework[13].
Interviewer	:	Fantastic! Will people use drones[14]?
Dina	:	Yes, I think drones will bring food and parcels[15] to the house.
Interviewer	:	What materials will the house be made of?
Dina	:	We will use plastic bricks that are very strong. We'll also use a lot of glass and metal. Look, here's a picture of what it will look like.
Interviewer	:	Oh it's beautiful. Thank you very much Dina for talking to us . I think I'll like living in this house!

٦- فراغ / مساحة
٧- سيارات كهربائية
٨- شواحن
٩- كهرباء
١٠- ألواح شمسية
١١- توربين رياح
١٢- روبوتات
١٣- أعمال منزلية
١٤- طائرات بدون طيار
١٥- طرود بريدية



* turbine — ينطق الحرفين (ur) في هذه الكلمة مثل حرفي (ir) في كلمة (bird) وينطق حرف (i) مثل نطقه في كلمة (fine).





SB Page (39)

Holidays on the moon[1]!



In 2080, you won't go to the beach for your holiday. You will go to the moon! There will be rockets[2] that leave Earth[3] every day, and the journey will take only 12 hours. They will be very fast!

Driverless cars[4]



In 2080, people won't drive a car. We will all have a driverless car. They will be safer[5] and there won't be any accidents[6]. Students will read a book or watch TV when a computer on the car drives them to school!

١- القمر
٢- صواريخ
٣- كوكب الأرض
٤- سيارات بدون سائق
٥- أكثر أمانا
٦- حوادث

Videoscript

Do you live in a village or in a city?



And do you live on the coast[1], near the sea or in the desert? There are often different houses for each place. This house is a traditional[2] Nubian[3] house. The floors are made of sand and there is normally[4] a bench[5] outside each house to sit on. This is made of mud[6].

These Nubian houses are in Aswan. They're very colourful[7].

There are paintings[8] on the walls of Nubian houses of things like fish, crocodiles[9] and palm trees[10].

The door of each house usually faces[11] south. This is to protect people from the strong wind from the north.

Houses will probably be different in the future. Many houses will be made of recycled[12] material or natural[13] material, like wood.

This hotel is in Siwa and it's made of natural materials.

The roof is made of palm trees.

Many houses in the future will use the sun for electricity. This is called solar power[14].

What type of house do you want to live in? Is it a house? Or is it an apartment[15]? There are lots of different places to live.

١- ساحل
٢- تقليدى
٣- نوبى
٤- عادة
٥- مقعد طويل
٦- طين
٧- ذو الوان كثيرة
٨- رسومات ملونة
٩- تماسيح
١٠- نخيل
١١- يواجه
١٢- معاد تصنيعها
١٣- طبيعية
١٤- الطاقة الشمسية
١٥- شقة

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. A/An .... designs buildings. SB
   a. teacher b. artist c. architect d. pilot
2. Wind .... use the wind to produce electricity. WB الدبلة 2023
   a. printers b. panels c. robots d. turbines
3. A/An .... can fly, but it doesn't have a pilot. WB أو خبير 2023
   a. dream b. drone c. racket d. electric car

4. People will get .... from the sun and the wind in the future. SB

a. space b. water c. email d. electricity

5. We put .... panels on a roof. They produce electricity from the sun. WB

a. solar b. sunny c. stormy d. windy

6. A/An .... car does not use petrol. إدارة بلقاس 2023

a. robot b. solar c. electricity d. electric

7. I wish I could buy a/an .... car as I don't like driving. إدارة أبوحمص / البحيرة 2023

a. toy b. driverless c. plastic d. old

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. .... can do many things for us at homes.

a. Rockets b. Rackets c. Robots d. Pilots

9. .... help man to get to the moon.

a. Panels b. Rockets c. Rackets d. Parcels

10. .... is the planet where we live.

a. Sun b. Earth c. Moon d. Star

11. My father .... me to school every day.

a. rides b. flies c. designs d. drives

12. My friends and I decided to go to the beach .... our holiday.

a. to b. out c. for d. over

13. Our neighbour bought a/an .... car, it runs on electricity.

a. electric b. solar c. petrol d. homeless

14. That car doesn't need a driver; it's a .... car.

a. driverless b. homeless c. careless d. useless

15. Don't touch this wire, there is a .... for electricity.

a. sign b. fine c. time d. stone

16. My father sent me a nice present in a/an ....

a. accident b. space c. parcel d. rocket

17. Solar panels help us .... electricity.

a. work b. make c. do d. sign

18. Farid is busy. He is working .... a new project.

a. on b. for c. with d. by



Making predictions عمل تنبؤات

(will / will not) for future predictions

Form التكوين

كل الضمائر + will ('ll) + inf. مصدر الفعل

Ex. I think it will ('ll) be very cold next winter.

Usage الاستخدام

١- التنبؤ بشئ فى المستقبل بدون دليل
Ex. I think it will be hot tomorrow.

٢- القرارات السريعة
Ex. The phone is ringing. I'll answer it.

٣- العرض
Ex. I will help you with your homework. (offer)

٤- الطلب
Ex. Will you send us some photos? (request)



• تستخدم الكلمات الآتية مع (will) للتعبير عن تنبؤ بدون دليل فى المستقبل:

think / believe / hope / expect / (be) sure / perhaps / probably / possibly

Ex. I think that Maha will arrive soon.

Ex. We will probably visit Ali tomorrow.

Negative النفى

• للنفى نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

كل الضمائر + will not (won't) + inf....

Ex. I will not (won't) come with you. I'm busy.

Question السؤال

• للسؤال نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

(كلمة استفهام) Will + فاعل + inf. ......?

- سؤال بـ "هل":

Ex. Will you stay at home? - Yes, I will. - No, I won't.

- سؤال بكلمة استفهام:

Ex. What will you have for lunch? - I'll have chicken and chips.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

next	القادم	tomorrow	غداً	in the future	فى المستقبل
soon	قريباً	tonight	هذه الليلة	in (3 hours)	فى خلال (٣ ساعات)

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. I hope we .... to the moon in the future. End of Term Practice
   a. will go b. are going to c. went d. going
2. People .... all use electric cars in the future. SB
   a. would b. will c. are d. were
3. I think we .... drones for post in the future. WB
   a. use b. using c. used d. will use
4. In the future, people .... to the beach for holidays. They will go to the moon. WB
   a. will go b. didn't go c. won't go d. go
5. I think planes .... be faster and bigger in the future. سمالوط 2023
   a. will b. are c. were d. have
6. I think we .... on the moon, it's my dream. الزقازيق 2023
   a. were living b. will live c. going to live d. lived

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. I .... help you carry this heavy bag.
   a. have b. does c. will d. am
8. I think Mona will revise for her maths test ....
   a. yesterday b. last week c. ago d. tomorrow
9. .... we travel to other planets in the future?
   a. Have b. Will c. Had d. Did
10. Emad .... go to the cinema because he is busy.
    a. isn't b. did c. will d. won't
11. Will you buy a new mobile .... ?
    a. yesterday b. next week c. last week d. ago
12. I promise I .... be late tonight.
    a. won't b. didn't c. am not d. could
13. My mum is tired. I .... help her make dinner.
    a. is b. was c. will d. were
14. Ola .... be a doctor one day. She is very clever.
    a. couldn't b. won't c. can't d. will

15. .... you close the door, please?
   a. Would b. Will c. Did d. Won't
16. My father will probably .... a new car.
   a. buy b. buys c. bought d. to buy
17. I'm sure Hassan .... well in the next exam.
   a. does b. doing c. do d. will do

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB / WB & Exams

1. I think we will .... (having) solar panels on planes in the future. WB
2. Will there .... (being) driverless cars in the future? أوسيم 2023
3. There .... (was) a swimming pool soon. منفا 2023
4. .... (We will) live on the moon? إدارة أبوكبير 2023
5. Will there .... (are) electric cars in the future. كفر الشيخ 2023
6. Using a driverless car .... (will) cause many accidents. إدارة بيلقاس 2023
7. There will .... (been) modern houses in the future. غرب المنصورة 2023

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. They will go to the beach.............. (last) week.
9. I hope my father will buy a car in the .... (past).
10. Amir promises that he will .... (painting) the living room for us.
11. I think Salah .... (win) the best player prize in the next match.
12. We're going to watch a new film. I'm sure it .... (be) very exciting.

Speaking

Discussing and responding to ideas. مناقشة الافكار و الرد عليها

Discussing ideas	Responding
I think it'll be easy to travel to space. اعتقد انه سيكون من السهل السفر الى الفضاء.	- I think so. أعتقد ذلك. - I'm afraid, I don't think so. أخشى، أنني لا أعتقد ذلك.
I believe factories will use robots in the future. اعتقد أن المصانع سوف تستخدم الإنسان الآلي في المستقبل.	- I agree with you. اتفق معك. - I'm not sure about that. لست متأكداً من ذلك.




General Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Magdy and Ashraf are talking about the future.

Magdy : What do you think life will be in 2080?

Ashraf : ❶ ....

Magdy : How will it be easy?

Ashraf : ❷ ....

Magdy : ❸ ....?

Ashraf : I think we will go to the moon for holidays.

Magdy : I think factories will use robots. ❹ ....?

Ashraf : Yes, I agree with you.

Magdy : Do you think we will have electric cars?

Ashraf : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. Will there be .... cars in the future? SB
   a. electricity b. windy c. music d. electric
2. We can use the sun or the wind to get .... WB
   a. petrol b. space c. electricity d. air

Language

3. I hope many people .... solar panels in the future.
   a. use b. will use c. are using d. uses
4. We need bread. I .... some from the bakery.
   a. buy b. buying c. will buy d. buys

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Sally .... (will) go to work. She is tired.
2. When .... (you will) do the research?
3. There will .... (being) robots working in houses in the future.
4. There will .... (are) electric cars. أ و فرطاص 2023

4 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

To your friend Fawzi about life in the year 2080.

- Your name is Shadi and your email address is shadipost@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is fawzimail@yahoo.com.

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الالكتروني:

- How do you think life will be in 2080?
- What will houses look like?
- Will cars use petrol in the future?
- How will people be able to get power?
- Where will people go for holidays?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Life will be .... in 2080.
- Our .... will be different.
- We will use .... cars.
- There .... a lot of solar panels.
- We .... to the moon!

Lessons 4,5 & 6

SB pages 40-43 WB pages 96-99

Key Vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

round house	منزل مستدير الشكل	space	مساحة / فراغ / الفضاء
warm	دافئ	igloo*	كوخ من الجليد (على شكل قبة)
cool	بارد/لطيف	yurt*	خيمة كبيرة (للسكن)
rectangle	مستطيل	earthquake	زلزال
rectangular	مستطيل الشكل	circle	دائرة
triangle	مثلث	imagination	تخيل / خيال
triangular	مثلث الشكل		

Vocabulary

disadvantages	عيوب	timeline	مدى زمني/تسلسل زمني
traditional	تقليدي	drawing	رسم/تخطيط
size	حجم/مقاس	footballer	لاعب كرة قدم
event	حدث (هام)	diagram	رسم بياني/تخطيطي/توضيحي
temperature	درجة حرارة	technology	التكنولوجيا
suddenly	فجأة	quieter	أكثر هدوءاً
creative	مبتكر - مبدع	divide (d)	يُقسّم
task	مهمة (عمل مكلف به)	describe (d)	يصف
details	تفاصيل	explain (ed)	يشرح

Countries, Cities & Places

Canada	دولة كندا (بأمريكا الشمالية)	Mongolia	دولة منغوليا (بآسيا)
Burkina Faso	دولة بوركينا فاسو (بأفريقيا)		

Expressions & Prepositions

start school	يبدأ الدراسة	move (to a new) house	ينتقل لمنزل جديد (يعزّل)
heavy snow	جليد كثيف / غزير	move around	يتحرك حول / يتجول
heavy rain	مطر غزير	around the world	حول العالم
keep warm / cool	يحتفظ بالدفء / بالبرودة	look out of	ينظر للخارج من
How fantastic!	كم هو رائع!	play for	يلعب لصالح
(be) born in	يولد في (مكان/سنة)	important for	هام لـ
draw / make a plan	يرسم/يصمم خطة	in detail	بالتفصيل
write down	يدون	African footballer of the year	أفضل لاعب افريقي هذا العام
have fun	يستمتع		
look like	يشبه		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
keep	يحتفظ بـ	kept	kept
mean	يعني	meant	meant

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
traditional	تقليدي	classical	modern	حديث
amazing	مذهل/مدهش	exciting	terrible	فظيع/سيئ
flat	مسطح	level	bumpy	وعر
disadvantages	عيوب	cons	advantages	مميزات
creative	مبدع	clever	stupid	غبي

Definitions

igloo	كوخ من الجليد	a house made of ice and snow
cool	بارد	a temperature that is cold, but not too cold
warm	دافئ	a nice temperature that is hot, but not too hot
earthquake	زلزال	a natural event[1] when the ground suddenly moves
round	مستدير الشكل	with a shape like a circle[2]
imagination	تخيل/خيال	using the mind[3] to think creatively[4]
space	فراغ/مساحة	an area that you can move around in
yurt	خيمة كبيرة للسكن	a round tent used by nomads[5].

١- حدث طبيعي
٢- دائرة
٣- العقل
٤- بإبداع
٥- البدو

Language Notes

1 Comparatives

• سبق شرح صفات المقارنة في Unit 8 وهذه أمثلة أخرى وردت بالوحدة:

warm	دافئ	⇨	warmer	أدفأ	few	قليل	⇨	fewer	أقل
cool	بارد/لطيف	⇨	cooler	أبرد/ألطف	noisy	صاخب/مزعج	⇨	noisier	أكثر إزعاجًا
nice	لطيف	⇨	nicer	ألطف	dirty	قذر	⇨	dirtier	أقذر
strong	قوي	⇨	stronger	أقوى	cheap	رخيص	⇨	cheaper	أرخص
quiet	هادئ	⇨	quieter	أكثر هدوءًا	easy	سهل	⇨	easier	أسهل

• لاحظ أن الصفة المنتهية بـ (y) تحذف منها (y) ونضيف (ier) عند تكوين المقارنة.

• تذكر أن هذه الصفات تأتي بعدها كلمة than للمقارنة بين طرفين.

Ex. A round house is easier to keep warm or cool.

Ex. A round building uses fewer materials than an ordinary building.

2) Shape description

• من الممكن أن نحذف (e) من نهاية بعض الكلمات ونضيف (ular) لتكوين الصفة منها:

circle	دائرة	⇨	circular (round) دائري الشكل
rectangle	مستطيل	⇨	rectangular مستطيل الشكل
triangle	مثلث	⇨	triangular مثلث الشكل

• لاحظ أن هناك كلمات أخرى تستخدم كإسم وكصفة كما هي:

square	مربع	⇨	square مربع الشكل

3) learn

• learn (how) to + inf. يتعلم أن

Ex. She learned (how) to drive her father's car. - لاحظ أن استخدام (how) هنا اختياري.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Riding a bike is .... than driving a car.

a. easier b. easy c. easiest d. the easiest

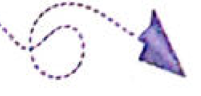
2. A ball has a .... shape.

a. triangular b. square c. circular d. rectangular

3. Finally, Ihab learned how to .... difficult maths sums.

a. do b. did c. doing d. does

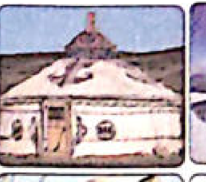






استمع إلى النصوص

Round houses around the world






Many traditional(1) houses in the past were round(2). Today, many modern houses are also round. Why is this? There are lots of reasons(3)!

A round shape means the building is very strong. This is important when there is an earthquake(4) or in strong winds. Also, heavy snow(5) or rain will fall from the roof. A round house is also easier to keep warm(6) or cool(7). It is also quieter inside a round building than a building that is a rectangle(8) or square(9).

Finally, a round building uses fewer materials (so it is cheaper to make(10)). It also has more space(11) inside. How fantastic!

١- تقليدى
٢- مستدير الشكل
٣- تفسيرات/اسباب
٤- زلزال
٥- جليد كثيف/غزير
٦- دافئ
٧- بارد
٨- مستطيل
٩- مربع
١٠- أرخص في بناءه
١١- مساحة/فراغ



* yurt — تنطق هذه الكلمة مثل كلمة (turn) مع اختلاف الصوتين الأول والأخير.
* igloo — ينطق حرف (i) في هذه الكلمة، مثل نطق حرف (e) في كلمة (egg).

SB Page (42)

How to plan(1) a creative(2) writing task(3)

1- First, think of as many ideas(4) as you can. What will the house look like(5)? What will it be made of? What will be different to houses of today? You can write down(6) or draw your ideas.

2- Use your imagination(7) and have fun!(8). Then, decide(9) which of your ideas are the best. Keep the other ideas for another time.

3- Finally, think about your best ideas in more detail(10). How can you make the idea work? Make a plan(11) (maybe in a diagram(12) or drawing). You can change any ideas that don't work.

١- يخطط
٢- مبدع
٣- مهمة كتابية
٤- افكار
٥- يشبه
٦- يسجل/يدون
٧- خيال
٨- استمتع
٩- قرر
١٠- بمزيد من التفاصيل
١١- ضع خطة
١٢- رسم توضيحي

WB Page (98)

1. **No more journeys by plane:** Today, I am going to describe(1) what I think holidays will be like in the future.
2. **The schools of tomorrow:** I want to explain(2) how I planned the school building you can see above.
3. **Taller, cleaner, better:** Today's cities are usually big, noisy and dirty, but what will they be like in the future?

١- يصف
٢- يشرح



Audioscript

SB Page (41)

A

Voice 1: twenty fifty

Voice 2: twenty twenty

Voice 3: twenty thirty-five

Voice 4: nineteen ninety-nine

B

Voice: ten sixty-six / two thousand / nineteen twenty-three / two thousand and eight / three thousand and one / twenty seventy-five

C

Basel: Hi, I'm Basel. These are the important events[1] in my life.
I was born in 2007 in Alexandria. I started school in 2012.
I liked my school!
I learned to ride a bike[2] in 2013. I love my bike!
In 2018, we moved house[3]. We live in Cairo now.
In 2019, we went on holiday to the Red Sea[4]. It was amazing!
In 2023, I will climb Mount Kilimanjaro[5] - I hope so anyway[6]!

١- أحداث
٢- يركب دراجة
٣- ينتقل لمنزل جديد (يعزل)
٤- البحر الأحمر (بمصر)
٥- جبل كلمنجارو (بدولة تنزانيا)
٦- على أى حال

WB Page (97)

Voice: Mohamed Salah was born in Cairo in 1992. He started playing football for El Mokawloon in 2010. He then moved to Switzerland[1] to play for Basel[2] in 2012.
In 2014, he went to London to play for Chelsea[3]. Three years later, in 2017, he went to play for Liverpool, Mohamed Salah was also African Footballer of the Year in 2017, and in 2019, he won the European Champions League[4] with Liverpool.



١- دولة سويسرا
٢- نادى بازل
٣- نادى تشيلسى
٤- دورى الابطال الأوروبى

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. A/An .... happens when the ground suddenly moves. إدارة [illegible] 2023 SB
   a. earthquake b. igloo c. volcano d. yurt
2. A/An .... is a house made of ice and snow. إدارة الجمالية 2023
   a. igloo b. drone c. project d. ground
3. ".........." means using ideas or ways that people first used a long time ago. غرب المنصورة 2023
   a. Traditional b. Popular c. Amazing d. Terrible
4. .... is nice temperature that is hot but not too hot. SB
   a. Cool b. Freezing c. Cold d. Warm
5. .... is an area that you can move around in. SB
   a. Spice b. Piece c. Space d. Peace
6. This is a triangular shape, it is a .... WB
   a. rectangle b. circle c. triangle d. square
7. This is a .... shape. It is a rectangle. WB
   a. circle b. triangular c. rectangular d. circular
8. It was hot outside, but it was nice and .... in my bedroom. WB
   a. windy b. cool c. round d. modern
9. My mother wants to buy a new sofa, but I don't think we have .... for it in our living room. WB
   a. spice b. space c. race d. price

Bit by Bit Exercises

10. Children in Egypt .... school at the age at six.
    a. keep b. finish c. end d. start
11. It's important to .... a plan before you start a task.
    a. draw b. paint c. move d. divide
12. I can't go out. There is .... rain outside.
    a. no b. heavy c. hot d. warm
13. A/An .... house is easier to keep warm or cool.
    a. round b. damaged c. around d. quiet

14. My son wants to learn .... my new car.

a. drive b. to driving c. driving d. to drive

15. I used my .... to draw a picture of cars in the future.

a. station b. temperature c. pollution d. imagination

16. People who live in deserts usually live in ....

a. yurts b. ships c. igloos d. circles

17. We use blankets to .... us warm.

a. think b. keep c. do d. write

18. Salah is playing .... Liverpool at present.

a. to b. about c. before d. for

19. You should write .... the information our teacher says.

a. up b. down c. about d. on



Saying years

كيفية نطق السنوات

• عند قراءة الأعوام نقوم بتقسيم العام إلى جزأين (أي يُقرأ كل رقمين معًا):

2050 = twenty fifty 1986 = nineteen eighty-six

• ويمكن قراءة العام بطريقة أخرى كالآتي:

2050 = two thousand and fifty 1986 = nineteen hundred and eighty-six

2000 = two thousand

• أما لقراءة الأعوام من (٢٠٠١) إلى (٢٠٠٩) نستخدم:

two thousand and + number

2001 = two thousand and one 2006 = two thousand and six

General Exercises on Lessons 4,5 & 6



1 Complete the following dialogue:

2022

Ahmed and Adham are talking about Mohammed Salah.

Ahmed : Do you know any information about Mohammed Salah?

Adham : 1 ....

Ahmed : 2 ....?

Adham : He was born in Tanta.

Ahmed : Does he score many goals?

Adham : 3 ....

Ahmed : 4 ....?

Adham : He has two sisters.

Ahmed : Did he win the African footballer of the year?

Adham : 5 ....

Ahmed : Wow! It's a great achievement.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Our house has enough .... for a bigger table.
   a. space b. reason c. circle d. temperature
2. Hamdy was born .... 2017.
   a. at b. for c. in d. with
3. The teacher asked the students to sit in a/an .... on the floor.
   a. circle b. round c. circular d. event
4. A pyramid is a building with three .... walls.
   a. circular b. rectangular c. triangular d. round
5. The student used his .... to write this story.
   a. space b. disadvantage c. shape d. imagination
6. In winter, we wear gloves to keep our hands ....
   a. cool b. warm c. modern d. flat
7. It was my wife's idea to .... house.
   a. turn b. explain c. move d. give
8. Many buildings fell down during the ....
   a. earthquake b. igloo c. temperature d. task

Unit 10

Review

Key Vocabulary

round	مستدير الشكل/دائري	solar panels	ألواح شمسية	earthquake	زلزال
curtain	ستارة	robot	إنسان آلي	circle	دائرة
oven	فرن	sign	علامة/إشارة	imagination	تخيل/خيال
wallet	محفظة (النقود)	electricity	الكهرباء	round house	منزل مستدير
roof	سطح (مبنى)	electric car	سيارة كهربائية	الشكل	
tap	حنفية	wind turbines	توربينات الرياح	warm	دافئ
brick	قالب طوب	driverless car	سيارة بدون سائق	cool	بارد/لطيف
cushion	وسادة (مخدة)	architect	مهندس معماري	rectangle	مستطيل
material	مادة خام	space	مساحة/فراغ/فضاء	rectangular	مستطيل الشكل
drone	طائرة بدون طيار	igloo	كوخ من الجليد	triangle	مثلث
Earth	كوكب الأرض	yurt	خيمة كبيرة (للسكن)	triangular	مثلث الشكل

Materials

cotton	قطن	glass	زجاج
metal	معدن	plastic	بلاستيك
wood	خشب	wool	صوف
leather	جلد مدبوغ	stone	حجر

Language

1) (be) made of / (be) made from

(be) made of

• تستخدم (be) made of بمعنى «مصنوع من» عندما لا تتغير المادة المصنوع منها الشيء ويكون من الممكن التعرف عليها:

الشيء/الأشياء + is / are + made of + المادة المصنع منها

Ex. The desks are made of wood.

(be) made from

• تستخدم (be) made from بمعنى «مصنوع من» عندما تتغير المادة المصنوع منها الشيء ولا يمكن التعرف عليها:

الشيء/الأشياء + is / are + made from + المادة المصنوع منها

Ex. Bread is made from flour and water.

2 some & any

• تستخدم some بمعنى «بعض» في الجملة المثبتة قبل الاسم الذي يعد (في صيغة الجمع) والذي لا يعد:

Ex. We bought some bags / rice.



• يمكن استخدام some في السؤال في حالتي العرض والطلب.

Ex. Would you like some grapes? (عرض)

Ex. Can I have some coffee? (طلب)

• تستخدم any بمعنى «أي» في الجملة الخبرية المنفية وفي السؤال قبل الاسم الذي يعد (في صيغة الجمع) والذي لا يعد.

Ex. I don't have any grapes / milk.

Ex. Did you buy any pens / pasta?

3 There is / was There are / were

There is / was يوجد/كان يوجد (للمفرد) There are / were يوجد/كان يوجد (للجمع)

• تستخدم There is / was مع الأسماء التي تعد المفردة والأسماء التي لا تعد في المضارع والماضي كالآتي:

Ex. There is / was a tablet on the desk.

Ex. There is / was some cheese in the fridge.

• تستخدم There are / were مع الأسماء التي تعد الجمع في المضارع والماضي كالآتي:

Ex. There are / were some tablets on the desk.

Negative النفي

There is not (isn't) / was not (wasn't) لا يوجد (للمفرد)

There are not (aren't) / were not (weren't) لا يوجد (للجمع)

Ex. There isn't / wasn't a pen in the bag.

Ex. There aren't / weren't any shops in that street.

Welcome to my home!

4) (will / will not) for future predictions

كل الضمائر + will ('ll) + inf...

Ex. I think I will ('ll) buy a car next year.

• نستخدم (will) للتعبير عن الآتى:

١- التنبؤ بشئ فى المستقبل بدون دليل — Ex. I expect it will rain tomorrow.

٢- القرارات السريعة — Ex. Someone is at the door. I'll open it.

٣- العروض — Ex. I will give you some money. (offer)

٤- الطلب — Ex. Will you show us the photos? (request)

• للنفى نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

كل الضمائر + will not (won't) + inf....

Ex. I will not (won't) give you the book. I need it.

• للسؤال نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

(كلمة استفهام) Will + فاعل + inf. ......?

Ex. Will you go to the party? - Yes, I will. - No, I won't.
Ex. What will you do next weekend?

• كلمات تعبر عن المستقبل:

next.... القادم ....- tomorrow غداً - in the future فى المستقبل - soon قريباً - tonight هذه الليلة - in (3 hours) فى خلال (٣ ساعات)

Speaking

1) Asking and answering about what things are made of

السؤال والإجابة عن مما تصنع الاشياء

Questions	Answers
1- What's your pencil case made of?	- It's made of plastic.
2- What are the cushions made of?	- They are made of cotton.
3- What's your bag made of?	- I'm not sure; I think it's made of cotton.

2) Discussing and responding to ideas.

مناقشة الافكار و الرد عليها

Discussing ideas	Responding
I think it'll be easy to travel to space.	- I think so. - I'm afraid, I don't think so.
I believe factories will use robots in the future.	- I agree with you. - I'm not sure about that.

3 Saying years

كيفية نطق السنوات

2050 = twenty fifty

2050 = two thousand and fifty

2000 = two thousand

1986 = nineteen eighty-six

1986 = nineteen hundred and eighty-six

two thousand and + number

2001 = two thousand and one

2006 = two thousand and six

General Exercises on Unit 10

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Yara and Yomna are talking about the future.

Yara : Do you have a car, Yomna?

Yomna : ❶ ....

Yara : ❷ ....?

Yomna : I think I'll buy a car in the future.

Yara : ❸ ....?

Yomna : Yes, I think there will be driverless cars.

Yara : How will life be in the future?

Yomna : ❹ ....

Yara : I think we will have cities under the sea. Do you agree?

Yomna : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. The ancient Egyptians built .... for making bread in their kitchens. إدارة الحائكة 2023

a. walls b. roofs c. ovens d. houses

2. A window is usually made of wood and .... WB

a. leather b. glass c. stone d. wool

3. In 2080, we will build houses using 3D .... SB

a. cars b. planes c. printers d. turbines

4. .... are usually made of leather.

a. Cars b. Houses c. Doors d. Bags

5. This blackboard has a .... shape.

a. rectangular b. circle c. triangle d. rectangle

6. You can sit down. There is .... for you.

a. peace b. sail c. space d. spice

7. Don't touch the ....; it's very hot.

a. cushion b. oven c. snow d. ice cream

8. We use .... to sit on or rest our heads on.

a. curtains b. ovens c. cushions d. roofs

9. There are solar .... on some buses for electricity nowadays.

a. planes b. panels c. plans d. planets

10. Mum used the .... to make bread.

a. oven b. book c. carpets d. curtains

Language

11. In 2080, we .... in cities under the sea. **SB**

a. live b. lived c. living d. will live

12. .... there any oil in that bottle?

a. Are b. Is c. Has d. Were

13. Who .... you English next year?

a. has taught b. teach c. taught d. will teach

14. Do you know what this T-shirt .... made of?

a. are b. were c. have d. is

15. The mechanic will .... my car tomorrow.

a. repair b. repairing c. repairs d. repaired

16. When .... they finish building this bridge?

a. have b. will c. are d. were

17. There .... any potatoes in the kitchen.

a. weren't b. wasn't c. were d. was

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Next year, we will .... (bought) a new car. إدارة الخانكة 2023
2. .... (Is) there any friends in Soha's party? الإسماعيلية 2023
3. I think many people will .... (using) solar panels in the future. إدارة سنورس 2023
4. Hany will .... (gets) wet if he forgets the umbrella. غرب المنصورة 2023
5. .... (When) is your bag made of? SB
6. The socks .... (is) made of wool. SB

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. There .... (was) any juice in the fridge.
8. In the .... (past), I think cars will run on water.

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Things in your home" WB

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **What things do you have at home?**
- **What shape are the doors and windows?**
- **What are they made of / from?**

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **I have many things in my home.**
- **They are (rectangular).**
- **They are made of / from ....**
- **I like my home very much.**

Unit 10

Al Azhar Test



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Mohamed Salah was born in ....
   a. 1992   b. 1995   c. 1991   d. 1929
2. He moved to Switzerland to play for .... in 2012.
   a. Liverpool   b. Basel   c. Barcelona   d. Real Madrid

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Kareem : What is a car door made of?

Basem : ① ....

Kareem : What are the seats made of?

Basem : ② ....

Kareem : ③ ....?

Basem : Yes, my father has a car.

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There .... any juice in my glass.
   a. aren't   b. wasn't   c. was   d. weren't
2. We can use the sun or the wind to produce ....
   a. electricity   b. water   c. oil   d. cotton
3. We will have .... cars in the future.
   a. careless   b. homeless   c. driverless   d. useless
4. A/An .... is a round house in Canada? - It's made of ice.
   a. yurt   b. tent   c. flat   d. igloo
5. The door is .... of wood.
   a. making   b. makes   c. made   d. make

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Long ago, people could only walk or travel on boats, horses or camels. Then people invented bicycles and later trains, cars and planes. In the future, we will have small electric cars. **They** will be easy to drive in traffic. These cars won't use petrol. They will use electricity, so they will be better for the environment. Now a lot of cities have too many cars. These cities will build more metro lines, so people will be able to get around the cities quickly.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A lot of cities will build more metro ....
   a. dots b. lines c. squares d. buildings
2. Electric cars will be .... to drive in traffic.
   a. hard b. easy c. difficult d. terrible
3. Electric cars won't use ....
   a. gas b. water c. petrol d. electricity

B. Answer the following questions:

4. How could people travel long ago? ....
5. What does the underlined word **"They"** refer to? ....

5 Reorder the following to make meaningful sentences:

1. walls - made - of - the - **The** - were - of - bricks - houses. ....
2. are - you - moment - designing - **What** - at - the? ....
3. architect - does - an - **What** - do? ....
4. be - of - solar - **There'll** - panels - lots. ....

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

[مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة]

"Houses in the future"

....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **Will houses be different in the future?**
- **Do you think gardens will be on the roofs of our houses?**
- **What about electric cars?**
- **How will we get electricity?**
- **Will there be robots at home?**

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **Houses in the future will .... to our houses today.**
- **We will need more gardens in ....**
- **Gardens will be on ....**
- **There'll be chargers for electric cars .... our houses.**
- **There will be robots to ....**

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل بريد إلكتروني وردت بالوحدة

Things in my bedroom

I like my bedroom very much. I feel relaxed when I stay there. I study, read books, play computer games and sleep in it. There are many things in my bedroom. There is a bed to sleep in. It is made of metal. There are cushions on the bed, they are made of cotton. There is a rug on the floor, it is made of wool. There is a wardrobe for my clothes. It is made of wood. There is a basket for rubbish, it is made of plastic. There are pictures on the walls. There is a computer. It is made of plastic and glass.

Life in the year 2080

To: fawzimail@yahoo.com

From: shadipost@gmail.com

Subject: Life in the year 2080.

Dear Fawzi,

I'd like to tell you about the year 2080.

I think life will be different in 2080. Our houses will be different to our houses today. We'll have gardens on the roofs. We will use electric cars. There will be a lot of solar panels. They will make the electricity we need. We won't go to beaches for our holiday. We will go to the moon! There will be rockets to take us there. They will be very fast. The journey will take a few hours. We will walk on the moon and see the Earth from there.

Yours,

Shadi

Things in my home

I have many things in my home. I have a bedroom, a living room, a bathroom and a kitchen. All the rooms have doors and windows. They are rectangular. They are made of wood and glass. My living room window is large and square so I can look out of it. I like to know the materials which things are made of. My room has many things in it. I like my home very much. Everyone likes their home.

Houses in the future (Al Azhar

Houses in the future will be different to our houses today. I think we'll need more gardens in the future. There'll be lots of solar panels and a wind turbine. They'll make electricity. There will be robots to do all the housework.

A famous person "Mohammed Salah"

To: tarek44@yahoo.com

From: sayed84@gmail.com

Subject: A famous person

Dear Tarek,

How are you? I'd like to tell you about a famous person that I love.

Mohammed Salah is a very famous person. He was born in 1992. He is an Egyptian footballer. He started playing for El Mokawloon. He is playing for Liverpool now. He also plays for the Egyptian National Team. He is one of the best players in the world. He is very fast. He scores many wonderful goals. He gets international prizes. He helped the Egyptian National Team take part in the World Cup competition in 2018. Many people in the world like Salah. All Egyptians are proud of him.

Write soon

Sayed

Unit 10

TEST



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Many traditional houses in the past were ....
   a. triangular b. square c. round d. cubic
2. A round shape means the building is very ....
   a. bad b. weak c. tall d. strong
3. A round shape is important when there is a/an ....
   a. earthquake b. volcano c. storm d. rain
4. A round shape helps when there are strong ....
   a. views b. walls c. winds d. people

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue: WB

Ziad and Ashraf are talking about Ziad's things.

Ziad : Look at my things, Ashraf.

Ashraf : ❶ ....

Ziad : ❷ ....?

Ashraf : These pencils are made of wood.

Ziad : What is this wallet made of?

Ashraf : ❸ ....

Ziad : ❹ ....?

Ashraf : Yes, I have cotton shirts.

Ziad : Is your tablet made of plastic?

Ashraf : ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Life in the future will be very different. Houses will use solar energy. Everyone will have robots at home. House robots will do lots of different things around the house; they will clean the house, do the shopping, help look after the children and drive parents to <u>their</u> place of work.

Every person in a house will have a computer. Students won't go to school any more. They will have lessons on their computers every day.

I think people will use electric buses and trains with robot drivers.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage?

---

2. What will robots do?

---

3. Would you like to live in the future? Why / Why not?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word **"their"** refers to ....
   a. parents b. children c. things d. robots
5. .... will drive buses and trains in the future.
   a. Drivers b. Computers c. Robots d. Children
6. In the future, students will learn at ....
   a. home b. school c. playground d. streets

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We use .... to build a wall. WB
   a. bricks b. ovens c. roofs d. taps
2. My aunt made us some bread and when we ate it, it was still .... WB
   a. warm b. cold c. rainy d. windy
3. This is a .... shape. It's a circle. WB
   a. rectangular b. triangular c. cubic d. round
4. A/An .... car does not use petrol. WB
   a. ordinary b. electric c. driverless d. wind

5. Shoes are usually made of .... WB
   a. metal   b. cotton   c. glass   d. leather
6. Some houses fell to the ground after the .... WB
   a. space   b. earthquake   c. earth   d. temperature
7. .... are machines which can do many things for us. Some of them can talk. WB
   a. Panels   b. Turbines   c. Rockets   d. Robots
8. Is there .... rice in the bag? عرب المنصورة 2023 WB
   a. many   b. few   c. any   d. some
9. There .... any computers in the past.
   a. were   b. aren't   c. weren't   d. wasn't
10. Will there .... planes to travel to the moon in the future?
   a. is   b. are   c. be   d. been

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The table .... (are) made of wood. إدارة أبوحماد 2023
2. What .... (is) the cushions made of? إدارة بلقاس 2023
3. There .... (was) be a swimming pool soon. إدارة قها 2023
4. Next year, we will .... (bought) a new car. الجانكة 2023

E Writing

6 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words: SB

مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار

To your friend Tarek about a famous person.

- Your name is Sayed and your email address is sayed84@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is tarek44@yahoo.com.

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الالكتروني:

- Who is Mohammed Salah?
- When was he born?
- Where is he playing at present?
- Does he score good goals?
- How did he help the Egyptian National Team in 2018?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Mohammed Salah is a very famous ....
- He was born in ....
- He is playing for ....
- He is one of the best players ....
- He scores .... goals.
- All Egyptians .... of him.

11
UNIT

On land and sea

Objectives

Reading:

A paragraph about sea life; a leaflet about plastic pollution; *The Old Man and the Sea*

Writing:

Writing rules; writing an advertisement; a text explaining a beach clean-up day

Listening:

A talk at a nature reserve

Speaking:

Talking about saving the environment

Language:

Zero conditional; *must / mustn't; should / shouldn't*, asking for, giving and sequencing instructions

Life Skills:

Collaboration; setting clear goals



SB / WB Answers جميع أسئلة كتاب الطالب والتدريبات مجاب عنها في آخر الكتاب

Lesson 1

SB pages 44 - 45 WB page 100

Key Vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية	flat	مسطح/مستوى/مفلطح
jellyfish	قنديل البحر	ocean	محيط
octopus	أخطبوط	poisonous	سام
shark	سمكة القرش	danger	خطر
stingray	سمك الرَّاى اللاسع	shell	صدفة/قوقعة
turtle	سلحفاة مائية	tail	ذيل
whale	حوت	sting (stung - stung)	يلدغ/يلسع

Vocabulary

sea animal/ bird	حيوان/طائر بحرى	hard	صلب
sea life	حياة (حيوانات) بحرية	touch (ed)	يلمس
heavy	ثقيل	turn (ed)	يتحول
teeth (tooth)	أسنان (سِنة)	laugh (ed)	يضحك
spider	عنكبوت	protect (ed)	يحمى
ice	ثلج	punish (ed)	يعاقب

Expressions & Prepositions

feel ill / tired	يشعر بالمرض/بالتعب	in danger	فى خطر
get home	يصل للمنزل	protect... from	يحمى... من
have a test	لديه اختبار	hit with	يضرب بـ
one of the most dangerous..	واحد من أخطر..	on land / sea	على اليابسة/فى البحر
		go into	يدخل فى
lose a tooth	يفقد سنًا من الأسنان	turn to	يتحول إلى
jump out of	يقفز خارجًا من	swim away	يسبح بعيدًا

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
hit	يضرب	hit	hit
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	woken up
lose	يفقد	lost	lost
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
grow	ينمو	grew	grown

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
danger	خطر	threat	safe	امن
poisonous	سام	toxic	healthy	صحى
life	حياة	living/alive	death	موت
heavy	ثقيل	weighty	light	خفيف
hard	صلب	solid	soft	لين

Definitions

١- لين
٢- صلب
٣- ظهر

coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية	a hard area of something like rock made from small sea animals (coral)
jellyfish	قنديل البحر	a sea animal with a soft[1] body that you can see through. It stings when you touch it.
poisonous	سام	if something is poisonous, it can make you very ill or kill you
shark	سمكة القرش	a large, dangerous sea animal with sharp teeth
shell	قوقعة/صدفة	the hard part on the outside of a turtle, nut etc.
sting	يلدغ/يلسع	if an animal stings you, it hurts you to protect itself
stingray	سمك الرَّاى اللاسع	a big, flat fish with a long tail that can sting
tail	ذيل	the part that is at the end of an animal's body
turtle	سلحفاة مائية	a large sea animal with a hard[2] shell on its back[3]
whale	حوت	the largest sea animal in the world
ocean	محيط	a large sea
octopus	أخطبوط	a sea animal with eight legs
flat	مسطح/مستوى	having no high areas

Language Notes

1 • hard • soft

يمكن أن تستخدم كلمة (hard) بأكثر من معنى:

• **hard (adj)** صلب/صعب/خشن

Ex. The turtle has a hard shell.

Ex. I couldn't answer the question because it was hard.

• **hard (adv.)** بجد

Ex. You should study hard.

يمكن أن تستخدم كلمة (soft) بأكثر من معنى:

- **soft (adj)** لين/طري - ناعم

Ex. Cotton is a soft material.

Ex. The baby has soft skin.

- **soft (adj)** رقيق

Ex. She has a soft heart.

2 • feel • fall • fill • fail

- **feel (felt / felt)** يشعر

Ex. I felt tired because I slept late.

- **fall (fell / fallen)** يَسقُط/يقع

Ex. He fell off the chair and broke his arm.

- **fill (ed)** يملأ

Ex. Ahmed filled the glass with water.

- **fail (ed)** يرسب

Ex. He was sad because he failed his exams.

3 • flat • a flat

- **flat (adj)** مستوى/مسطح

Ex. The Earth is round, not flat.
The road is flat and smooth.

- **a flat (n)** شقة

Ex. She moved to a new flat yesterday.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A sea turtle has a .... shell. It protects the turtle.
   a. soft b. hard c. bad d. hardly
2. Cats have .... fur.
   a. soft b. hard c. easy d. lazy
3. How did you .... when you got a prize?
   a. fall b. fail c. feel d. fill
4. Ali wants to move into a new ....
   a. shell b. flag c. fish d. flat



SB Page (45)





استمع إلى النص

Dangers of the sea

The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean*(1). If it loses a tooth, a new one grows. A shark uses more than 20,000 teeth in its life!

So how do fish and sea animals protect themselves from danger(2)?

A stingray(3) is a big, flat(4) fish and it lives in the coral reef(5). If it knows a shark is coming, it jumps out of the water!

A sea turtle(6) has a hard(7) shell(8) to protect it. Other animals can swim very fast – the octopus(9) has got eight legs to help it!

Some sea life(10), like the jellyfish(11), is poisonous(12). It stings(13) you when you touch(14) it.

What about the whales*(15)? These big, heavy(16) animals hit with their big tails(17)!

١- محيط
٢- الخطر
٣- سمك الرَّاي اللاسع
٤- مسطح / مستو
٥- الشعب المرجانية
٦- سلحفاه بحرية
٧- صلب
٨- صدفة
٩- أخطبوط
١٠- حيوانات بحرية
١١- قنديل البحر
١٢- سام
١٣- يلدغ - يلسع
١٤- يلمس
١٥- حيتان
١٦- ثقيل
١٧- ذيول

Say it correctly

* ocean — ينطق الجزء الملون في هذه الكلمة مثل صوت (ش).
* whale — تنطق كلمة (whale) مثل كلمة (sail) مع اختلاف الصوت الأول.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. The jellyfish is poisonous. It .... you when you touch it. **SB**
   a. grows b. smiles c. rings d. stings
2. A sea turtle has a hard .... to protect itself. **SB**
   a. shelf b. shell c. ship d. shore
3. The .... is one of the most dangerous sea animals. **SB**
   a. crab b. turtle c. shark d. tiger
4. The .... is a sea animal with eight legs. أسيوط 2023
   a. turtle b. octopus c. jellyfish d. whale

5. When a turtle is in ...., it goes into its shell. SB

a. danger b. flat c. plastic d. line

6. The Red Sea is famous for its .... reefs. القليوبية 2022

a. morals b. corn c. flat d. coral

7. A/An .... is a big, flat fish and it lives in the coral reefs. ملوي 2022

a. turtle b. octopus c. stingray d. shell

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. What should we do to .... sea life?

a. hurt b. protect c. hate d. harm

9. The earth is round. It's not ....

a. funny b. dark c. noisy d. flat

10. Don't eat this food. It may be ....

a. poisonous b. delicious c. good d. tired

11. Tourists dive into the Red Sea to see the ....

a. camels b. coral reefs c. trees d. stars

12. The .... is the largest sea animal.

a. shark b. turtle c. whale d. stingray

13. The Atlantic .... lies between America and Europe.

a. pond b. island c. shell d. ocean

14. The monkey has a long ....

a. nose b. feather c. tail d. shell

15. I was .... danger when the dog attacked me.

a. on b. from c. at d. in

16. Umbrellas protect us .... the rain.

a. with b. from c. by d. to

17. I found many .... on the beach and I collected them.

a. sharks b. oceans c. shells d. ships

18. Large sea animals live in a/an ....

a. ocean b. pond c. pool d. basin



Language

The zero conditional الحالة الصفرية للجمل الشرطية

Form التكوين

If / When → present simple, → present simple
عندما/إذا مضارع بسيط مضارع بسيط

- يمكن أن تأتي (if / when) في وسط الجملة.

present simple → if / when → present simple

Ex. If (When) it's late, I feel tired. = I feel tired if (when) it's late.

Usage الاستخدام

• تستخدم الحالة الصفرية للجمل الشرطية للتعبير عن:

١- فعل يحدث دائماً عند حدوث فعل آخر.

Ex. If it rains, we get water. = We get water if it rains.

٢- حدث في المضارع وما يترتب عليه من نتائج.

Ex. If / When I'm tired, I go to bed.= I go to bed if / when I'm tired.

٣- للتعبير عن حقائق (ترتبط بالطبيعة/والفيزياء والفلك....)

Ex. If you heat ice, it melts.

٤- للتعبير عن المواقف التلقائية.

Ex. If I see a new word, I look it up. (يبحث عن)

٥- يمكن استخدام الحالة الصفرية في التحدث عن عادات مع وجود كلمات مثل (often - usually - always)

Ex. If we are noisy in class, our teacher usually gets angry. SB p. 24



١- للسؤال بمعنى (ماذا سيحدث إذا......) في الحالة الصفرية نستخدم:

What happens if / when + فاعل + فعل في المضارع البسيط ....?

Ex. A: What happens if / when we put ice in the sun?

B: It becomes water. / It melts

٢- المضارع البسيط من فعل (have) هو (have / has) ومن فعل (be) هو (am / is / are).

Ex. If she has much money, she buys clothes.

Ex. Ali sees a doctor if he is ill.

٣- المضارع البسيط ينفى بـ don't / doesn't + inf.

Ex. If I don't water the flowers, they die.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. If it .... very hot, I turn on the fan. SB
   a. were b. was c. are d. is
2. If I .... my pencil case, I often feel sad. SB
   a. forgot b. forget c. forgets d. forgetting
3. When I .... hungry, I have something to eat. SB
   a. was b. were c. am d. be
4. When I .... home from school, I take a shower. WB
   a. got b. gets c. getting d. get
5. If my sister .... a lot of TV, she feels tired. WB
   a. watches b. watch c. watched d. watching
6. If we are noisy in class, our teacher usually .... us. SB
   a. punish b. punishes c. punished d. punishing
7. When I've got a test, I always .... nervous. SB
   a. felt b. to feel c. feel d. feeling
8. When you leave ice cream in the sun, it .... water. عرب المنصورة 2023
   a. became b. become c. becoming d. becomes
9. When I feel ill, I .... to bed. إدارة الحسينية 2023
   a. goes b. go c. went d. going

Bit by Bit Exercises

10. If mum .... a lot of work, I usually help her.
    a. is b. have c. had d. has
11. If ice becomes warm, we......... water.
    a. getting b. gets c. got d. get
12. What .... when we heat water?
    a. happening b. happens c. is happened d. happened

13. What do you do when you .... your best friend?

a. meeting b. met c. meet d. to meet

14. .... Ali takes the medicine, he gets better.

a. If b. Why c. But d. Although

15. What do you eat when you .... hungry?

a. were b. was c. are d. will

16. .... I feel ill, I go to the doctor.

a. When b. What c. Where d. Why

17. Plants die if they .... enough water.

a. don't get b. get c. doesn't get d. got

18. .... it gets cold, I put on my coat.

a. For b. If c. Where d. But

19. If there are no trees, we .... get oxygen.

a. have b. aren't c. don't d. will

20. When Ayman is thirsty, he .... water.

a. drink b. drinks c. drank d. is drinking

21. If we put water in a fridge, it ....

a. freeze b. freezing c. froze d. freezes

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB , WB & Exercises

1. If you .... (heats) ice, it turns into water. إدارة سملوط 2023
2. If I feel ill, I .... (went) to bed. WB المنوفية / إدارة سرس الليان 2022
3. When it .... (was) very cold, water turns to ice. WB
4. When a turtle .... (be) in danger, it goes into its shell. SB
5. He always .... (laugh) when he watches that film. سنورس 2023

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. Kenzy feels ill if she .... (travel) on a boat.
7. If it is dark, I .... (see).
8. If my grandfather is tired, he .... (fell) asleep.

9. If I .... (didn't) know an English word, I use my dictionary.
10. When it's a holiday, Ali .... (not) get up early.
11. What do you usually .... (done) when it rains heavily?

Speaking

Describing a sea animal — وصف حيوان بحري

1. It can swim (fast) — يستطيع أن يسبح ......
2. It has got (eight) legs. — يملك عدد ...... أرجل.
3. It lives in (oceans). — يعيش فى ......
4. The (shark) is very dangerous. — ..... خطير جدًا.
5. The (whale) is very big. — ..... كبير الحجم جدًا.
6. A (stingray) is a big, flat fish. — .... سمكة كبيرة ومسطحة.

General Exercises on Lesson 1



1 Complete the following dialogue: الشرقية - إدارة الزقازيق 2022

Omar and Ziad are talking about sea animals.

Omar : Yesterday, we had an interesting science lesson.

Ziad : ① ....?

Omar : It was about sea animals.

Ziad : ② ....?

Omar : We learnt about sharks and stingrays.

Ziad : Are sharks really dangerous?

Omar : ③ ....

Ziad : Can a stingray harm you?

Omar : ④ .... You should stay away from it.

Zaid : ⑤ ....

② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. People enjoy the .... reefs in the Red Sea.
   a. lot b. turtle c. coral d. bee
2. We .... a lot after we watched that funny film.
   a. protected b. turned c. punished d. laughed
3. A/An .... can swim fast and has got eight legs. إدارة بنا التعليمية 2023 / إدارة الحسينية 2023
   a. shark b. jellyfish c. octopus d. coral reef
4. A .... is poisonous. It stings you when you touch it. إدارة العمرانية 2023
   a. turtle b. jellyfish c. whale d. shark

Language

5. .... a shark loses a tooth, a new one grows. SB
   a. But b. If c. Where d. What
6. When a stingray .... a shark is coming, it jumps out of the water. SB
   a. knows b. know c. knowing d. knew
7. If you pour water on fire, it .... out.
   a. went b. goes c. go d. would go
8. When the kids .... hungry, they usually have snacks.
   a. are b. be c. will be d. were
9. Earth is one of eight .... that go around the sun. إدارة الخانكة 2023 WB
   a. planets b. planes c. plates d. plants

③ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When I get home from school, I .... (always does) my homework. WB
2. When it .... (rain), I take my umbrella.
3. If it is hot, I .... (wore) light clothes.
4. When we freeze water, we .... (gets) ice.
5. I drink .... (where) I feel thirsty.

Lessons 2 & 3

SB pages 46-49 WB pages 101-102

Key Vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات

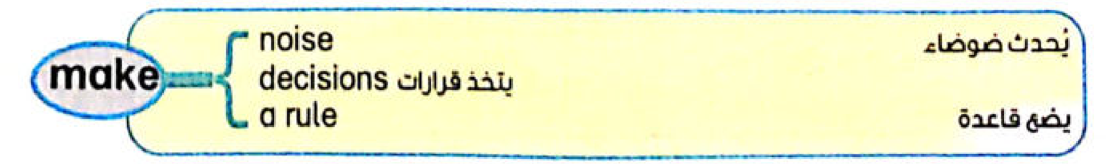
environment	بيئة	rubbish	قمامة
planet	كوكب	throw away	يرمى/يتخلص من
fishing line	صنارة صيد	recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير/تصنيع
nature reserve	محمية طبيعية		

Vocabulary

everywhere	فى كل مكان	diving	الغطس
plastic	بلاستيك	around	حوالى/تقريباً
traffic rules	قواعد المرور	knife (knives)	سكينة (سكاكين)
paper	ورق	careful	حريص
dirty	قذر/متسخ	school work	عمل مدرسى
through	خلال	home	موطن/ منزل
decision	قرار	save (d)	ينقذ
own	ملك/خاصته	share (d)	يشارك
grass	حشائش	die (d)	يموت
piece	جزء/قطعة	frighten (ed)	يخيف/يرعب
shopping bag	حقيبة تسوق	clean (ed) (adj)	ينظف/نظيف

Expressions & Prepositions

stop trying	يتوقف عن المحاولة	die from	يموت بسبب
walk away from	يمشى بعيداً عن	get rid of	يتخلص من
look left and right	ينظر يسارًا ويمينًا	on roads	فى الطرقات
run across the road	يجرى عبر الطريق	throw into	يلقى فى
do activities	يقوم بأنشطة	take off	يخلع (ملابس مثلاً)
take turns	يتبادل الأدوار	share.... with	يشارك... مع
follow traffic rules	يتبع قواعد المرور	angry with	غاضب من (شخص)
share ideas	يشارك الأفكار	agree with	يتفق مع (شخص)
feed birds	يطعم الطيور	famous for	مشهور بسبب
use... for	يستخدم... لـ	bad for	ضار لـ
go diving	يذهب للغطس		



Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
throw away	يتخلص من	threw away	thrown away
give	يعطي	gave	given
take off	يخلع (ملابس)	took off	taken off
pay	يدفع (مالاً)	paid	paid

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
careful	حريص	watchful / aware	careless	غير حريص
dirty	قذر/متسخ	polluted	clean	نظيف
save	ينقذ	protect	harm	يؤذي

Definitions

environment	البيئة	the world around us
recycle	يعيد تدوير	use again
rubbish	قمامة	things we do not need, like old paper
throw away	يرمي/يتخلص من	put something you don't need somewhere
nature reserve	محمية طبيعية	an area of land used to protect nature, animals and plants
fishing line	صنارة صيد	a thin line used to catch a fish
planets	كواكب	objects like the Earth that go around the sun

Language Notes

1) one of the + صفة في صيغة التفضيل (-est / the most) + اسم جمع

Ex. The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals.

2) • paper • a paper

• **paper** (اسم لا يعد) ورق

Ex. Books are made of paper.

• **a paper** (اسم يعد) ورقة / جريدة

Ex. Give me a pen and a paper to write a letter.

Ex. Did you read yesterday's papers?

3 • throw • through

• **throw (threw - thrown)** فعل بمعنى (يرمي/يلقي)

Ex. I threw a stone into the river.

• **throw away = get rid of** يلقي بعيدًا/يتخلص من

Ex. I never throw my old clothes away. I give them to the poor.

• **through** حرف جر بمعنى (عبر/خلال)

Ex. I couldn't go through the door; it was closed.

4 • recycle • cycle

• **recycle (d)** يعيد تدوير/تصنيع

Ex. If we recycle rubbish, it helps the environment.

• **cycle (d)** يركب دراجة

Ex. I have a bike. I always cycle to school.

5 • rule • role

• **rule** قاعدة

Ex. Students should follow school rules.

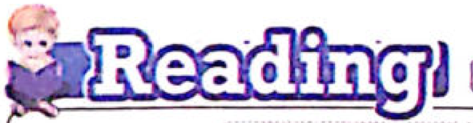
• **role** دور

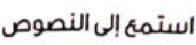
Ex. Women have a big role in our country.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mohamed Salah is one .... the fastest players.
   a. with b. by c. for d. of
2. .... is a material for writing on.
   a. Papers b. Paper c. Pepper d. Any papers
3. We shouldn't .... rubbish away. We should recycle it.
   a. throw b. reuse c. through d. cycle
4. There is a new factory to .... plastic in our town.
   a. cycle b. throw c. recycle d. get rid of
5. Traffic .... help to keep our streets safe.
   a. roles b. rules c. rolls d. rides





استمع إلى النصوص



SB Page (46)

We must save[1] our planet[2]!



Plastic[3] is everywhere! We use it for many different things. The problem is, plastic stays in the environment[4] for a very long time.

Some of the plastic, people find on beaches is about 100 years old! We can recycle[5] some plastic, but most[6] of it goes into the ocean.

Plastic is poisonous when animals eat it.

Every year, more than 100,000 sea animals and birds die from plastic.

We must try to use other materials[7] - paper and glass, for example - because these are easier to recycle.

When we use a plastic shopping bag[8], we mustn't throw away[9] these bags in rivers. It will take a long time[10] to clean all the plastic rubbish[11] from the beaches and the ocean. But we mustn't stop trying to help our planet!

١- ينقذ
٢- كوكب
٣- البلاستيك
٤- البيئة
٥- يعيد تدوير
٦- معظم
٧- مواد
٨- حقيبة تسوق
٩- يرمى / يتخلص من
١٠- يستغرق وقتاً طويلاً
١١- القمامة

WB Page (102)

Ras Mohammed



Ras Mohammed reserve*[1] is famous for[2] its birds and animals. Many people go diving in the coral reefs here to see the many beautiful fish and turtles. If you want to dive here, first you must pay[3] around LE 100. When you dive, you mustn't touch or give food to any of the fish. You must only use knives[4] to cut fishing lines[5] and you must never take any fish from the water. Finally, sharks also live here, so you must be careful[6]!

١- محمية راس محمد
٢- مشهور بـ
٣- يدفع (مالاً)
٤- سكاكين
٥- صنارات صيد
٦- حريص



* reserve

ينطق حرف (s) فى هذه الكلمة مثل صوت (z).



Audioscript

SB Page (48)

Teacher:

We're going to visit this nature reserve[1] today. We have nature reserves to help our birds, plants and animals. Many important birds, animals and plants live here so we must be careful what we do.

First, you mustn't make a lot of noise[2]! You'll frighten[3] the animals and birds. Secondly, we must not leave the road through[4] the reserve. The animals and birds live in the plants next to the road and you don't want to walk into their homes[5], do you?

Now I know we're going to have a picnic lunch[6] later, but you mustn't give any food to the animals or birds. They must find their own food[7]. They mustn't think that all their food will come from you!

Next, you must take all your rubbish with you when you leave. Some animals think that plastic is food, but they mustn't eat it. It is very bad for them.

Finally, you must remember to work together[8] and write what you see. You can write about your visit to the reserve for the project.

١- محمية طبيعية
٢- يحدث الكثير من الضوضاء
٣- يخيف
٤- عَبْر/خلال
٥- مواطن
٦- غداء فى الهواء الطلق
٧- طعامهم الخاص
٨- يعمل معاً

Videoscript

From the camel to the beautiful desert cat, or caracal[1] to the Nile crocodile, there are many animals in Egypt. But some animals are in danger of extinction[2]. This means that every example of the animal will die. The Dorcas gazelle[3] lives in the Sinai Peninsula[4] and in other parts of North Africa. It eats plants and you can sometimes see them early in the morning and late in the evening. The animal is in danger because some people want to eat it.

In the past, the Barbary sheep[5] lived all over the country.
It eats plants, but warmer weather means the sheep find it harder to find food.
Today you can only find them in the mountains of southern[6] and western[7] Egypt.

١- الكاراكال (قطة برية)
٢- الانقراض
٣- غزال الدوركاس
٤- شبه جزيرة سيناء
٥- الكبش البربرى
٦- جنوب
٧- غرب

The striped hyena[8] looks like a dog. You can only see it at night. It eats other animals. People think that there are only a small number of striped hyenas in Egypt.

One of the most unusual animals is the dugong[9]. This animal lives in the Red Sea and other places. It is also called the sea cow. This is because it only eats plants that grow underwater.

The dugong is in danger because there is plastic and other pollution[10] in the sea. Also, there is not much food in the sea for it to eat.

Today, there are some organisations[11] that want to help these and other animals that are in danger; like this turtle. It is helpful for animals when we take rubbish from the beaches. We must all do what we can to help to protect nature.

٨- الضبع المخطط
٩- الأطوم (حيوان بحري كبير الحجم)
١٠- تلوث
١١- منظمات

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. Plastic is .... for sea animals. SB
   a. helpful b. protecting c. poisonous d. useful
2. Trees are very good for our .... because they give us clean air. WB
   a. rubbish b. plastic c. environment d. road
3. You can see birds and animals in the Ras Mohammed .... WB
   a. reserve b. ocean c. beach d. river
4. Don't throw away those glass bottles. We can .... them. إدارة قها 2023 WB
   a. cycle b. recycle c. cook d. hear
5. We don't need that dirty piece of paper. You can put it with the .... WB
   a. environment b. beach c. planet d. rubbish
6. Every year, more than 100,000 sea animals and birds .... from plastic. SB
   a. live b. buy c. die d. stay

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. We .... of rubbish by putting it in trash bins.
   a. jump out b. get rid c. run away d. feel tired
8. The students take .... to answer the questions.
   a. tables b. trains c. trees d. turns

9. **A:** I think our team will win. **B:** I don't agree .... you.
   a. on b. from c. with d. of
10. Osman never .... all the decisions by himself. He always asks his father.
    a. makes b. does c. gives d. looks
11. I use a fishing .... when I catch fish.
    a. row b. ocean c. tape d. line
12. Mum was angry .... me because I got bad marks.
    a. for b. with c. from d. to
13. The .... is the world around us.
    a. plastic b. environment c. rubbish d. nature reserve
14. We mustn't .... plastic bags in rivers.
    a. throw away b. write down c. take off d. wake up
15. We can .... rubbish to save the Earth.
    a. throw b. die c. cycle d. recycle
16. Ahmed is helpful. He always .... his ideas with others.
    a. shares b. loses c. touches d. forgets
17. You can enjoy nice views at a .... reserve.
    a. solar b. nature c. culture d. future

Language

(must / mustn't) - (should/ shouldn't)

1-must + mustn't (for necessity / obligation) التعبير عن الضرورة والإلزام

Affirmative إثبات

• تستخدم (must) بمعنى (يجب أن) للتعبير عن الضرورة والإلزام بفعل شيء.

فاعل + must + inf. مصدر الفعل

Ex. We must save our planet.

Negative النفي

• تستخدم (mustn't) بمعنى (يجب ألا) للتعبير عن النهي/التحريم.

فاعل + must not (mustn't) + inf. مصدر الفعل

Ex. We mustn't throw rubbish into the ocean.



Question السؤال

- للسؤال عن الضرورة/الالزام بـ «هل...؟» نستخدم:

Must (not) + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل....?

Ex. Must I go out now?
- Yes, you must. - No, you mustn't.

- للسؤال بكلمة استفهام نستخدم:

كلمة استفهام + must (not) + فاعل + inf.....?

Ex. What must we do when we visit a nature reserve?
- We must take all our rubbish.

Ex. What mustn't I do when I drive?
- I mustn't use the mobile.

2- should / shouldn't (for advice) التعبير عن النصيحة

Affirmative إثبات

- تستخدم (should) للنصيحة بفعل شيء.

فاعل + should + inf.

Ex. We should recycle plastic.

Negative النفي

- تستخدم should not (shouldn't) للنصيحة بعدم فعل شيء.

فاعل + should not (shouldn't) + inf.

Ex. We shouldn't use plastic bags just once. We should recycle them.

Question السؤال

- للسؤال عن النصيحة بـ «هل...؟» نستخدم:

Should + فاعل + inf. ....?

Ex. Should I write my name on my paper?
- Yes, you should. - No, you shouldn't.

- للسؤال بكلمة استفهام نستخدم:

كلمة استفهام + should + فاعل + inf.....?

Ex. When should I start to revise for the exam?
- Three days before it.

Notes

- لا تستخدم (to) قبل مصدر الفعل الذى يأتى بعد must / mustn't - should / shouldn't
واعلم أن المصدر من (am, is, are) هو (be) ومن (have, has) هو (have)

Ex. You must be careful when you cross the road.

Ex. He must have his calculator with him.

- فى النفى ضع not (n't) مباشرة بعد (must / should) وليس بعد الفعل.

must not (mustn't) go. ✔ ~~must go not~~ ✘

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. You .... play games in the road.
   a. must b. mustn't c. has to d. should
2. Children .... do their homework every day.
   a. must b. mustn't c. should d. wouldn't
3. When you work together, you .... share your ideas with others. WB
   a. mustn't b. should c. shouldn't d. can't
4. When you cross a road, first you .... find a safe place to cross. WB
   a. can't b. shouldn't c. must d. mustn't
5. There is a good view of the lake from here. You .... take a photo. SB
   a. should b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. can't
6. You .... walk in the mountain when the weather is bad. It's dangerous. SB
   a. should b. must c. can d. mustn't
7. You .... look left and right when you cross a road. SB
   a. mustn't b. can't c. must d. shouldn't
8. The animals .... eat plastic. It is very bad for them. SB
   a. should b. mustn't c. must d. can
9. You .... study hard to pass the exams.
   a. should b. shouldn't c. mustn't d. won't
10. We .... walk and write a text at the same time.
    a. must b. mustn't c. should d. have
11. You .... run across the road. You must walk.
    a. must b. mustn't c. do d. don't

Bit by Bit Exercises

12. You .... shout in the classroom.
    a. must b. can c. should d. mustn't
13. You .... park here. It isn't safe.
    a. should b. shouldn't c. must d. can
14. We .... throw away rubbish in rivers.
    a. mustn't b. should c. can d. must
15. We .... try to recycle paper and glass.
    a. shouldn't b. can't c. mustn't d. must

16. You .... feed the animals in the nature reserve. That's bad for them.
    a. should b. must c. mustn't d. not
17. You .... follow your parents' advice.
    a. must b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. can't
18. A good teacher .... listen to his/her students' ideas.
    a. can't b. shouldn't c. mustn't d. must
19. What should I .... to get the full mark?
    a. does b. did c. do d. doing

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB / WB &Exams

1. You .... (must) be late for school.
2. You .... (must) run across the road. It's not safe.
3. We must .... (saved) our planet.
4. Animals .... (must) eat plastic. It is very bad for them.
5. Students .... (should) waste their time.

Bit by Bit Exams

6. You should .... studying) hard.
7. You .... (must) cross the road. Cars are coming very fast.
8. It's an interesting story. You .... (shouldn't) read it.
9. What .... (I should) do if I feel tired?
10. You .... (shouldn't) eat healthy food.
11. We mustn't .... (to make) noise during our lessons.
12. You .... (should) eat too many sweets. Sweets are unhealthy.

Speaking

1 Talking about rules — الحديث عن القواعد



Questions	Answers
- What must I do when I cross a road? ماذا يجب أن أفعل عندما أعبر الطريق؟	- You must look left and right. يجب أن تنظر يمينًا ويسارًا.
- What mustn't we do on roads? ماذا يجب ألا نفعل على الطريق؟	- We mustn't play games on roads. يجب ألا نلعب على الطريق.

2 Asking and answering about nature reserves

السؤال والإجابة عن المحميات الطبيعية

Questions	Answers
- What is a nature reserve? ما هى المحمية الطبيعية؟	- It is an area of land for the purpose of preserving some animals and plants. هى قطعة من الارض بغرض الحفاظ على بعض النباتات و الحيوانات.
- Why do you think we have a nature reserve? لماذا تعتقد ان لدينا محمية طبيعية؟	- To save and keep many important birds, animals and plants there. للحفاظ على العديد من الطيور و الحيوانات و النباتات المهمة.
- What must we do in a nature reserve? ماذا يجب ان نفعل فى المحمية الطبيعية؟	- We mustn't throw rubbish there. يجب ألا نلقى بالقمامة هناك. - We mustn't walk into homes of animals. يجب ألا ندخل بيوت الحيوانات.

General Exercises on Lessons 2 - 3



1 Complete the following dialogue:

A visit to the nature reserve.

Teacher : We're visiting a nature reserve today.

Student : 1 ....?

Teacher : It is a place used to protect nature, animals and plants.

Student : 2 ....?

Teacher : You mustn't make much noise!

Student : What else mustn't we do?

Teacher : 3 ....

Student : What must we do before we leave it?

Teacher : 4 ....

Student : 5 .... We must leave it clean.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. We should save our ....
   a. environment b. picnic c. crocodile d. rubbish
2. It's sometimes hard to .... a decision.
   a. play b. make c. do d. throw

3. Animals and birds live safely in .... reserves.
   a. future b. nature c. nation d. culture
4. It's a dangerous dog, walk .... from it.
   a. way b. alone c. away d. near
5. .... line is a thin line used to catch a fish.
   a. Diving b. Fishing c. Swimming d. Zip
6. You can usually .... paper, so don't throw it away. 2023 دمياط
   a. do b. give c. recycle d. take

Language

7. We .... play football in the roads. 2023 الإسكندرية
   a. must b. should c. mustn't d. have to
8. Students .... study well for the exam.
   a. mustn't b. shouldn't c. must d. won't
9. I .... respect my classmates.
   a. shouldn't b. won't c. mustn't d. should
10. Karim .... stop shouting. His little sister is asleep.
   a. must b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. can't

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We .... (must) shout in the library.
2. People .... (shouldn't) recycle plastic.
3. Drivers .... (mustn't) be careful.
4. This film is funny. You.............. (shouldn't) watch it.

4 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words: SB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

To your friend George about ways to help the environment.
- Your name is Fadi and your email address is fadi666@gmailcom. Your friend's email address is george55@yahoo.com.

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإليكتروني:
- *Must we help our environment?*
- *In what ways can we do that?*
- *Does planting trees help the environment?*
- *Can you use bikes? Is that useful for the environment?*
- *What must / mustn't we do with rubbish?*

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- *We must do our best to ....*
- *We can plant ....*
- *We can use .... instead of cars and buses.*
- *We mustn't throw away rubbish in ....*
- *We should keep these places ....*
- *We must look after ....*

Lessons 4, 5, & 6

SB pages 50-53 WB pages 103-106



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

gloves	جوانتي	headphones	سماعات الرأس
pot	إناء / وعاء	illness	مرض
soil	تربة (زراعية)	seed	بذرة
ground	أرض	fisherman (pl . fishermen)	صياد سمك / صيادون
weak	ضعيف	worried	قلق
skeleton	هيكل عظمي	respected	محترم
hole	حفرة / ثقب	respect (ed)	يحترم
rubbish	قمامة	cover (ed)	يغطي
rubbish bags	أكياس قمامة		

Vocabulary

nut	مكسرات	brave	شجاع
local	محلى	tiny	صغير جدًا
radio station	محطة إذاعية	leaflet	منشور/كتيب
empty space	مساحة خالية	increase (d)	يزداد/يزيد
advertisement	إعلان	conclude (d)	يختتم/ينهي
How deep......?	كم عمق........؟	press (ed)	يضغط
bone	عظمة	water (ed)	يروى «بالماء»
stones	أحجار/حصى	pull (ed)	يسحب/يشد
West Beach	الشاطئ الغربي	plant (ed)	يزرع
helmet	خوذة	fill (ed)	يملأ/يمتلئ
position	موضوع/مكان	boil (ed)	يغلي (للسوائل)
snack	وجبة خفيفة		

Expressions & Prepositions

keep the air healthy	يحافظ على نقاء الهواء	at the bottom of	في قاع
keep water clean	يحافظ على نظافة الماء	at the end of	في نهاية (شئ)
feel worried	يشعر بالقلق	fill ... with	يملأ ... بـ
feel weak	يشعر بالضعف	cover ...with	يغطي ... بـ
feel well	يشعر أنه بخير	take... out	ينتزع

more than ever	اكثر من ذى قبل	dangerous for	خطير على
get well	يتعافى/يتحسن	pull.. to / into	يسحب.. إلى داخل....
make a phone call	يجري مكالمة هاتفية	to conclude = in conclusion	في الختام

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
catch	يصطاد/يمسك	caught	caught
hide	يخفى/يختفى	hid	hidden
grow	يزرع/ينمو	grew	grown

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
local	محلي	national	international	عالمي/دولي
tiny	ضئيل	very small	huge	ضخم
worried	قَلق	anxious	calm	هادئ
cover	يغطي	coat	uncover	يكشف

Definitions

ground	أرض	the top part of the Earth, where we stand
soil	تربة (زراعية)	what plants usually grow in
hole	حفرة/ثقب	an empty space[1] in something
cover	يغطي	put something over something else to protect or hide[2] it
seed	بذرة	a small, hard thing made by plants, which grows into new plants
pot	إناء	a small container[3]
fisherman	صياد سمك	a man who catches fish
respect	يحترم	show care and admiration[4] for someone
skeleton	هيكل عظمى	the bones of the body
rubbish	قمامة	things we do not need

١٢-مساحة خالية
١٣- يخفى
١٤-إناء/وعاء
١٥-إعجاب

Language Notes

1) Nouns that go with "catch"

catch a fish	يصطاد سمكة	catch a plane	يلحق بطائرة
catch an illness	يصاب بمرض	catch a train / bus	يلحق بقطار / اتوبيس
catch a thief	يمسك بلص	catch a ball	يمسك بكرة

2) Compound Nouns

- الاسم المركب هو اسم يتركب من كلمتين أو أكثر.
- أحيانا يكون الاسم متصل وأحيانا أخرى يكون منفصل مثل:

coral reefs	شعب مرجانية	nature reserve	محمية طبيعية
fishing line	صنارة صيد	recycled plastic	بلاستيك معاد تدويره
jellyfish	قنديل البحر		

3) • too much • too many

- **too much** كثير جدًا للكمية (يأتي بعدها اسم لا يُعد)

Ex. Don't give the plant too much water.

- **too many** كثير جدًا للعدد (يأتي بعدها اسم يُعد)

Ex. It's bad to eat too many sweets.

4) • beach • coast

- **beach** شاطئ/بلاج (لغرض الاستحمام).

Ex. We enjoy the beach in Alex.

- **coast** ساحل (بحر/محيط).

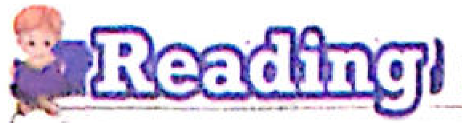
ارض ملاصقة لمياه البحر (غير مخصص للاستحمام)

Ex. Hurghada is on the coast of the Red Sea.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I went to the lake to catch .... It's my hobby.
   a. a thief b. fish c. illness d. the bus
2. My little sister put too .... salt on her food.
   a. a lot of b. many c. much d. more
3. Let's go to the .... to swim.
   a. beach b. mountain c. desert d. soil



SB Page (50)





Plant a tree today!

Do you want to help save our planet?
Well, plant a tree! Trees help to keep our air healthy[1]. You can plant a nut[2] or the seed[3] of a fruit.

1- First, wash the plastic pot[4] and dry it.
2- Second, put some small stones at the bottom of[5] the pot.
3- Then, fill the pot with soil[6].
4- Next, press[7] your finger into the soil and make a small hole[8] about 2 cm deep[9].
5- Plant the seed in the hole and cover[10] it with soil.
6- Finally, put the pot outside in a warm place.
7- Water[11] it every day. (Don't give it too much water.)
8- When the tree grows too big for the pot, plant it in a bigger pot, or in the ground.

١- صحي
٢- حبة مكسرات
٣- بذرة
٤- إناء بلاستيك
٥- في قاع
٦- تربة (زراعية)
٧- اضغط
٨- حفرة
٩- على عمق ٢سم
١٠- يغطي
١١- يروى/يسقى

SB Page (51)

The Old Man and the Sea[1]

by Ernest Hemingway



Santiago was an old fisherman[2]. He felt worried because the last time he caught a fish was 84 days ago. On the 85th day, he felt a big fish at the end of his fishing line. But the fish was stronger than Santiago. It took two days for him to finally pull it to the boat. Then the sharks came. When Santiago returned to[3] his home on the beach[4], he had no fish, only a skeleton[5]. He felt weak[6] and slept for a long time. But the other fishermen saw how big the fish was and knew that he was brave[7] to catch it. Santiago lost the fish, but the other fishermen now respected[8] him more than ever.

١- العجوز والبحر
٢- صياد سمك
٣- عاد إلى
٤- على الشاطئ
٥- هيكل عظمى
٦- شعر بالضعف
٧- شجاع
٨- احترموا

WB Page (104)

When Santiago woke up, he saw the boy Manolin. Santiago smiled. "We must fish together next time," said Manolin. "Yes, but I don't feel well today," said Santiago. "You must get well fast because there is so much I can learn from you," said Manolin.

SB Page (52)

We must clean our beach!




1- Where and when is the event[1]?

- West Beach
- Saturday afternoon 2 pm - 5 pm

2- What do we need?

- rubbish bags[2], gloves[3] (to protect your hands), a bottle of water to drink and snacks[4] to eat!
- some people like listening to music on their headphones[5]!

3- Why must we clean the beaches?

- 100,000 pieces of plastic rubbish on this beach
- one plastic bottle can stay in our environment for up to 1,000 years (dangerous for animals and fish)

4- How can we tell people about our event?

- posters[6] (around school and town)
- emails to local groups[7]
- local radio station[8] or newspaper

5- What should we do with the rubbish we find?

- recycle it
- find a new use[9] for it
- make art with it

١- حدث
٢- أكياس قمامة
٣- قفازات
٤- وجبات خفيفة
٥- سماعات رأس
٦- ملصقات
٧- مجموعات محلية
٨- محطة الإذاعة المحلية
٩- استخدام

WB Page (103)

How to grow[1] a tomato plant

- **First**, find a sunny place[2] in the garden.
- **Second**, look at the ground. It must not have lots of stones[3] or other plants in it.
- **Then**, make a small hole in the soil.
- **Next**, put some water in the hole so it is not too dry[4].
- **Finally**, put the seed in the hole and cover it with soil.

١- يزرع
٢- مكان مشمس
٣- حجارة/حصى
٤- جاف

WB Page (103)

Lama : I'd like to grow a tomato plant. What should I do first?

Mariam : First, find a sunny place in the garden.

Lama : Like this?

Mariam : Yes, that's right. Secondly, look at the ground. It mustn't have lots of stones or other plants in it.

Lama	:	OK. What should I do after that?
Mariam	:	Then, make a small hole in the soil.
Lama	:	How deep must it be?
Mariam	:	About 2 cm. Next, put some water in the hole so it is not too dry.
Lama	:	Should I water it now?
Mariam	:	Yes, you should. Finally, put the seed in the hole and cover it with soil.

WB Page (105)

Match the headings with the conclusions to these three different texts.

a. Keeping water clean

1. To conclude, the sea gives us much more than a place to go swimming, so let's not make it dirty!

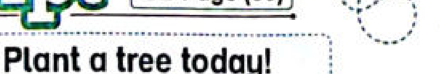
b. Think before you use plastic material

2. To conclude, we must remember how long plastic rubbish stays in our environment, and we must use different materials when we can.

c. The amazing Red Sea

3- In conclusion, the warm waters are home to everything from tiny jellyfish to very big sharks.





Plant a tree today!

Adult	:	Do you want to help save our planet? Well, plant a tree! Trees help to keep our air healthy. You can plant a nut or the seed of a fruit.
Child	:	What should I do first?
Adult	:	First, wash an empty plastic pot and dry it. Secondly, put some small stones at the bottom of the pot.
Child	:	Then what should I do?
Adult	:	Then, fill the pot with soil.
Child	:	Like this?
Adult	:	Yes, that's right! The next thing you do is, press your finger into the soil and make a small hole.
Child	:	How deep must it be?
Adult	:	It must be 2 centimetres deep. Now plant the seed in the hole and cover it with soil. Finally, put the pot outside in a warm place[1]. The seed needs sun and water to make it grow.

١- مكان دافئ

Child : Should I water it now?

٢- انتزعها

Adult : Yes, now and every day. But don't give it too much water. It's going to grow big. When it grows too big for the pot, take it out[2] of the soil and plant it in the ground. One day, when it is a big tree, you can say "I planted that"!

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. The top part of the Earth, where we stand is the .... (WB) غرب المنصورة 2023
   a. soil b. sky c. ground d. sea
2. Some people like listening to music on their .... (SB)
   a. headlines b. headmasters c. headaches d. headphones
3. Judy felt very .... when she was ill, but she is better now. (WB)
   a. weak b. strong c. happy d. active
4. To .... is to put something over something else to protect or hide it. (WB)
   a. dry b. plant c. cover d. water
5. My grandmother is 85 and knows a lot! We all .... what she says. (WB)
   a. hate b. respect c. dislike d. throw
6. Use .... to protect your hands. (SB)
   a. helmets b. headphones c. gloves d. curtains
7. Plant the seed in the .... and cover it with soil. (SB)
   a. oven b. whole c. panels d. hole
8. If I see .... on the ground, I throw it in the bin. (SB)
   a. drones b. towers c. rubbish d. storms
9. Ahmed's mother was .... when he didn't phone her. (WB)
   a. worried b. interesting c. funny d. excited
10. In the museum, we saw a .... of a very old animal. Its bones were very big. (WB)
    a. character b. hole c. seed d. skeleton
11. Our teacher is very clever and kind. We all .... him. سملوط 2023
    a. respect b. hate c. throw d. dislike
12. Plants grow in the .... البدرشين 2023
    a. local b. moon c. dirty d. soil

Bit by Bit Exercises

13. Trees don't grow well in the sandy .... here.
   a. oil b. sugar c. soil d. floor
14. I usually eat .... between meals.
   a. snacks b. seeds c. snakes d. socks
15. I have tomato .... to grow in the soil.
   a. pots b. holes c. nuts d. seeds
16. A clever .... caught this big fish.
   a. fisherman b. skeleton c. fishing line d. coral reef
17. Watch out! There's a .... in your way.
   a. hole b. ground c. hall d. goal
18. Hurry up or you won't be able to .... the train.
   a. cover b. leave c. catch d. pull
19. We shouldn't throw .... in the river.
   a. illness b. rubbish c. holes d. boats
20. There are too .... cars on the road today.
   a. much b. lots c. any d. many

Speaking

Asking for and giving instructions السؤال عن وإعطاء تعليمات

Asking for instructions	Giving instructions
1. What should I do to (plant a tree)? ماذا ينبغي أن أفعل لكى (أزرع شجرة)؟	- First, ... أولاً، - Second, ... ثانيًا، - Then, ... ثم، - Next, ... التالي، - Finally, ... أخيرًا،
2. Should I (water it now)? هل ينبغى على أن (أرويها الآن)؟	- Yes, you should. نعم، ينبغى عليك ذلك. - No, don't (give it too much water). لا، لا ينبغى أن (تعطيها ماء أكثر من اللازم).

General Exercises on Lessons 4,5 & 6



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hind is asking Ashraqat about growing tomatoes.

Hind : How can I plant tomatoes?

Ashraqat : ❶ .... The garden is a good place.

Hind : ❷ ....?

Ashraqat : Next, clean the place from the stones.

Hind : OK. ❸ ....?

Ashraqat : After that, you should make a hole.

Hind : How deep?

Ashraqat : ❹ .... Next, put the seed into the hole.

Hind : Should I water it?

Ashraqat : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. Farmers make holes in the soil to grow .... in.
   a. walls   b. seeds   c. goals   d. pots
2. Plants grow in a good .... WB
   a. floor   b. mail   c. sail   d. soil
3. I .... all my teachers.
   a. cover   b. respect   c. increase   d. fill
4. A .... is an empty space in something. WB
   a. hole   b. pole   c. ball   d. role
5. Hany should .... these plants every day.
   a. conclude   b. fill   c. water   d. fish
6. There is a dinosaur .... in the museum.
   a. skeleton   b. advertisement   c. headphone   d. helmet
7. You should fill the hole .... soil and water it.
   a. of   b. with   c. in   d. at

3 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"How to keep our beaches clean"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **Where do people spend their summer holidays?**
- **Why should they keep the beaches clean?**
- **What should people do with rubbish?**
- **What mustn't people do?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **People spend their summer holidays on ....**
- **They should keep the beaches clean because ....**
- **They mustn't .... things away.**

Unit 11

Review

Key Vocabulary

coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية	tail	ذيل	rubbish	قمامة
jellyfish	قنديل البحر	shell	صدفة/قوقعة	rubbish bags	أكياس قمامة
octopus	أخطبوط	environment	بيئة	seed	بذرة
shark	سمكة القرش	planet	كوكب	fisherman	صياد سمك
stingray	سمك الرّاى اللاسع	fishing line	صنارة صيد	worried	قلق
turtle	سلحفاة مائية	nature reserve	محمية طبيعية	respected	مُحترم
whale	حوت	pot	إناء / وعاء	throw away	يرمى/يتخلص من
flat	مسطح/مستو	soil	تربة (زراعية)	recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير
ocean	محيط	ground	أرض	respect (ed)	يحترم
poisonous	سام	weak	ضعيف	cover (ed)	يغطي
danger	خطر	skeleton	هيكل عظمي		
sting	يلدغ/يلسع	hole	حفرة / ثقب		

Language



The zero conditional الحالة الصفرية للجمل الشرطية

If / When → present simple, → present simple
عندما/إذا مضارع بسيط مضارع بسيط

- يمكن أن تأتى if فى وسط الجملة.

present simple → if / when → present simple

• تستخدم الحالة الصفرية للجمل الشرطية للتعبير عن:

١- فعل يحدث دائماً عند حدوث فعل آخر.

Ex. If it rains, we become wet. = We become wet if it rains.

٢- حدث في المضارع وما يترتب عليه من نتائج.

Ex. If / When I'm ill, I see a doctor. = I see a doctor if / when I'm ill.

٣- للتعبير عن حقائق (ترتبط بالطبيعة/والفيزياء والفلك....)

Ex. If you water plants, they grow.

٤- للتعبير عن المواقف التلقائية.

Ex. If I have time, I read a book.



١- للسؤال بمعنى (ماذا سيحدث إذا......) في الحالة الصفرية نستخدم:

What happens if / when + فاعل + فعل في المضارع البسيط .... ?

Ex. A: What happens if / when we freeze water?

B: It becomes ice.

② must + mustn't (for necessity / obligation)

• تستخدم (must) بمعنى (يجب أن) للتعبير عن الضرورة والإلزام بفعل شيء.

Ex. We must follow traffic rules.

• تستخدم (mustn't) بمعنى (يجب ألا) للتعبير عن النهي/التحريم.

Ex. We mustn't smoke in hospitals.

• للسؤال عن الضرورة/الالزام بـ «هل...؟» نستخدم:

Must (not) + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل....?

Ex. Must I answer this question?

- Yes, you must. - No, you mustn't.

• للسؤال بكلمة استفهام نستخدم:

كلمة استفهام + must (not) + فاعل + inf.مصدر الفعل ....?

Ex. What must we do when we go to the library?

Ex. What mustn't I do when I visit a museum?

③ should / shouldn't (for advice)

• تستخدم (should) للنصيحة بفعل شيء.

فاعل + should + inf.

Ex. We should plant more trees.

• تستخدم should not (shouldn't) للنصيحة بعدم فعل شيء.

فاعل + should not (shouldn't) + inf.

Ex. We shouldn't leave children alone at home.

• للسؤال عن النصيحة بـ «هل...؟» نستخدم:

Should + فاعل + inf. ....?

Ex. Should I make my bed every morning?

- Yes, you should. - No, you shouldn't.

• للسؤال بكلمة استفهام نستخدم:

كلمة استفهام + should + فاعل + inf....?

Ex. When should I get up?

- Early in the morning.



1) Describing a sea animal
وصف حيوان بحري

1. It can swim (fast)
2. It has got (eight) legs.
3. It lives in (oceans).
4. The (shark) is very dangerous.
5. The (whale) is very big.
6. A (stingray) is a big, flat fish.

2) Talking about rules
الحديث عن القواعد

Questions	Answers
- What must I do when I cross a rood?	- You must look left and right.
- What mustn't we do on roads?	- We mustn't play games on roads.

3) Asking and answering about nature reserves
السؤال والإجابة عن المحميات الطبيعية

Questions	Answers
- What is a nature reserve?	- It is an area of land where animals and plants are safe.
- Why do you think we have a nature reserve?	- To save and keep many important birds, animals and plants there.
- What must/mustn't we do in a nature reserve?	- We must take away rubbish. - We mustn't make a lot of noise. - We mustn't walk into homes of animals.

4) Asking for and giving instructions
السؤال عن وإعطاء تعليمات

Asking for instructions	Giving instructions
1. What should I do to (plant a tree)?	- First, --------- - Second, --------- - Then, --------- - Next, --------- - Finally, ---------
2. Should I (water it now)?	- Yes, you should. - No, don't (give it too much water).

General Exercises on Unit 11

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Israa is reading "The Old Man and the Sea."

Sama : What are you reading, Israa?

Israa : ❶ .... You must read it.

Sama : ❷ ....?

Israa : It's about an old man who caught a big fish.

Sama : ❸ ....?

Israa : It is called "The Old Man and the Sea."

Sama : Is reading interesting?

Israa : ❹ ....

Sama : Can I borrow this story?

Israa : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. A stingray is a big, ... fish. **SB**
   a. empty b. flat c. plastic d. warm
2. If something is ...., it can make you very ill or kill you. **SB**
   a. poisonous b. tired c. funny d. noisy
3. A lot of .... catch fish from the Red Sea. **WB**
   a. teachers b. nurses c. fishermen d. engineers
4. A .... is a small, hard thing which grows into new plants. **WB**
   a. seed b. pot c. stone d. soil
5. We use fishing .... to catch fish.
   a. pipes b. bottles c. lines d. jackets
6. Alexandria is .... for its lovely beaches.
   a. sorry b. noisy c. tired d. famous
7. Tourists go .... to see the beautiful fish and coral reefs.
   a. diving b. driving c. riding d. running

8. My dog has a long ....
   a. tale b. tail c. team d. tour

9. The .... is the biggest and heaviest sea animal.
   a. shark b. turtle c. whale d. stingray

Language

10. When I ...., I make my bed. WB
    a. gets up b. got up c. getting up d. get up

11. .... we hear something funny, we all laugh. SB
    a. What b. Who c. Whose d. When

12. If you touch a jellyfish, it .... you. SB
    a. sting b. stings c. stung d. stinging

13. The octopus swims away fast .... it's in danger. SB
    a. why b. what c. how d. when

14. What .... if we drink dirty water?
    a. happens b. happened c. to happen d. happening

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If I .... (woke) up late, I go to school late.
2. I always .... (laughed) when I watch that film. WB
3. When my father is at home, we .... (kept) calm.
4. If people .... (didn't) eat well, they become weak.

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

[اسحاب عينة في آخر الوحدة]

"A nature reserve you visited"

....
....
....
....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- When did you visit the nature reserve?
- What was it called?
- What did you enjoy watching there?
- Did you go diving?
- What didn't you do while diving?
- What time did you leave the nature reserve?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Last week, my friends and I decided to visit .... reserve.
- We enjoyed watching ....
- My friends decided to ....
- They wanted to see ....
- When we dived, we didn't ....
- We were really careful because ....

Unit 11

Al Azhar Test





A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Ras Mohammed .... is famous for its birds and animals.
   a. park b. reserve c. zoo d. museum
2. Many people go diving in the .... to see the beautiful fish and turtles.
   a. lake b. fishing line c. pool d. coral reefs

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Khaled : What are you reading?
Waleed : I'm reading a book about sea animals.
Khaled : What's the most dangerous sea animal?
Waleed : 1 ....
Khaled : 2 ....?
Waleed : The sea turtle uses its hard shell to protect itself.
Khaled : 3 ....?
Waleed : An octopus has eight legs.

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If water is 100°c, it ....
   a. boiling b. boil c. boiled d. boils
2. We should .... of rubbish by putting them in rubbish bins.
   a. get rid b. run away c. jump out d. take care
3. Nature .... protect a lot of birds and animals. إدارة الزمارق 2022
   a. resorts b. reserves c. preserves d. deserts
4. When you visit a garden, you .... pick flowers.
   a. must b. mustn't c. should d. have to

5. A/An .... is a big, flat fish and it lives in the coral reefs.

a. turtle b. octopus c. stingray d. shell

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Plastic is everywhere! We use it for many different things. The problem is, plastic stays in the environment for a very long time. Some of the plastic, people find on beaches is about 100 years old! We can <u>recycle</u> some plastic, but most of it goes into the ocean. Plastic is poisonous when animals eat it. Every year more than 100,000 sea animals and birds die from plastic. We must try to use other material, paper and glass for example - because these are easier to recycle. When we use a plastic shopping bag, we mustn't throw away these bags in rivers. Although it will take a long time to clean all the plastic rubbish, we mustn't stop trying to help our planet.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why is there a lot of plastic in the environment?

....

2. Which two materials are easier to recycle than plastic?

....

3. How many sea animals and birds die from plastic every year?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underline word "recycle" means ....

a. wash b. find out c. stay d. use again

5. The plastic, people find on beaches is about ....years old.

a. thousand b. ten c. hundred d. million

5 Reorder the following to make meaningful sentences:

1. stings - when - you - **The** - you - touch - jellyfish - it. ....
2. stop - to - mustn't - help - our - **We** - planet - trying! ....
3. we - do - in - must - a nature - **What** - reserve? ....
4. must - beaches - we - clean - **Why** - the? ....



6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Why it is important to recycle old materials"

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **How does recycling help the environment?**
- **Why is it important?**
- **Why are some materials dangerous?**
- **Can recycling save the Earth?**

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **Recycling helps** ....
- **It is important for** ....
- **Some materials can** ....
- **Recycling old materials brings a lot of money and** ....
- **Recycling can save** ....

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل بريد إليكتروني وردت بالوحدة

Ways to help the environment

To: george55@yahoo.com

From: fadi666@gmail.com

Subject: Ways to help the environment

Dear George,

How are you? We must do our best to help our environment. There are many ways to do that. We can plant trees. They give us clean air. We can use bikes instead of cars and buses. We mustn't throw away rubbish in rivers. We must recycle rubbish. Some people leave rubbish in parks and zoos. This is very dangerous because plastic is poisonous when animals eat it. We should keep these places clean. We must look after our environment.

Yours,

Fadi

How to keep our beaches clean

Most of us like to go to beaches in summer for holidays. We must all do what we can to keep our beaches clean. Some of us leave rubbish on beaches.

Some of the plastic people find on beaches, is about 100 years old!

We can recycle some plastic, but most of it goes into the ocean. Plastic is poisonous when animals eat it. Every year, a lot of sea animals and birds die from plastic. People shouldn't leave rubbish on beaches. They should take it with them or keep it in bags.

A nature reserve I visited

Last week, my friends and I decided to visit Ras Mohammed reserve. We arrived at it early in the morning. We enjoyed watching the wonderful birds and animals there. My friends decided to go diving in the coral reefs. They wanted to see the beautiful fish and turtles. We paid around LE 100. When we dived, we didn't touch the fish. We didn't give food to any of them. We were really careful because we knew that sharks lived there. We came to the beach safely. We left the reserve at about 7 pm. It was a nice day.

Why it's important to recycle old materials

(Al Azhar)

Recycling helps get rid of rubbish. It is important for the environment. Some materials stay in the environment for a very long time. They are sometimes poisonous. Recycling old materials brings a lot of money and helps make the environment cleaner and healthier.

A person I respect

My neighbour is a farmer. Everyone in our village likes and respects him. He is very polite. He is always helpful to everyone. He always helps poor people. He always gives them some of the plants that he grows. He has a farm. He gets up early in the morning. He goes to his farm. He works hard. He grows vegetables and fruits. On Fridays, he goes to the market to sell his plants. He always advises me on how to be a good farmer. I learn many useful things from him.

Unit 11 TEST





A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. The shark is a sea ....
   a. bird b. plant c. animal d. insect
2. The shark is very ....
   a. safe b. dangerous c. funny d. weak
3. The shark lives in ....
   a. oceans b. rivers c. pools d. jungles
4. New .... grow when a shark loses old ones.
   a. legs b. heads c. fins d. teeth

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Habiba is asking Mrs Sara about whales.

Habiba : Mrs Sara. What is this animal in the picture?

Mrs Sara : 1 ....

Habiba : Tell me about the whale.

Mrs Sara : 2 ....

Habiba : 3 ....?

Mrs Sara : It lives in oceans and seas.

Habiba : 4 ....?

Mrs Sara : Yes, it is dangerous.

Habiba : 5 ....

Mrs Sara : You're welcome.



C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Water covers about 70% of our world. There is water in seas, rivers, oceans and lakes. Many plants and animals live in the water. Lakes are small areas of water on land. The water in lakes is fresh. <u>They</u> fill in with river water, rain and springs.

Seas and oceans are large areas of salt water. Different kinds of animals and plants live there. Seas can also be very deep, sometimes miles deep! You can find whales, sharks, dolphins, stingrays and jellyfish in salt water. Water is very important for our life.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

   ----

2. What are lakes?

   ----

3. Do you think water is important? Why / Why not?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word **"They"** refers to ....

   a. plants b. lakes c. oceans d. seas

5. Water in seas and oceans is mixed with ....

   a. salt b. milk c. sugar d. oil

6. There are .... kinds of animals in salt water.

   a. the same b. small c. no d. different

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If water is 100°c, it .... **WB**

   a. boil b. boiling c. boils d. boiled

2. You .... walk along that dark street alone. It's not safe.

   a. must b. should c. doesn't d. mustn't

3. What .... do to get better marks in my next exams? **SB**

   a. should I b. I should c. was I d. I was

4. Fishermen usually use fishing .... to catch fish.
   a. queues b. rows c. lines d. circles
5. We can .... plastic, glass and paper.
   a. cycle b. recycle c. respect d. cook
6. When Soha .... tired, she gets some rest.
   a. feels b. feel c. felt d. to feel
7. Mum wears .... in the kitchen to listen to some music.
   a. gloves b. skirts c. shoes d. headphones
8. Hamdy is a clever .... He catches a lot of fish.
   a. fisherman b. teacher c. doctor d. farmer
9. We put things that we don't need in the .... bin.
   a. homework b. rubbish c. planet d. food
10. You need good .... to get strong plants.
   a. bones b. brains c. seeds d. hearts

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. People .... (mustn't) drink clean water.
2. If I .... (drank) much coffee, I don't sleep at night.
3. Why should we .... (recycled) materials?
4. When we read books, we .... (knew) a lot of information.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

[مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار]

WB

"A person you respect"

....

....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Who is the person you respect?
- What does he/she do?
- Why do you respect him/her?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- My neighbour is a/an ....
- Everyone in our village ....
- He/She is very ....
- He/She always helps ....
- He/She always gives them ....
- I learn many useful things from him/ her.

12
UNIT

My future

Objectives

Reading:

A interview with a marine biologist; a text about future plans; a text about traditional jobs in Africa; a text predicting the future

Writing:

A paragraph giving information about the future

Listening:

A description of a job; an interview with a marine biologist; people talking about their future plans

Speaking:

Describing and asking questions about jobs; talking about future times

Language:

Relative pronoun *who*, question tags; the first conditional

Life Skills:

Productivity: set clear goals



SB / WB Answers جميع أسئلة كتاب الطالب والتدريبات مجاب عنها في آخر الكتاب



Lesson 1

SB pages 54-55 WB page 107

Key Vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات

machine	آلة - ماكينة	meeting	اجتماع
engine	محرك (موتور)	design (ed)	يصمم (شيء)

Jobs

accountant	محاسب	pilot	طيار
computer programmer	مبرمج كمبيوتر	scientist	عالِم
photographer	مصور فوتوغرافى	writer	كاتب
architect	مهندس معمارى	businessman	رجل أعمال
engineer	مهندس	businesswoman	سيدة أعمال
dentist	طبيب أسنان	footballer	لاعب كرة قدم

Vocabulary

office	مكتب (مكان)	photograph	صورة فوتوغرافية
sum	مسألة حسابية/مبلغ من المال	wheelchair	كرسي متحرك
science	العلوم	voluntary work	عمل تطوعى
African countries	دول أفريقية	score (d)	يسجل/يحرز
traditional	تقليدى	study (ied)	يدرس
sick	مريض		

Verbs & Nouns

design	computer programmes	يصمم برامج كمبيوتر
	buildings	يصمم مبانى
	machines or engines	يصمم آلات أو محركات
write	books or articles	يكتب كتب أو مقالات
look after	people's teeth	يعتنى بأسنان المرضى
	sick people	يعتنى بالمرضى

take photographs	يلتقط صور	score goals	يحرز أهداف
do sums	يحل مسائل حسابية	do voluntary work	يقوم بعمل تطوعى
fly a plane	يطيّر (يقود) طائرة		

Expressions & Prepositions

I'd like to be...	...أريد أن أكون (أصبح)	on the phone	على الهاتف
live next door	يعيش بالمنزل المجاور	on TV	فى التليفزيون
work in an office	يعمل فى مكتب	good at	جيد فى
in a wheelchair	على كرسى متحرك	find out	يكشف/يعرف
work with money	يتعامل مع النقود		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
teach	يدرّس	taught	taught
fly	يطير	flew	flown
write	يكتب	wrote	written

Definitions

architect	مهندس معمارى	a person who designs buildings
businessman / **businesswoman**	رجل أعمال / سيدة أعمال	- a person who works in an office[1] and goes to meetings - a man or woman who works in business[2]
pilot	طيار	a person who flies a plane
computer programmer	مبرمج كمبيوتر	a person who writes computer programmes a person who tells a computer what to do
dentist	طبيب اسنان	a person who looks after[3] people's teeth
scientist	عالِم	a person who studies or works in science
engineer	مهندس	a person who designs or works with machines, engines and buildings
accountant	محاسب	a person who works with money and numbers
photographer	مصور فوتوغرافى	a person who takes[4] photographs for a job
writer	كاتب	a person who writes books or articles[5]
engine	محرك	a machine that makes something move
machine	آلة - ماكينة	an object, often electric, that can do jobs for us
meeting	اجتماع	a time when people who work together can talk about important things

١- مكتب
٢- عمل تجاري/شركة
٣- يعتني بـ
٤- يلتقط
٥- مقالات

Audioscript

SB Page (54)





Narrator : 1

Male : He looks after[1] people's teeth. He's a dentist[2].

Narrator : 2

Male : She studies science. She's a scientist[3].

Narrator : 3

Male : He's a person who designs machines[4]. He's an engineer[5].

Narrator : 4

Male : She works with[6] numbers. She finds out how much money a business[7] gets. She's an accountant[8].

Narrator : 5

Male : He takes photos[9]. He's a photographer[10].

Narrator : 6

Male : She works in an office and goes to meetings[11]. She's a businesswoman[12].

Narrator : 7

Male : He writes computer programs. He's a computer programmer[13].

Narrator : 8

Male : She writes books or articles. She's a writer[14].

Narrator : 9

Male : She designs buildings. She's an architect[15].

١- يعتني بـ
٢- طبيب أسنان
٣- عالِمة
٤- يصمم ماكينات
٥- مهندس
٦- تتعامل مع
٧- عمل تجاري / شركة
٨- محاسبة
٩- يلتقط صور
١٠- مصور فوتوغرافي
١١- اجتماعات
١٢- سيدة أعمال
١٣- مبرمج كمبيوتر
١٤- كاتبة
١٥- مهندسة معمارية

SB Page (55)

Which job is Randa talking about?

Randa : It's an interesting[1] job, but it isn't an easy job. You usually work in an office[2]. You have to do a lot of sums[3]. I'm good at maths, so I'd like to do this job.

١- شيق
٢- مكتب
٣- مسائل حسابية



SB Page (55)

My uncle has got a very interesting job. He's an engineer. An engineer is a person who designs machines and engines[1]. My uncle designs engines for planes. I'd like to be an engineer one day[2]! My aunt is a businesswoman. That's an interesting job, too. A businesswoman and a businessman[3] are people who work in an office and go to meetings.

١- محركات
٢- يوماً ما
٣- رجل اعمال



Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. A/An .... works in science. WB
   a. engineer b. scientist c. architect d. writer
2. A/An .... looks after people's teeth. WB
   a. pilot b. accountant c. teacher d. dentist
3. My uncle is a/an .... who designs buildings. الاسماعيلية 2022 WB
   a. scientist b. architect c. dentist d. pilot
4. A/An .... works with money and numbers. المنوفية / إدارة ملوى 2022 WB
   a. accountant b. writer c. architect d. dentist
5. An engineer is the person who .... machines and engines. إدارة العجمى 2023 WB
   a. cooks b. acts c. designs d. looks
6. A/An .... is a man who works in business. WB
   a. businessman b. footballer c. scientist d. engineer
7. The car had no petrol. So, the .... stopped working. غرب المحلة 2022
   a. design b. quiz c. plan d. engine

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. Mr Khaled is a .... He writes books and articles.
   a. writer b. dentist c. pilot d. farmer
9. I had an important .... with my manager yesterday.
   a. wheelchair b. number c. building d. meeting

10. Mohamed Salah is a famous .... He scores a lot of goals.
    a. pilot b. footballer c. architect d. dentist
11. I fly planes. I'm a/an ....
    a. photographer b. pilot c. architect d. accountant
12. A/An .... is an object that works with electricity and can do jobs for us.
    a. machine b. article c. office d. meeting
13. My aunt is a .... She has a big company.
    a. science b. businessman
    c. businesswoman d. machine
14. My uncle works as a/an .... He takes a lot of photos.
    a. accountant b. engineer c. architect d. photographer
15. Salma is a .... She designs computer programmes.
    a. writer b. computer programmer
    d. scientist d. pilot



The relative pronoun (who) ضمير الوصل (who)

• تستخدم (who) لتحل محل فاعل عاقل بمعنى «الذي - التي - الذين - اللاتي» (وفي هذه الحالة يأتي بعدها فعل):

Ex. A businesswoman is a woman. She works in an office.

= A businesswoman is a woman who works in an office.

• تستخدم (who) لتحل محل مفعول عاقل (وفي هذه الحالة يأتي بعدها اسم أو ضمير):

Ex. Hossam is our neighbour. We met him in the market.

= Hossam is our neighbour who we met in the market.



١- تستخدم (which) لتشير إلى الأشياء والحيوانات (غير العاقل):

Ex. The story, which I read last night, was interesting.

٢- تستخدم (where) لتشير إلى المكان:

Ex. We visited Ali in Luxor, where he lived.

٣- تستخدم (when) لتشير إلى الزمن:

Ex. 1990 is the year when my parents got married.

٤- تستخدم (whose) لتشير إلى الملكية (يأتي بعدها اسم مملوك لاسم قبلها).

Ex. Mr Adel, whose factory makes clothes, is very rich.

Exercises on Language

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. This is the man .... car is stolen. SB
   a. who b. which c. whose d. when
2. A scientist is a person .... studies science. SB
   a. who b. which c. when d. where
3. A teacher is a person .... teaches students. SB
   a. when b. where c. which d. who
4. Hany is the boy .... lives next door to me. WB
   a. when b. who c. where d. which
5. My cousins are people .... call me every week on the phone. WB
   a. who b. which c. where d. when
6. That is the boy .... I talked to you about. بني سويف / إدارة سمسطا 2022
   a. when b. whose c. who d. which
7. Ali is a photographer .... takes photos. القليوبية / إدارة شبرا الخيمة 2022 SB
   a. which b. what c. where d. who

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. This is the scientist .... won the prize.
   a. which b. where c. who d. when
9. Friday is the day .... I meet my friends.
   a. whose b. which c. where d. when
10. I thanked the boy .... found my book.
    a. when b. who c. where d. which
11. This is the hospital .... I was born.
    a. when b. which c. where d. whose
12. I read a book about a man .... sailed around the world.
    a. who b. when c. which d. where
13. I met the player .... scored the goal.
    a. who b. when c. where d. which

14. The dentist .... looks after my teeth is nice.
    a. where b. which c. who d. when

15. Here's the present .... I bought yesterday.
    a. when b. which c. who d. where

16. That's the lady .... bag was stolen.
    a. which b. where c. when d. whose

17. That is the medal .... I won in the race.
    a. which b. whose c. where d. when

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The person............ (when) helps me a lot is my father.
2. Mr Omar is the teacher .... (whose) teaches us English.
3. That's the car .... (who) my dad bought.
4. I don't know the person .... (where) took my pen.
5. That is the school .... (which) I learn.
6. Mariam is the girl .... (where) can run fast.
7. A nurse is a person .... (which) looks after sick people.



Asking and answering questions about jobs السؤال والإجابة عن الوظائف

Questions	Answers
- Who is an architect? من هو المهندس المعمارى؟	- An architect is a person who designs buildings. المهندس المعمارى هو شخص يصمم المبانى.
- Who is a writer? من هو الكاتب؟	- A writer is a person who writes books or articles. الكاتب هو شخص يكتب الكتب أو المقالات.
- Who is a dentist? من هو طبيب الأسنان؟	- A dentist is a person who looks after people's teeth. طبيب الأسنان هو شخص يعتنى بأسنان المرضى.

General Exercises on Lesson 1



1 Complete the following dialogue:

A teacher asks his / her students about jobs.

Teacher : Who is an architect?
Samir : 1 ....
Teacher : 2 ....?
Ali : A teacher is a person who teaches students.
Teacher : What about a scientist?
Sameh : 3 ....
Teacher : 4 ....?
Munir : A dentist looks after people's teeth.
Teacher : Who is a pilot?
Kamal : 5 ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. This factory has a lot of good ....
   a. machines b. pilots c. footballers d. articles
2. A good player is a person who .... goals.
   a. designs b. scores c. flies d. writes
3. The car was out of petrol. So, the .... stopped working.
   a. design b. quiz c. plan d. engine
4. He works in a bank. He is an ....
   a. doctor b. pilot c. accountant d. dentist
5. He had an accident last month. Now he moves .... a wheelchair.
   a. in b. at c. with d. for

Language

6. The boy .... playing basketball is very tall.
   a. which b. where c. who d. who's
7. The mechanic repaired the engine .... was broken.
   a. which b. who c. whose d. when
8. Mr. Samir is the man .... lives next door.
   a. which b. when c. where d. who

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. I like the doctor .... (which) looks after me.
2. Do you know the man .... (who) car is in the park?
3. This is the shop .... (when) I bought my new mobile.
4. The woman .... (whose) is on TV now is a businesswoman.



Lesson 2



Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

marine biologist	عالم أحياء بحرية	result	نتيجة
laboratory	معمل	ocean	محيط
terrible	فظيع	test (ed) (n)	يختبر/اختبار

Vocabulary

especially	خصوصًا	The Atlantic	المحيط الاطلنطي
forest	غابة	French	اللغة الفرنسية/فرنسي الجنسية
dream job	وظيفة الأحلام	interview (ed)(n)	يجري مقابلة/مقابلة
around	حول	collect (ed)	يجمع
research	بحث (علمي)	record (ed)	يسجل
advice	نصيحة	volunteer (ed)(n)	يتطوع/متطوع
presenter	مقدم برامج	dive (d) (n)	يغوص/غطسة
jump high	يقفز لأعلى		

Expressions & Prepositions

What's your day like?	كيف يبدو يومك؟	at the moment	في هذه اللحظة
go diving = go for a dive	يذهب للغوص	on some days	في بعض الايام
do well	يؤدي جيداً (اختبار-عمل)	work on the computer	يعمل على الكمبيوتر
sound like a dream	يبدو كحلم	results of	نتائج لـ
do a test	يضع اختبار	volunteer for	يتطوع من أجل
do experiment	يقوم بعمل تجربة		
collect information	يجمع معلومات		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
spend	يقضي وقت/ينفق	spent	spent
think	يفكر/يعتقد	thought	thought
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
useless	بلا فائدة	unhelpful	useful	مفيد
terrible	سيء / فظيع	bad	wonderful	رائع
different	مختلف	various	similar	متشابه

Definitions

marine biologist	عالم أحياء مائية	a person who studies the ocean and the animals and plants in it
test	يختبر	check or do a scientific[1] experiment[2] on something
laboratory	معمل	a place where scientists work and do experiments

١- علمي
٢- تجربة

Language Notes

1) work

يعمل (لاحظ اختلاف المعنى مع حروف الجر):

- **work on** يعمل على تطوير (مشروع أو عمل مثلاً)

Ex. Hala is working on her computer skills.

- **work for - in** يعمل لدى / في (شركة مثلاً)

Ex. My father works for / in an international company.

- **work with** يتعامل مع

Ex. An accountant works with money.

2) 'd like

- **'d like to + inf. = want to + inf.** يريد أن ...

Ex. I'd like (want) to be an engineer.

3) spend

- **spend + وقت + V-ing.** يقضي وقتًا في ...

Ex. Marine biologists spend their time studying sea animals.

- **spend + money + on + n.** ينفق مالاً على ...

Ex. The government should spend more money on education.

4) • advice • advise

• **advice (n)** نصيحة (اسم مفرد لا يعد)

Ex. Teachers always give advice to their students.

• **advise (v)(d)** ينصح

Ex. Sherif advised me to sleep early.

5) • decide to • decide on

• **decide to + inf** يقرر أن

Ex. Rawan decided to visit Alexandria.

• **decide on + (n / v+ing)** يتخذ قرار بشأن/ يستقر على/ يختار

Ex. They decided on the new plan.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hany works .... a big company.
   a. next b. with c. by d. on
2. I'd like to .... a pilot.
   a. am b. be c. was d. being
3. Noha spends a lot of money .... clothes.
   a. at b. on c. in d. of
4. My father .... me about my future.
   a. recorded b. dived c. advised d. collected
5. Hala .... the new job.
   a. decided b. decided to c. decided by d. decided on

Audioscript

SB Page (56)



استمع إلى النصوص

Presenter: This week, we interviewed[1] Nesma El-Soory, a marine biologist[2]. So, Nesma, what's a marine biologist?

Nesma : A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean[3] and the plants and animals in it.

Presenter: Why did you decide to become a marine biologist?

Nesma : I'm good at science and I love the ocean. The animals in our oceans are really beautiful and interesting.

Presenter: What's your day like?

Nesma : In my job, every day is different! On some days, I go diving around coral reefs[4]. On other days, I test[5] water from the ocean in the laboratory*[6]. I also spend a lot of time on the computer, writing the results[7] of tests.

Presenter: What's the best thing about your job?

Nesma : My research[8] helps to protect the plants and animals in the ocean. That's the best thing. It's really important to look after our planet, isn't it?

Presenter: And what's the worst thing?

Nesma : There are bad things about every job, aren't there? Sometimes the weather[9] is terrible[10]. It isn't nice to go out in a boat for a dive when there's a storm[11]!

١- يجري حوار مع
٢- عالمة أحياء بحرية
٣- المحيط
٤- الشعاب المرجانية
٥- يفحص
٦- معمل
٧- نتائج
٨- بحث (علمي)
٩- الطقس
١٠- فظيع / سيء
١١- عاصفة



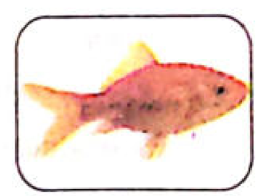
* laboratory — يُنطق المقطع الأخير (tory) مثل كلمة (tree).

SB Page (57)

Presenter : You visit some interesting places, don't you?

Nesma : Yes, I do! At the moment, I'm working in the Red Sea, near Neweiba[1]. Last year, I worked in Australia. And before that, I worked in Thailand[2].

Presenter : Wow! And what different kinds of animals do you study?



١- مدينة نويبع
٢- دولة تايلاند

Nesma	:	Well, some marine biologists study large animals, like whales and dolphins. But I study fish and smaller animals around coral reefs.
Presenter	:	It sounds like a dream job[3] to be a marine biologist, but it isn't an easy job, is it?
Nesma	:	No, it isn't. There's a lot of information to collect[4] and record[5]. It's hard work[6] and it takes a long time. I work about ten hours a day.
Presenter	:	What is your advice[7] to young people who want to become a marine biologist?
Nesma	:	Work hard[8] at school, especially[9] in science. You have to love science to be a marine biologist! And find out everything you can about the job. You can even volunteer[10] for dives[11].
Presenter	:	That sounds like great advice. Thank you, Nesma.
Nesma	:	You're welcome.

٣- وظيفة الأحلام
٤- يجمع
٥- يسجل
٦- عمل شاق
٧- نصيحة
٨- إعمل بجد
٩- وبخاصة
١٠- يتطوع
١١- عمليات الغوص

SB Page (57)

1. You want to be a nurse, don't you?
2. It isn't hot today, is it?
3. You won't forget to phone me, will you?
4. There were a lot of people at the meeting, weren't there?
5. You don't like fish, do you?

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. A/An ...., for example the Atlantic, is bigger than a sea. **WB**
   a. river b. lake c. pond d. ocean
2. The soup tasted .... No one liked it. القليوبية / إدارة القناطر الخيرية 2022
   a. interesting b. terrible c. good d. nice
3. Mariam got the .... of her test. She did very well! **WB**
   a. results b. sports c. jobs d. phones
4. The scientist did lots of tests in the .... **WB**
   a. bank b. zoo c. laboratory d. park

5. I love learning about sea life. I want to be a .... WB

a. marine biologist
b. computer programmer
c. dentist
d. businessman

6. To be .... is to be very bad. الإمام ناصر 2023

a. terrible
b. good
c. high
d. sad

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. It sounds like a .... job to be a pilot.

a. dream
b. cream
c. forest
d. marine

8. I went .... in the Red Sea and saw coral reefs.

a. driving
b. climbing
c. diving
d. singing

9. I'm good at working .... the computer.

a. for
b. to
c. at
d. on

10. The sea is calm today. I think of going .... a dive.

a. for
b. in
c. to
d. about

11. It's important to .... tap water before you drink it.

a. miss
b. test
c. collect
d. record

12. I want to .... for marine researches.

a. give
b. sleep
c. take
d. volunteer

13. I have an important .... with my manager today.

a. reef
b. dream
c. meeting
d. area

14. Living in space .... like a dream.

a. sounds
b. records
c. tests
d. sees

15. A/An .... biologist is a person who studies the ocean.

a. marine
b. laboratory
c. forest
d. interview

16. I .... well in my exams and got high marks.

a. did
b. took
c. made
d. gave

17. I couldn't go out yesterday. The weather was ....

a. fine
b. nice
c. terrible
d. good

18. A marine biologist's .... helps to protect life in the ocean.

a. ocean
b. game
c. whale
d. research



Question tag السؤال المذيل

• يستخدم السؤال المذيل للتأكد من معلومة ما أو للسؤال عن معلومة ما ويعنى (أليس كذلك؟).

- يأتى السؤال المذيل آخر الجملة ويتكون كالآتى:

..... , فعل مساعد أو ناقص ❶ + ضمير يعبر عن الفاعل ❷ ?

• إذا كانت الجملة مثبتة يكون السؤال المذيل منفى والعكس صحيح.

a positive statement جملة مثبتة + a negative question tag سؤال مذيل منفي

You are a student, aren't you?

يأتي ضمير الفاعل بعد الفعل المساعد

a negative statement جملة منفية + a positive question tag سؤال مذيل مثبت

Nada isn't a teacher, is she?

إذا كان الفاعل اسم يحول إلى ضمير فاعل

• لتحديد الفعل المستخدم مع الضمير فى السؤال المذيل يتبع الآتي:

- إذا كان بالجملة فعل مساعد / ناقص نستخدمه بعد تحويله من المثبت للمنفى والعكس:

am / is / are / was / were / can / could / will / would / should / may / might / must

Ex. It's really important to look after our planet, isn't it?

Ex. Maher can speak English, can't he?

- إذا لم يكن بالجملة المثبتة أحد الأفعال المساعدة / الناقصة السابقة نستخدم don't / doesn't / didn't:

, don't ....?	... مضارع بسيط بدون (s)
, doesn't .... ?	... مضارع بسيط + (s / es / ies)
, didn't .... ?	... ماضى بسيط

Ex. Ali plays well , doesn't he?

• أما إذا كانت الجملة منفية بـ (don't / doesn't / didn't) نستخدم صيغ الإثبات (do / does / did):

Ex. I don't play well, do I?



١- لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

not = n't / will not = won't / cannot = can't

Ex. Sameh won't come, will he?

Ex. Ola can't speak Chinese, can she?

٢- لاحظ أن الاختصار ('s) هو اختصار للفعل (is):

Ex. He's eating now, isn't he? **(is + v-ing)**

٣- تحول (I'm) فى السؤال المذيل إلى (aren't I) بينما (I am not) تحول إلى (am I):

Ex. I'm going to win the match, aren't I?

Ex. I'm not able to answer the test, am I?

٤- إذا جاءت (scarcely / seldom / hardly / few / little / never) فى الجملة تكون الجملة منفية ويكون السؤال المذيل مثبت:

Ex. Samir never travels to England, does he?

٥- تذكر أن كلمة (there) تظل كما هي في السؤال المذيل:

Ex. There is a big fish here, isn't there?

٦- عندما تستخدم الأفعال (did - does - do) و (had - has - have) كأفعال أساسية يحدد الفعل المساعد كمايلى:

(do - have	→	do)
(does - has	→	does)
(did - had	→	did)

Ex. They have breakfast early, don't they?

Ex. Ali has a nice car, doesn't he?

Ex. Omar had a walk yesterday, didn't he?

Ex. She does her homework every day, doesn't she?

Ex. Amal did the shopping yesterday, didn't she?

- إذا كان فعل الجملة (have/has got) نستخدم فى النفى (haven't/hasn't) وفى الإثبات (have/has).

She has got a car, hasn't she? not doesn't.

I haven't got a pencil, have I? not do.

٧- إذا أردنا وضع سؤال مذيل لجملة تحتوى على (too + صفة + to + inf) إنتبه للآتى:

Ex. She is <u>too slow to win</u> the race, isn't she?

Ex. He isn't <u>too kind to help</u> me, is he?

- نلاحظ أنه ليس هناك تغيير فى تكوين السؤال المذيل لجملة تحتوى على (too... to) أى أن السؤال المذيل لا يتأثر بالمعنى الذى تضمنه.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. Mona ---------- reading, doesn't she? ملوى 2022
   a. like b. liked c. likes d. doesn't like
2. He needs rest, ---------- he? SB
   a. doesn't b. aren't c. isn't d. don't
3. You ---------- like sweets, do you? WB
   a. didn't b. don't c. do d. doesn't
4. Ali can't speak English, ----------? WB
   a. can he b. he can c. he can't d. can't he
5. Ashraf doesn't play football, ----------? SB
   a. doesn't he b. he doesn't c. does he d. he does
6. He has got a wonderful car, ---------- he? البحيرة / إدارة رشيد 2022
   a. isn't b. doesn't c. didn't d. hasn't
7. Smoking can make you ill, ----------? SB
   a. it can't b. can't it c. it can d. can it
8. Hamza is a great teacher, ----------? دمياط 2022
   a. he isn't b. he is c. isn't he d. is he

Bit by Bit Exercises

9. They are nice girls, ----------?
   a. they are b. are they c. they aren't d. aren't they
10. It is important to do sports, ---------- it?
    a. is b. will c. isn't d. aren't
11. Hossam has a good car, ----------?
    a. has he b. doesn't he c. don't he d. isn't he
12. You live in Cairo, ----------?
    a. are you b. don't you c. didn't you d. do you
13. She plays the piano every day, ---------- she?
    a. wasn't b. didn't c. isn't d. doesn't
14. Too many sweets aren't healthy for you, ---------- they?
    a. are b. aren't c. isn't d. weren't

15. I'm good at English, ... I?

a. isn't　b. are　c. am　d. aren't

16. Ahmed doesn't know the answer to this questions, ...?

a. don't they　b. doesn't he　c. does he　d. he does

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB , WB & Exercises

1. She made a wonderful dress, ... (don't) she? القليوبية / إدارة شبرا الخيمة 2022
2. They .... (aren't) tall trees, aren't they? WB
3. Your brother can't play the guitar, can .... (she)? SB
4. She doesn't agree with you, ... (doesn't) she? دسوق 2022
5. Haidy and Engy speak English very well, ... (do) they? غرب المنصورة 2022

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. You don't like coffee, ... (are) you?
7. Our teachers are very helpful, ... (don't) they?
8. The weather .... (wasn't) fine, is it?

General Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The story is interesting, ... it? End of Term Practice كفر الشيخ / إدارة دسوق 2022

a. don't　b. doesn't　c. isn't　d. aren't

2. The .... of the match was amazing. Our team won 5-0.

a. answer　b. result　c. test　d. storm

3. This bag is too heavy to carry, ...?

a. does it　b. wasn't it　c. is it　d. isn't it

4. A/An .... is a place where scientists do experiments.

a. laboratory　b. ocean　c. forest　d. playground

5. The results .... my work are so great.

a. with　b. of　c. off　d. by

6. I didn't like this story. I thought it was really .... دمياط 2023

a. exciting　b. amazing　c. funny　d. terrible

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. It isn't hot today, ... (doesn't) it? الشرقية / إدارة ديرب نجم 2022
2. We can't finish work today, ... (can't) we?
3. She went to school on time, ... (did) she?
4. I .... (am not) ready for a test, aren't I?

3 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

- To your friend Sherif about your dream job. Your name is Nadi and your email address is nadi@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is sherif77@gmail.com.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الاليكتروني:

- **What is your dream job?**
- **What will you do / study?**
- **Will you be good at that job? Why?**
- **Why would you like to do that job?**
- **How will your work help others?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **I'd like to be a/an .... one day!**
- **A/An .... is a person who ....**
- **He/She studies ....**
- **I'm good at (science) and I love (the ocean).**
- **I'd like to study / work with .... because ....**
- **I think my work will help to ....**

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 58-60 WB pages 109-110

Key Vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

education	التعليم	adult	شخص بالغ
university	جامعة	culture	ثقافة/حضارة
apartment	شقة	colourful	زاهى الألوان/كثير الألوان
skills	مهارات	basket	سلة
workshop	ورشة	pottery	أوانى فخارية/فخار
jewellery	مجوهرات	earn (ed)	يكسب (مال)

Vocabulary

fully	تماما	ring	خاتم
tradition	تقليد/عُرف	necklace	قلادة (عقد)
joyful	مبهج/مبتهج	ability	قدرة
clay	صلصال/طين الفخار	art	رسم - فن
flying	الطيران	belief	اعتقاد
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	change (d)	تغيير/يتغير
countryside	الريف	practise (d)	يمارس
local businesses	شركات محلية	continue (d)	يستمر/يواصل
team	فريق		

Expressions & Prepositions

get	a job	يحصل على وظيفة	travel around the world	يسافر حول العالم
	money	يحصل على المال	live in	يعيش فى
	married	يتزوج	come back	يعود
make	a basket	يصنع سلة	learn to drive	يتعلم قيادة السيارات
	pottery	يصنع أوانى فخارية	take ... from	يأخذ ... من
	jewellery	يصنع مجوهرات	stay for	يقيم لمدة
pass	exams	يجتاز امتحانات	a plan for	خطة لـ
do	a job	يؤدي وظيفة	down the road	أسفل الطريق

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
win	يفوز	won	won
break	يكسر	broke	broken

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
earn	يكسب	get	lose	يفقد - يخسر
modern	حديث	new	old	قديم
pass	ينجح	succeed in	fail	يرسب

Definitions

earn	يكسب (مال)	get money from a job by working
jewellery	مجوهرات	- necklaces, rings, earrings[3] etc. often made of silver or gold - things such as necklaces and rings that you wear
adult	شخص بالغ	a fully grown person
workshop	ورشة	- a room or small building where people make or repair things - a place where people work to create things
skill	مهارة	the ability to do something well
culture	ثقافة/حضارة	the art, ideas, beliefs, etc. of a group of people
pottery	أواني فخارية	pots, dishes, etc. made from clay
apartment	شقة	a home that is a number of rooms in a building
get married	يتزوج	become husband and wife [2]
university	جامعة	a place where you study after you leave school, for a degree[3]
basket	سلة	something you can use to carry or hold things
colourful	كثير الألوان	with many different colours
education	تعليم	the knowledge[4] you get from studying something

١- حلق
٢- زوج وزوجة
٣- شهادة جامعية
٤- معرفة

Language Notes

1) • other • others • another

• **other** آخر (يأتي بعدها اسم جمع بعد) / شئ آخر من خيارين

Ex. Do you meet other boys at school?

Ex. I don't want this pen, I want the other one.

• **others** الآخرون (لا يأتي بعدها اسم)

Ex. Some tourists like to visit Luxor. Others like Sharm El-Sheikh.

• **another** آخر (يأتي بعدها اسم مفرد غالبًا) / شئ آخر من اكثر من اختيار

Ex. Mum gave me another apple.

2) see

• **see + مفعول + v-ing** يرى «وصف رؤية جزء من الحدث»

Ex. I saw a man carrying many bags.

• **see + مفعول + inf.** يرى «وصف رؤية الحدث ككل»

Ex. I saw Habiba leave a few minutes ago.

3) The suffix (-ful)

ا- يمكن تكوين بعض الصفات بإضافة اللاحقة (-ful) الى الاسماء:

colour	لون	→ colourful	زاهي / كثير الالوان	use	استخدام	→ useful	مفيد
help	مساعدة	→ helpful	متعاون	hope	امل	→ hopeful	متفاءل
joy	مرح	→ joyful	مبهج				

4) • pass • succeed

• **pass an / the exam** يجتاز / ينجح في امتحان / اختبار (بدون استخدام حروف جر)

Ex. She passed her exam.

• **succeed in** يجتاز / ينجح (يأتى بعده حرف الجر in في حالة وجود مفعول بالجملة)

Ex. Karim succeeded in his history exam.

(5) • so that • in order to


• جملة + so that + فاعل + can / could + inf — لكي (تعبر عن الغرض)

Ex. She studies hard so that she can pass her exam.

Ex. Khaled learnt how to drive so that he could buy a car.



وضع (can / could) حسب زمن الجملة الاولى في المضارع / الماضي.

• in order to + inf = to — لكي

Ex. They learn English in order to speak it well.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I don't like this shirt, can I choose .... one?
   a. other b. others c. another d. the another
2. I saw an old woman .... the building yesterday.
   a. entered b. entering c. enters d. to enter
3. Osman likes to help people. He is ....
   a. helpless b. help c. helpful d. unhelpful
4. Ali worked hard to .... his exam.
   a. succeed b. earn c. fail d. pass
5. I bought sunglasses so that I .... my eyes.
   a. could protect b. protecting c. can protect d. protects



SB Page (58)




استمع إلى النصوص

I don't know which job I want to do when I'm older, but I think that education[1] is very important[2]. I hope that I pass my exams[3] so that I can go to university. I'm going to work hard. If I go to university, I'll study maths. It's my best subject[4].

I don't like flying[5], so I don't want to travel around the world. I want to get a good job in Egypt. I want to teach maths. If I have enough money, I'll buy an apartment[6] near the Red Sea. I'll get married[7], but how many children will I have? I don't know!

١- التعليم
٢- هام
٣- يجتاز امتحان
٤- مادة دراسية
٥- الطيران
٦- شقة
٧- أتزوج

SB Page (60)

Traditional jobs in Africa

Today, many people in Africa work in modern offices, but traditional[1] jobs and skills[2] are still important.

1. People started making pottery[3] thousands of years ago in Egypt. Some people make pottery in workshops[4] or their own homes. If you go to Fayoum, you will see many people making pottery. There is also a school where children and adults[5] can learn this skill.
2. It is traditional to make jewellery[6] in Kenya[7]. You can see the colourful[8] jewellery in markets all over the country. Today, some local businesses[9] also use social media[10] and the internet to sell jewellery to people in different countries. It is an important skill because it continues an old tradition[11] and it helps local people to earn money[12].
3. It is an important part of Africa's culture[13] to make baskets[14]. It is also a way for women from small African villages to earn money. In Ghana[15], there are a lot of women who make and sell baskets. You can buy colourful baskets from Ghana in countries all over the world.

١- تقليدي
٢- مهارات
٣- أواني فخارية
٤- ورش
٥- أشخاص بالغون
٦- مجوهرات
٧- دولة كينيا
٨- زاهي / كثير الألوان
٩- شركات محلية
١٠- وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
١١- تقليد
١٢- يكسب مال
١٣- ثقافة
١٤- سلال
١٥- دولة غانا

Audioscript

SB Page (59)

Presenter : Rami, what do you want to do when you're older?

Rami : I really want to be an architect. I must go to university for that so I need to work hard. I won't pass my exams if I don't work hard! When I finish university,
I want to travel. I'd like to get a job[1] in another country, like South Africa[2]. But after a few years, I'll come back to Egypt[3]. I'd like to get married one day, but I don't want to live in Cairo. I prefer[4] the countryside!

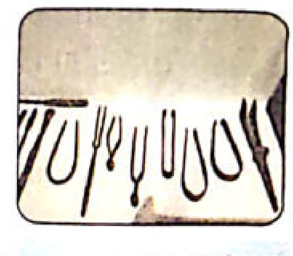
١- يحصل على وظيفة
٢- جنوب إفريقيا
٣- أعود لمصر
٤- يفضل

Presenter : Amira, what about you?

Amira : I want to go to university, so I hope I'll pass my exams! If I go to university, I'll study science. I'd love to be a scientist! It's a really interesting job. I'd like to get a job in Cairo and buy an apartment. I want to learn to drive so that I can visit my family. One day, I'd like to get married and have children.

Videoscript SB Page (60)





What job will you do when you are older? Will you be an engineer, who designs exciting new things? Will you be a doctor; who looks after sick people? Or will you be an architect, who designs new buildings and even cities?

These will all be important jobs in the future. But did you know that the ancient Egyptians did many of these jobs too? They helped to form[1] the world we know today.

Engineers in ancient Egypt designed and built a lot of things, like boats. These boats used the wind to help them travel to other parts of the world.

The ancient Egyptians also learned how to move water from one place to the next. This helped farmers who worked far from[2] the Nile. We use similar ideas to help farmers today.

A doctor was a very important person in Ancient Egypt. The doctor used a lot of different tools[3]. We can see some of them in this picture. The Ancient Egyptians also had dentists.

In the tenth century[4], an Egyptian doctor invented the first kind of syringe[5]. Today, doctors and scientists use syringes every day.

Imhotep[6] was the world's very first architect. He designed a new way of building pyramids using stone. He built the pyramid at Saqqara using this method[7]. He also used it to build the Great Pyramid at Giza. Imhotep also used stone to build columns[8]. These columns made buildings very strong. Before this, the ancient Egyptians used mud[9] and plants to build columns. These columns sometimes fell down[10]. But every job can be important. If you do your job well, you can help to make a better world.

١- يشكل/يكون
٢- بعيداً عن
٣- أدوات
٤- قرن (١٠٠ عام)
٥- حقنة (سرنجة)
٦- إمحتب (مهندس مصري قديم)
٧- طريقة
٨- أعمدة
٩- طين/طمي
١٠- يسقط

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. A/An .... is a fully grown person. WB

   a. child b. adult c. baby d. kid

2. A doctor can usually .... a lot of money. WB

   a. win b. buy c. earn d. do

3. You need a lot of .... to make a beautiful basket. WB

a. skills b. skeletons c. skirts d. squares

4. The shop had a lot of cups, plates and other .... WB

a. tradition b. education c. culture d. pottery

5. Tourists learn about the ancient Egyptian .... when they visit Egypt.

a. furniture b. culture c. future d. picture

6. A ...... is a room or small building where people make or repair things. WB

a. hospital b. market c. school d. workshop

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. We go to .... after we finish school.

a. university b. apartment c. desert d. space

8. You need to have a good plan to .... a job.

a. play b. buy c. do d. travel

9. She is wearing a lot of .... I think she's very rich.

a. skills b. jewellery c. pottery d. traditions

10. There are many oranges in the ....

a. ring b. cup c. ball d. basket

11. Sara got .... to a doctor. She is a good wife.

a. tired b. angry c. married d. passed

12. You should study your lessons well. .... is very important.

a. Education b. Tradition c. Diving d. Travelling

13. My uncle finally got a/an .... in a big company.

a. university b. apartment c. ocean d. job

14. I hope that I .... my exams so that I can go to university.

a. succeed b. forget c. pass d. fail

15. I'm saving money to buy a new .... with more rooms.

a. basket b. apartment c. shop d. car

16. I like the parrot because it's .... It has a lot of colours.

a. careful b. colourful c. helpful d. useless



The first conditional — الحالة الأولى للجمل الشرطية (إذا / لو If)

Form التكوين

• نستخدم (إذا/لو If) فى الحالة الأولى للجمل الشرطية بالصيغة الآتية:

If + فاعل + present simple, ⟶ فاعل + will ('ll)/ will not (won't) + inf.

- يمكن أن تأتى if فى وسط الجملة:

فاعل + will ('ll) will not (won't) + inf. → if + فاعل + present simple

Ex. If I go to university, I'll study maths.

= I'll study maths if I go to university.

Ex. If I don't work hard, I won't pass my exams.

= I won't pass my exams if I don't study hard.



• إذا بدأت الجملة الشرطية بـ (If) فإننا نضيف فاصلة (,) قبل الجملة الثانية، بينما لا نضيف الفاصلة إذا جاءت (if) فى وسط الجملة.

• لا نستخدم (will) فى الجملة الشرطية الاولى بعد (If) لكن نستخدمها فى الجملة الثانية.

Ex. If I ~~will~~ meet him, I'll thank him. (الجملة خطأ) (×××)

• يمكن حذف الفاعل فى الجملة الثانية باستخدام صيغة الأمر.

Ex. If you meet Ali, tell him to call me.

Usage الاستخدام

• نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتعبير عن حدث محتمل فى المستقبل.

Ex. If Ali hurries, he will catch the bus.

Question السؤال

Yes / No question — السؤال بـ (هل):

• فى حالة السؤال عن الحالة الأولى للجمل الشرطية نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

If + فاعل + present simple, ⟶ will + فاعل + inf....?

Will + فاعل + inf.... ⟶ if + فاعل + present simple...?

Ex. If you have a lot of money, will you buy a car?

Ex. Will you buy a car if you have a lot of money?

Yes, I will. No, I won't.

(Wh- question) **السؤال بـكلمة استفهام:**

• للسؤال بكلمة استفهام عن الحالة الأولى للجمل الشرطية تستخدم الصيغة التالية:

Question word + will + فاعل + inf. + if + فاعل + present simple?

A: What will you do if you earn much money?

B: I'll buy a car.

لاحظ:

يمكن استخدام (when) مثل (If) دون تغيير في المعنى:

Ex. When I am old, I will travel to London.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. If you want to see the doctor, you ...... to wait. WB
   a. will have   b. have will   c. will   d. won't
2. If I visit my grandparents, I .... them a present. SB
   a. took   b. will take   c. would take   d. takes
3. If I .... to university, I'll study to be an engineer. SB
   a. go   b. will go   c. went   d. goes
4. If you ...... well, you will not understand the lesson. WB
   a. listened   b. listening   c. listens   d. don't listen
5. I will help you with your homework ...... you find it difficult. WB
   a. although   b. if   c. and   d. so
6. If they don't buy tickets, they .... see the tennis match. SB
   a. aren't   b. would   c. not will   d. won't
7. Lara .... to drive if she stays in the city. She'll use the bus. SB
   a. won't learn   b. didn't learn   c. learns   d. learnt
8. If your sister .... hard, she will get low marks. بني سويف / إدارة بنا 2022
   a. studies   b. studied   c. don't study   d. doesn't study

Bit by Bit Exercises

9. What places .... if you go to Paris?
   a. you'll visit b. you visits c. visit d. will you visit
10. Mr Ahmed will teach the lesson if Mr Tarek .... ill.
   a. was b. wasn't c. is d. doesn't
11. .... you read this book if you have time?
   a. Were b. Was c. Will d. Are
12. If Hussein .... his bed, his mother will be angry.
   a. made b. makes c. don't make d. doesn't make
13. If you play well, ... you win the match?
   a. did b. will c. would d. does
14. I will buy a new shirt if I .... money.
   a. have b. will have c. had d. having
15. If I visit the Pyramids, I will .... some photos.
   a. taking b. taken c. take d. took
16. .... you visit the Karnak Temple if you go to Luxor?
   a. Did b. Will c. Would d. Have
17. I'll get married .... I get my degree.
   a. with b. so c. but d. if

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If it .... (was) very hot tomorrow, I will stay inside.
2. We will catch the bus if we .... (ran) fast.
3. If you .... (eats) too much chocolate cake, you'll get fat. القناطر الخيرية 2022
4. If I finish my homework before seven o'clock, I will .... (came) and visit you. WB
5. If we move to Cairo, my father .... (would) get a new job. WB
6. Hala will go to work if she .... (felt) well tomorrow.

Speaking

Talking about keeping traditional jobs الحديث عن الاحتفاظ بالوظائف التقليدية

Questions	Answers
-Why is it important to keep traditional jobs? لماذا من المهم أن نحافظ على المهن التقليدية؟	-We don't want people to forget traditional skills. لا نريد أن ينسى الناس المهارات التقليدية. -We want local people to earn money. نريد أن يكسب السكان المحليين المال.
- How can people use modern technology to help them? كيف يستطيع الناس أستخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة لتساعدهم؟	- They can use the internet / social media to sell things. يمكنهم استخدام الإنترنت/وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى لبيع الأشياء.
- Do you think these jobs will change in the future? Why / Why not? هل ستتغير هذه المهن فى المستقبل فى اعتقادك؟ لم/لم لا؟	- I think that people will use machines for some of these jobs in the future. أعتقد أن الناس سيستخدمون ماكينات لبعض من هذه المهن فى المستقبل.

General Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mahmoud and Munir are talking about jobs.

Mahmoud : What job will you do when you finish your education?

Munir : 1 ....

Mahmoud : Why do you want to make jewellery?

Munir : 2 ....

Mahmoud : 3 ....?

Munir : I plan to have my own workshop.

Mahmoud : 4 ....

Munir : I know, but I have the money needed.

Mahmoud : 5 ....?

Munir : Yes, sure. It needs skills.

② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If I study hard, I will .... a good job.
   a. got b. getting c. gets d. get
2. The teacher will not be happy if you .... your homework. WB
   a. don't do b. doing c. did d. didn't do
3. If you play tennis all day, you will .... tired. WB
   a. are b. is c. be d. not
4. We all want our children to get good ....
   a. basket b. education c. trouble d. loss
5. This film is allowed for .... only.
   a. adults b. animals c. arts d. skills
6. To .... money is to get money by working. العربية / إدارة المحلة 2022
   a. fly b. earn c. feed d. grow

③ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I will travel if I .... (got) enough money.
2. You will be fat if you .... (ate) too much rice.
3. .... (Would) Yasin join the team if he is fit?
4. I will be happy if I .... (studied) maths at university.

④ Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(أجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Traditional jobs"

....

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What is a traditional job?
- Are there many traditional jobs nowadays?
- How will traditional jobs change in the future?
- Will technology help traditional jobs?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- In the past, many people used to ....
- Technology will ....
- We should keep ....

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 61-62 WB pages 111-112

Key Vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات

app	تطبيق (على الهاتف أو الكمبيوتر)	plans	خطط
predictions	تنبؤات	cure (d) (n)	يعالج - علاج
illness	مرض	disappear (ed)	يختفي
the countryside	الريف		

Vocabulary

guitar	جيتار	sailor	بحار
video games	ألعاب الفيديو	grandchildren	أحفاد
hopeful	متفائل	engineering	الهندسة
map	خريطة	spelling	هجاء
completely	تماما	injury	إصابة
area	منطقة	introduction	مقدمة

Expressions & Prepositions

design a video game	يصمم لعبة فيديو	book tickets	يحجز تذاكر
design an app	يصمم تطبيق	What about later on?	وماذا عن القادم (المستقبل)؟
in 10 years' time	في خلال ١٠ سنوات	make our life easier	تجعل حياتنا أسهل
spend time with	يقضي وقت مع	revise for my test	أراجع من أجل اختباري
introduce a new idea	يقدم فكرة جديدة	make predictions for	يتنبأ بـ
find a cure for	يجد علاج لـ ...	plans for	خطط لـ
practise reading	يتدرب على القراءة		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
make	يصنع	made	made
begin	يبدأ	began	begun

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
illness	مرض	sickness	health	صحة
disappear	يختفي	hide	appear	يظهر
conclusion	خاتمة	end	start	بداية
exciting	مثير	interesting / not boring	boring	ممل

Definitions

app	تطبيق	- something on your phone that helps you use maps[1], book[2] tickets, etc. - something that does a particular[3] job on your phone or computer
cure	علاج	- a treatment that can make an illness better
predictions	تنبؤات	saying or writing what you think will happen in the future
exciting	مثير	not boring
design	يصمم	to draw something that you plan to build or make
the countryside	الريف	the area that is outside a town or a city
illness	مرض	being ill

١- خرائط
٢- يحجز
٣- معين/محدد



Audioscript SB Page (61)

استمع إلى النصوص

Presenter : What are your plans[1] for the future, Hussein?

Hussein : I've got a lot of plans for the future. Next year, I want to learn to play the guitar[2]. And before I leave school, I want to design a video game[3]!

Presenter : Wow! And what about later on? What will your life be like in ten years' time[4]?

Hussein : In ten years' time, I want to have a good job. I think I'll be a doctor. I'd like to live in the city.

Presenter : Thank you, Hussein.

Presenter : Khadeeja, what are your plans for the future?

Khadeeja : Well, one day I'd like to be a teacher. But there are lots of other things I want to do first.

١- خطط
٢- آلة الجيتار
٣- يصمم لعبة فيديو
٤- في خلال ١٠ سنوات

Presenter : Tell me about them.

Khadeeja : Well, before I get a job, I'd like to learn a new language. I also want to learn to drive.

Presenter : And what will your life be like in 10 years' time?

Khadeeja : That's a long way into the future, isn't it? Well, in 10 years' time, I'll have a job in a school. I think I'll get married, too.

Presenter : Thanks, Khadeeja

WB Page (111)

Dina:

I want to be a doctor but I need a lot of skills[1] to do that. Tomorrow, I'm going to visit my uncle. He's a doctor so he can give me some advice. Next summer, I'm going to study English in England. You need to speak good English to be a doctor.

Before I leave school, I'm going to do voluntary work[2] at a children's hospital. In a few years' time, I want to go to a good university[3]. Then, in about ten years' time, I think I'll be a doctor in a good hospital!

١- مهارات
٢- عمل تطوعي
٣- جامعة



Reading

SB Page (62)

My predictions[1] for the future

By Ahmed

In the next 30 years, there will be a lot of changes in our lives. Technology[2] will make our lives easier and more interesting. Our phones will be even more important and we will have apps[3] for everything.

Scientists will find new cures[4] for illnesses[5] so people will live longer. Some illnesses will disappear completely[6].

All our cars will be electric[7]. If this happens, it will be much better for the air in our cities, won't it? I don't think I will have to learn to drive because cars will drive themselves!

There will be a lot of interesting new jobs for people. Robots[8] will do some of the jobs that people do today. But I don't think we will have robot doctors or teachers!

I think there will be a lot of exciting changes in the future, but some things will stay the same. Children will still go to school, learn new things and spend time with friends.

١- تنبؤات
٢- التكنولوجيا
٣- تطبيقات
٤- علاجات
٥- أمراض
٦- يختفي تمامًا
٧- كهربي
٨- روبوتات

WB Page (112)

1. Today, I am going to write about life in the future. I think life in the next 100 years will be very different. Here are some reasons[1] why.
2. First, I think there will be a lot more people living in Egypt. I think our cities will be much bigger. They will also be better. We will have clean, quiet electric cars.
3. Second, we are all going to be healthier. People will not work long hours so they will have more time to do sports and stay healthy[2].
4. In conclusion[3], I think the future will be very different, but I am hopeful[4] that life will be better for my children and my grandchildren.

١- اسباب
٢- بصحة جيدة
٣- ختاما
٤- متفائل

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. If you ...., people can't see or find you. WB
   a. discount b. dislike c. disappear d. disagree
2. To .... means to make an injury or illness better. WB
   a. break b. cure c. damage d. hurt
3. ".........." means "not boring". WB
   a. Exciting b. Terrible c. Worse d. Long
4. He must revise .... his test to get high marks. ابو حماد 2023
   a. in b. for c. to d. at

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. The government has good .... for the next five years.
   a. mistakes b. games c. apps d. plans
6. Could you tell us about your .... of the match?
   a. reasons b. predictions c. ends d. grounds
7. Omar .... much time playing video games.
   a. introduces b. cures c. does d. spends
8. I think some .... will disappear completely in the future.
   a. conclusions b. introductions c. illnesses d. exams

9. The opposite of "disappear" is ....

a. revise b. design c. hide d. appear

10. My mobile phone has useful ....

a. taps b. apps c. types d. pools

11. That novel is really .... Everyone likes it.

a. exciting b. terrible c. boring d. bad

12. I like to live in a quiet place, so I like to live in the ....

a. city b. countryside c. office d. cinema

13. I want to design a new .... to help people book tickets.

a. app b. bridge c. plane d. radio

14. After I .... school, I'll join the university.

a. start b. design c. revise d. finish

15. He's a good man. He always .... voluntary work.

a. makes b. does c. spends d. helps



Talking about future plans الحديث عن الخطط المستقبلية

عند الحديث عن الخطط المستقبلية يمكنك أن تستخدم:

Subject فاعل + **(be) going to** + **inf.**

Ex. Next year, I'm going to learn a new language. العام القادم، سوف أتعلم لغة جديدة.

Subject فاعل + **want to** + **inf.**

Ex. Next month, I want to pass my exams. أريد أن أجتاز اختباراتى الشهر القادم.

Subject فاعل + **'d like to** + **inf.**

Ex. In a few years' time, I'd like to live in the city.

فى خلال سنوات قليلة، أريد أن أعيش فى المدينة.

عند الحديث عن تنبؤاتك المستقبلية يمكنك أن تستخدم:

Subject فاعل + **will** + **inf.**

Ex. In three years' time, I think I will be a doctor.

فى خلال ثلاث سنوات، أعتقد أنى سأصبح طبيبًا.

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Nabil is asking Kamal about his future plans.

Nabil : What are your plans for the future, Kamal?

Kamal : ❶ ....

Nabil : An app! Why?

Kamal : ❷ ....

Nabil : What will you do after you finish university?

Kamal : ❸ ....

Nabil : ❹ ....?

Kamal : I'd like to have a job as a computer programmer.

Nabil : ❺ ....?

Kamal : To design video games.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They are going .... me in front of the cinema. SB 2022 الشاطر
   a. to meeting b. meeting c. to meet d. met
2. The sun .... behind some dark clouds.
   a. cured b. disappeared c. looked d. revised
3. Scientists try to find a/an .... for Coronavirus.
   a. illness b. injury c. tap d. cure
4. Technology will .... our life easier.
   a. make b. find c. book d. finish
5. I think there will be new jobs in the future. It's my ....
   a. areas b. traditional c. predictions d. illnesses

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

[مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة]

WB

"Life in 100 years' time"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **How do you think life will be in 100 years' time?**
- **Will there be cars / houses etc...?**
- **Do you think people will use mobile phones?**
- **How do you think the weather will be?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **I think life in 100 years' time will be ....**
- **I think we will travel by ....**
- **People won't use mobile phones, they ....**
- **The weather will be ....**

Unit 12 Review

Key Vocabulary

machine	آلة - ماكينة	workshop	ورشة	exciting	مثير
engine	محرك (موتور)	jewellery	مجوهرات	test (ed) (n)	يختبر/اختبار
meeting	اجتماع	adult	شخص بالغ	design (ed)	يصمم (شيء)
laboratory	معمل	plans	خطط	earn (ed)	يكسب (مال)
terrible	فظيع	culture	ثقافة/حضارة	cure (d)(n)	يعالج - علاج
result	نتيجة	colourful	زاهى الألوان/كثير الألوان	disappear (ed)	يختفي
ocean	محيط	basket	سلة	design (ed)	يصمم (شيء)
education	التعليم	pottery	أوانى فخارية/فخار	spend (spent)	يقضي (وقت) / ينفق (مال)
university	جامعة	app	تطبيق		
apartment	شقة	predictions	تنبؤات		
skills	مهارات	illness	مرض		
marine biologist	عالم أحياء بحرية	the countryside	الريف		

Jobs

accountant	محاسب	pilot	طيار
computer programmer	مبرمج كمبيوتر	scientist	عالِم
photographer	مصور فوتوغرافى	writer	كاتب
architect	مهندس معمارى	businessman	رجل أعمال
engineer	مهندس	businesswoman	سيدة أعمال
dentist	طبيب أسنان	footballer	لاعب كرة قدم

Language

1) The relative pronoun (who)

• تستخدم (who) لتحل محل فاعل عاقل بمعنى «الذي - التي - الذين - اللاتي» (وفي هذه الحالة يأتي بعدها فعل):

Ex. Ali is my friend. He works in an office.

= Ali who is my friend works in an office.

• تستخدم (who) لتحل محل مفعول عاقل (وفي هذه الحالة يأتي بعدها اسم أو ضمير):

Ex. Tamer is my best friend. I met him two years ago.

= Tamer who I met two years ago is my best friend.

● تذكر:

١- تستخدم (which) لتشير إلى الأشياء والحيوانات (غير العاقل):

Ex. The film, which I watched last night, was interesting.

٢- تستخدم (where) لتشير إلى المكان:

Ex. I met Hossam at the bank, where he works.

٣- تستخدم (when) لتشير إلى الزمن:

Ex. 2017 is the year when I started work.

٤- تستخدم (whose) لتشير إلى الملكية (يأتي بعدها اسم مملوك لاسم قبلها).

Ex. Kamal, whose house is next to ours is very kind.

(2) Question tag

• يستخدم السؤال المذيل للتأكد من معلومة ما أو للسؤال عن معلومة ما ويعني (أليس كذلك؟).

- يأتي السؤال المذيل آخر الجملة ويتكون كالآتي:

❶ ❷

......, فعل مساعد أو ناقص + ضمير يعبر عن الفاعل?

• إذا كانت الجملة مثبتة يكون السؤال المذيل منفي والعكس صحيح.

Ex. They are good teachers, aren't they?
Ex. She isn't a doctor, is she?

- إذا لم يكن بالجملة المثبتة أحد الأفعال المساعدة/الناقصة السابقة نستخدم don't / doesn't / didn't:

(s) مضارع بسيط بدون ...	, don't ....?
(s / es / ies) + مضارع بسيط ...	, doesn't .... ?
ماضي بسيط ...	, didn't .... ?

Ex. Eman sings well , doesn't she?

• أما إذا كانت الجملة منفية بـ (don't / doesn't / didn't) نستخدم صيغ الإثبات (do / does / did):

Ex. They don't speak English, do they?

(3) The first conditional

• نستخدم (إذا/لو If) في الحالة الأولى للجمل الشرطية بالصيغة الآتية:

If + فاعل + present simple, ⟶ فاعل + will ('ll)/ will not (won't) + inf.

- يمكن أن تأتي if في وسط الجملة:

فاعل + will ('ll) will not (won't) + inf. → if + فاعل + present simple

Ex. If Reham comes early, she will catch the school bus.
= Reham will catch the school bus if she comes early.

- نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتعبير عن حدث محتمل في المستقبل.

Ex. If Ali passes the test, he will get the job.

• في حالة السؤال عن الحالة الأولى للجمل الشرطية نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

If + فاعل + present simple, ⟶ will + فاعل + inf....?

Will + فاعل + inf.... ⟶ if + فاعل + present simple...?

Ex. If you have a lot of money, will you buy a new house?

Ex. Will you buy a new house if you have a lot of money?

Yes, I will. No, I won't.

السؤال بكلمة استفهام:

• للسؤال بكلمة استفهام عن الحالة الأولى للجمل الشرطية تستخدم الصيغة التالية:

Question word + will + فاعل + inf. + if + فاعل + present simple?

A: Where will you go if you have a holiday?

B: I'll travel to London.

لاحظ:

يمكن استخدام (when) مثل (If) دون تغيير في المعنى:

Ex. When I finish school I will join the university.

Speaking

1 Asking and answering questions about jobs السؤال والإجابة عن الوظائف

Questions	Answers
- Who is an architect?	- An architect is a person who designs buildings.
- Who is a writer?	- A writer is a person who writes books or articles.
- Who is a dentist?	- A dentist is a person who looks after people's teeth.

2 Talking about keeping traditional jobs الحديث عن الاحتفاظ بالوظائف التقليدية

Questions	Answers
-Why is it important to keep traditional jobs?	- We don't want people to forget traditional skills. - We want local people to earn money.
- How can people use modern technology to help them?	- They can use the internet / social media to sell things.
- Do you think these jobs will change in the future? Why / Why not?	- I think that people will use machines for some of these jobs in the future.

3 Talking about future plans

الحديث عن الخطط المستقبلية

عند الحديث عن الخطط المستقبلية يمكنك أن تستخدم:

Subject فاعل + (be) going to + inf.

Ex. Next year, I'm going to learn a new language.. العام القادم، سوف أتعلم لغة جديدة

Subject فاعل + want to + inf.

Ex. Next month, I want to pass my exams. أريد أن أجتاز اختباراتي الشهر القادم

Subject فاعل + 'd like to + inf.

Ex. In a few years' time, I'd like to live in the city.

في خلال سنوات قليلة، أريد أن أعيش في المدينة.

عند الحديث عن تنبؤاتك المستقبلية يمكنك أن تستخدم:

Subject فاعل + will + inf.

Ex. In three years' time, I think I will be a doctor.

في خلال ثلاث سنوات، أعتقد أني سأصبح طبيبًا.

General Exercises on Unit 12

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Karim is asking Ali about his father's job.

Karim : What does your father do?

Ali : 1 ....

Karim : What does an architect do?

Ali : 2 ....

Karim : 3 ....?

Ali : I'd like to be a writer.

Karim : 4 ....?

Ali : Yes, I like reading and writing.

Karim : Best wishes.

Ali : 5 ....

2 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

SB, WB & Exams

1. If you .... to that restaurant, you'll have a really good lunch. SB
   a. went b. goes c. go d. going
2. If the tourists go to Giza, they ...... the Pyramids. SB
   a. will see b. seeing c. saw d. didn't see
3. You .... like fish, do you? SB
   a. didn't b. don't c. aren't d. won't
4. You won't forget to phone me, ... you? SB
   a. will b. should c. do d. are
5. .... is pots, dishes, etc. made from clay. WB
   a. Battery b. Bakery c. Jewellery d. Pottery
6. If Dad .... a new job, we'll move to Cairo. SB
   a. got b. get c. gets d. will get
7. My cousin is a/an .... now. She was 18 last week! WB
   a. baby b. adult c. kid d. child
8. Sara wants to be a marine biologist, ... she? WB
   a. isn't b. won't c. aren't d. doesn't
9. There were a lot of people at the meeting, weren't .... ? SB
   a. these b. there c. those d. it

Bit by Bit Exercises

10. He is so kind. He always .... voluntary work.
    a. does b. makes c. takes d. goes
11. Habiba is a nurse. She looks .... sick people.
    a. on b. up c. about d. after
12. My father bought this .... for my mother when they got married.
    a. jewellery b. train c. keyboard d. clay
13. It was an important .... and we made a lot of decisions.
    a. interview b. meeting c. party d. concert
14. This is the .... where our science teacher usually takes us.
    a. engine b. education c. jewellery d. laboratory

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She .... (speaks) French, does she? WB
2. Laila can't cook, ... (can't) she?
3. It is cold in England in winter, ... (doesn't) it? WB
4. You like playing tennis, ... (aren't) you?
5. You did your homework last night, ... (did) you? WB
6. If I get a good job, I'll .... (bought) a car.
7. You .... (should) eat too many cakes, should you? WB
8. There .... (were) many people at the match, were there? WB
9. Nasser will write to me when he gets there, ... (will) he? WB

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Your plans for the future" WB

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **Have you got plans for the future?**
- **What are you going to do next year?**
- **What are you going to do in ten years' time?**
- **What job would you like to do in the future? Why?**
- **Where would you like to live?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **I've got a lot of plans for the future.**
- **Next year, I'm going to ....**
- **Before I leave school, I want ....**
- **In ten years' time, I'd like to ....**
- **I think I'll be a/an ....**

Unit 12

Al Azhar Test





A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. People started making pottery .... of years ago in Egypt.
   a. tens   b. thousands   c. hundreds   d. millions
2. If you go to ...., you will see many people making pottery.
   a. Aswan   b. Luxor   c. Fayoum   d. Giza

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Fatma : What do you want to be?

Karma : I want to be an architect.

Fatma : 1 ....?

Karma : He is a person who designs buildings.

Fatma : 2 ....?

Karma : He works in a building site.

Fatma : Can he design roads and bridges?

Karma : 3 ....

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The soup tasted .... No one liked it.
   a. terrible   b. fantastic   c. nice   d. good
2. She didn't pass her exams, ...she?
   a. does   b. wasn't   c. did   d. don't
3. He has got a car, ... he?
   a. isn't   b. hasn't   c. doesn't   d. didn't

4. If you .... shopping tomorrow, I will go with you.

a. went b. goes c. go d. gone

5. Basem has got a .... because he can't walk. 2022 أسيوط

a. tablet b. mobile c. wheelchair d. wheel

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Science has told us so much about the moon that it is easy to know a lot of things about <u>it</u>. The moon is not a friendly place. As there is no air or water, there can be no life of any kind. For mile after mile there are many big mountains. Above, the sun and stars shine in a black sky. If you move away from the mountain shadows, it will mean moving from very low temperatures into great heat. These temperatures break rocks away from the surface of the mountains. The moon is also a very silent world because sounds can only travel through air. From this distance the earth is shining more than the stars. It looks like a big ball, coloured blue, green and brown.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why is the moon a silent world?

----

2. Who tells us about the moon?

----

3. What does the Earth look like from the moon?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "it" refers to the ....

a. sun b. earth c. star d. moon

5. Above the moon, the sun and stars shine in a .... sky.

a. blue b. black c. brown d. green

5 Reorder the following to make meaningful sentences:

1. is - a - who - designs - **The engineer** - machines - person. ....
2. books - writes - **A writer** - or - articles. ....
3. traditional - jobs - is - it - important - to - keep - **Why**? ....
4. technology - can - people - them - use - modern - **How** - to - help? ....



6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Different jobs"

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

– يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What job does your uncle do? Is it interesting?
- What job does your aunt do? What does she do?
- What job does your cousin do?
- What job does your sister do? Is it interesting?

– يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- My uncle is a/an .... - He works in a/an ....
- My aunt is a/an .... - She works in a/an ....
- My cousin is a/an .... - She works in a/an ....
- My sister is a/an .... - She works in a/an ....

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل بريد إلكتروني وردت بالوحدة

My dream job

To: sherif77@gmail.com

From: nadi33@yahoo.com

Subject: My dream job

Dear Sherif,

How are you? I'd like to be a marine biologist one day! A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean. He/She studies the plants and animals in it. I'm good at science and I love the ocean. I'd like to study the animals in our oceans because they are really beautiful and interesting. I'd like to go diving around coral reefs. I can test water from the ocean in the laboratory. I think my research will help to protect the plants and animals in the oceans.

Yours,

Nadi

Traditional jobs

People started traditional jobs thousands of years ago. However, traditional jobs are still important. Some people make pottery in workshops or their own homes. There is also a school where children and adults can learn this skill. It is an important skill because it helps local people to earn money. It is an important part of our culture. You can buy colourful baskets and pottery from markets. They are made in our villages. The government should help these local people to sell these things all over the world.

Life in 100 years' time

In 100 years' time, there will be great changes in people's lives. Technology will make our lives easier and more interesting. We will have apps for everything. Scientists will find cures for all illnesses, so people will live longer. All our cars will be electric. If this happens, it will be much better for the environment. Robots will do most of the jobs that people do today. I think we will have robot doctors or teachers! I think there will be a lot of exciting changes in the future.

My plans for the future

I've got a lot of plans for the future. Next year, I'm going to learn to play the guitar. Before I leave school, I want to design a video game! In ten years' time, I'd like to have a good job. I think I'll be a doctor. I really need to help find cures for dangerous diseases. I'd like to live in the countryside. I think life in the countryside is much better than city's life. It is also quieter.

Different jobs

My uncle has got a very interesting job. He's an engineer. He designs machines. He also designs engines for planes. I'd like to be an engineer one day!

Life in the future

In the future, there will be a lot of changes in our lives. Technology will make our lives easier. I think our phones will be more important. We will have apps for everything. Scientists will find new cures for illnesses. People will live longer. Some illnesses will disappear completely. All our cars will be electric. If this happens, it will be much better for the air in our cities. I don't think people will have to learn to drive because cars will drive themselves!

Unit 12 TEST





① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. The speaker would like to be a/an ....

   a. accountant b. nurse c. teacher d. student

2. The speaker would like to learn a new ....

   a. idea b. language c. hobby d. program

3. The speaker wants to learn to ....

   a. dive b. drive c. run d. jump

4. In 15 years' time, the speaker will ....

   a. be ill b. arrive home c. become angry d. get married

B Language Functions

② Complete the following dialogue:

Aya is asking a marine biologist about his job.

Aya : What job do you do?

Mr Reda : ❶ ....

Aya : Wow! You study the ocean, don't you?

Mr Reda : ❷ ....

Aya : ❸ ....?

Mr Reda : I study large sea animals like whales and sharks.

Aya : Working as a marine biologist isn't easy, is it?

Mr Reda : ❹ .... I collect and record much information.

Aya : ❺ ....?

Mr Reda : I want to study more sea animals in the future.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Nemo is a clownfish. It lives in the ocean. Nemo's mother doesn't live with **it**, because a shark ate it! So, Nemo and his father, Marlin, live alone in a beautiful coral reef. On its first day of school, Nemo is very happy to see the sea world, but his father is very worried. Marlin is afraid of sharks, and he doesn't want to leave Nemo alone. However, Nemo disobeys his father and goes after a boat, and unfortunately, a man catches it! So, Nemo's father starts a journey to find its son. Nemo stays in an aquarium in Australia, where it meets new friends, but it misses its father. Nemo tries to escape from the aquarium, but it's very difficult!

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why doesn't Nemo's mother live with him?

----

2. Where do Nemo and its father live?

----

3. Why do you think the man catches Nemo?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Nemo stays in a/an .... in Australia.

a. aquarium b. planetarium c. theatre d. ocean

5. The underlined word "**it**" refers to ....

a. school b. Nemo c. Nemo's mother d. Nemo's father

6. Marlin is Nemo's ....

a. shark b. man c. father d. mother

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... is often made of silver or gold. **SB**

a. Bread b. Jewellery c. Sand d. Pottery

2. You will visit your aunt today, ...?

a. will you b. aren't you c. can you d. won't you

3. He will get high marks if he .... harder. **WB**

a. studied b. will study c. studies d. studying

4. An architect is a person .... designs buildings.

a. what b. which c. when d. who

5. Carpenters and mechanics usually work in ....

SB

a. workshops b. markets c. baskets d. engines

6. I'm .... that Sara will get high marks in her exams.

a. colourful b. helpful c. hopeful d. sad

7. That good man .... to help the old woman cross the street.

a. flew b. disagreed c. refused d. volunteered

8. I think English is the most important .... around the world.

a. screen b. language c. map d. project

9. I went to the nearby park and .... a nice time.

a. spent b. designed c. cured d. left

10. A/An .... is a place where you study after you leave school for a degree.

a. office b. park c. garage d. university

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If you visit the museum, you .... (would) meet a lot of tourists.
2. Hassan isn't watching TV, ... (was) he?
3. Mr Ali is the man .... (which) we all like.
4. You are twelve years old, ... (are) you?

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Life in the future"

(مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار)

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Will our lives change in the future?
- How will technology change our lives?
- Will mobile phones change in the future?
- How will scientists be able to help us live better?
- Will cars need petrol?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- There will be a lot of changes in our lives.
- Technology will make our lives easier.
- We will have apps for everything.
- Scientists will find cures for ....
- Some illnesses will disappear completely.
- All our cars will be electric.

Review D

SB pages 64 - 65 WB pages 114 - 115



استمع إلى المفردات

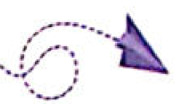
Key Vocabulary

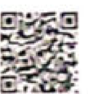
pick up	يلتقط	can	علبة صفيح
charity	جمعية خيرية	souvenir	هدية تذكارية
soft	ناعم / أملس / لين	aeronautical engineer	مهندس طيران
shower	دُش / حمام		



Reading

SB Page (64)



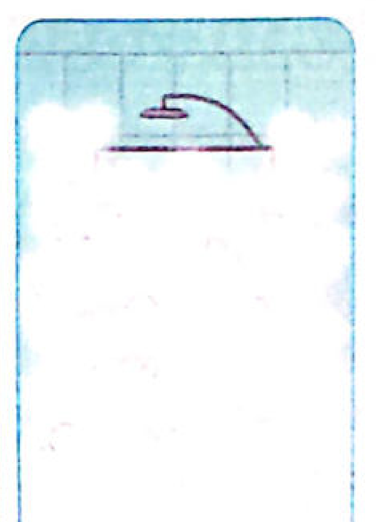


استمع إلى النصوص





If we pick up the rubbish from the beach, the animals won't eat it.



If we have shorter showers, we'll save water.

We must walk or cycle when we can.

I always ride my bike to the sports centre.

You mustn't buy plastic bags.







WB Page (114)



In the past, many people had traditional[1] jobs that people still do today. There were many teachers and bakers, for example. However, some jobs are quite new, aren't they? For example, an aeronautical engineer[2] is a person who designs things that fly. If you want to become an aeronautical engineer, you will have to study science. It is not an easy job, but it is very interesting. If you want to help future technology[3], perhaps you will design drones[4]. Many people think that drones will carry our post[5] in the future. That will make the skies[6] above our cities interesting, won't it?

١- تقليدي
٢- مهندس طيران
٣- التكنولوجيا
٤- طائرات بدون طيار
٥- البريد
٦- السماوات

Audioscript

SB Page (65)



Malak : Here are the boxes for the recycling project[1]. Different rubbish goes into different boxes.

Hala : Great! So which box does this bottle go into?

Malak : What is it made of -plastic or glass?

Hala : It's made of plastic.

Malak : OK, it goes into the yellow box.

Hala : Right ... There's another bottle here. This one is made of glass.

Malak : If it's made of glass, it goes into the blue box.

Hala : What about this magazine? It's made of paper.

Malak : It goes into the red box.

Hala : Where can I put this can[2]?

Malak : If it's made of metal[3], it goes into the green box.

Hala : Yes, it's made of metal... I'm putting it in the green box.

Malak : What's left[4]?

Hala : Just this T-shirt. We can't recycle that, can we? It's made of cotton.

Malak : We're not going to recycle the clothes - but we can give them to other people so that they can use them. Put them in the orange box, please.

Hala : The orange box ... OK.

Malak : Great. Everything is ready. Thanks for your help, Hala.

١- مشروع اعادة تدوير المخلفات
٢- علبة
٣- معدن
٤- ما الذي تبقى؟

WB Page (114)

1- Guessing something

I'm not sure what this souvenir[1] is made of. Is it plastic or stone?

١- هدية تذكارية
٢-لين/طري
٣- جمعية خيرية

2- Giving instructions in order

OK, first look for the fruit that is yellow. Then feel the fruit carefully. It should not be too soft[2]. So, if it's yellow and not too soft, what should you do? Well, finally, take it carefully from the tree.

3- Checking information

Hello, so, it's Mrs Shabana, isn't it? And you have got two children in this class, haven't you? But Aya isn't in school today, is she?

4- Talking about future plans

Before I go to university, I think I'll travel for a few months. Then I'd like to work for a charity[3].

Test on Units 10, 11 & 12

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Ras Mohammed is a/an ....
   a. charity b. nature reserve c. forest d. ocean
2. Many people go .... there.
   a. shopping b. walking c. kayaking d. diving
3. Ras Mohammed is famous for its beautiful ....
   a. roofs b. coral reefs c. leaves d. knives
4. People mustn't give .... to any fish.
   a. money b. water c. reefs d. food



B Language Functions

② Complete the following dialogue:

Aya and Nada are talking about the Earth.

Aya : Did you watch yesterday's programme on TV, Nada?

Nada : No, I didn't ❶ ....?

Aya : It was about the dangers our planet Earth faces.

Nada : ❷ ....?

Aya : They said we should recycle rubbish.

Nada : What else did they say?

Aya : ❸ ....

Nada : Do you have short showers?

Aya : ❹ ....

Nada : It's very useful information. ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

Trash isn't just a problem in parks and streets. It's also a problem on many beaches. Seas around the world are filling up with trash. It gets into the seas when people throw litter. Some boats and ships throw their trash directly into the water. Trash is also thrown into rivers. The biggest problem about sea trash is that most of it is plastic. Plastic products can stay for a long time until they are about the size of a city. This can be harmful to birds and other animals that live on the shore. Also, trash can carry germs that make people sick. We should teach people about the effects of sea trash. People can do voluntary work to clean up beaches and rivers.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage?

....

2. What is the biggest problem about sea trash?

....

3. What do you think people can do to clean up seas?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Trash is the biggest .... around the world.
   a. rivers   b. problem   c. beaches   d. seas
5. Plastic can .... for a long time.
   a. stay   b. work   c. clean   d. throw
6. Trash can be .... to birds and other animals that live on the shore.
   a. good   b. clean   c. harmful   d. nice

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'm very .... I think I will go to bed. WB
   a. fine b. healthy c. interesting d. tired
2. .... are made of cotton or wool.
   a. Windows b. Cushions c. Gates d. Roofs
3. An octopus can swim fast, ...?
   a. can't it b. will it c. can it d. does it
4. You shouldn't have long hot .... SB
   a. shares b. changes c. charities d. showers
5. Don't put that bottle in the bin, you can .... it.
   a. recycle b. cycle c. circle d. ride
6. If I study hard, I always .... good test results. WB
   a. gets b. got c. get d. getting
7. Animals in the nature .... must find food for themselves. WB
   a. reserve b. serve c. souvenir d. engineer
8. The desert is a hard .... for people to live in.
   a. population b. station c. government d. environment
9. A dentist is a person who checks people's ....
   a. hands b. cars c. teeth d. heads
10. There .... doctors and dentists in ancient Egypt.
    a. are b. were c. will be d. have

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You .... (mustn't) be careful when you hold a hot pan.
2. That's the woman .... (which) found my wallet.
3. You don't like wearing gloves, ... (don't) you?
4. If I .... (didn't) clean my room, it looks messy.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A character in a story you liked" SB

....

....

....

Part 2 General Exercises from Student's Book & Workbook

SB & WB Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An .... is a dining room in an office, building or school.
   a. canteen b. stadium c. museum d. aquarium
2. Let's go on the big wheel at the .... this weekend!
   a. aquarium b. museum c. planetarium d. funfair
3. It was great at the .... My team won 2-0!
   a. museum b. football stadium c. canteen d. theatre
4. The balls at the .... are heavy.
   a. aquarium b. museum c. bowling alley d. theatre
5. I loved the fish, I didn't see any whales at the ....
   a. bowling alley b. aquarium c. planetarium d. football stadium
6. We learn a lot about the Earth and the moon at the ....
   a. bowling alley b. aquarium c. planetarium d. football stadium
5. Her father cooks great food at a famous ....
   a. restaurant b. library c. football stadium d. museum
6. A/An .... is a place where you can play or watch sports matches.
   a. aquarium b. funfair c. museum d. stadium
7. A .... is someone who works on a boat or ship.
   a. seller b. musician c. sailor d. dentist
8. .... are large brown nuts that grow on palm trees.
   a. Coconuts b. Melons c. Apples d. Cucumbers
9. I didn't like this story. I thought the writing was ....
   a. clear b. brave c. annoyed d. terrible
10. Do you think this glass bottle will .... in the water?
    a. sink b. swim c. think d. run
11. Do you like working with other people, or do you prefer to work ....?
    a. lonely b. alone c. only d. not

12. A .... is a building to keep and display important things from the past.
a. museum b. funfair c. canteen d. sports centre

13. I watched a play in the ....
a. museum b. cinema c. theatre d. funfair

14. I like fruit because it's good .... me.
a. for b. at c. about d. on

15. My grandfather was a .... and visited many countries.
a. band b. statue c. concert d. sailor

16. I like ...., but it is difficult to open them.
a. peaches b. coconuts c. apples d. bananas

17. When you put a stone in water, it ....
a. thinks b. sinks c. hurts d. swims

18. Crusoe ate a .... on the island. It was very nice.
a. rock b. stone c. coconut d. paper

19. A/An .... travels on ships for a job.
a. dentist b. musician c. player d. sailor

20. .... music is sometimes very loud.
a. Rock b. Stone c. Cook d. Knock

21. People first played .... music a long time ago.
a. cheap b. new c. traditional d. careless

22. The 6th of October Bridge links the two Nile ....
a. offices b. seas c. beaches d. banks

23. The Cairo .... is the tallest building in Egypt.
a. Tower b. City c. Tunnel d. Bridge

24. The Tahya Masr .... goes over the Nile in Cairo.
a. Tunnel b. Bridge c. City d. Tower

25. The Channel .... goes under the sea between England and France.
a. Tunnel b. Bridge c. Tower d. Building

26. Asyut is not a very big ....
a. river b. tower c. city d. tunnel

27. The best time to cross the Tahya Masr Bridge is at ....
a. sunscreen b. sunblock c. sunset d. sunflower

28. We can't swim across the river. It is very ....
a. deep b. low c. noisy d. empty

29. The world's widest .... bridge opened in Cairo in May 2019.
    a. running b. suspension c. swimming d. sleeping
30. We need to buy some more water. This bottle is ....
    a. noisy b. crowded c. low d. empty
31. The .... of the Kings is one of the most popular places.
    a. Valley b. Nile c. Cave d. River
32. The British .... is the oldest one in London.
    a. Review b. Picnic c. Museum d. Space
33. There are valuable .... in the museum.
    a. spaces b. walls c. subjects d. treasures
34. The Nile is quite .... in Cairo.
    a. wide b. cheap c. modern d. expensive
35. What do you think .... the new TV show?
    a. off b. about c. at d. for
36. The market is busy at this time. It will be very ....
    a. empty b. crowded c. quiet d. wide
37. The teacher was angry because the students were very ....
    a. quiet b. narrow c. noisy d. low
38. Be careful you don't hit your head on the door. It's very ....
    a. empty b. wide c. noisy d. low
39. Only people and bikes can go down that road because it is very ....
    a. wide b. narrow c. big d. long
40. .... is the time when the sun disappears.
    a. Sunlight b. Sunscreen c. Sunset d. Sun cream
41. We are going to go .... across Sinai.
    a. trekking b. tricking c. fishing d. swimming
42. All you need to go .... is a boat and some wind!
    a. sailing b. diving c. trekking d. zip lining
43. We can't go .... today because there is no wind!
    a. trekking b. diving c. zip lining d. windsurfing
44. I love going .... down rivers. It's usually very quiet!
    a. kayaking b. running c. trekking d. zip lining
45. In ...., you start really high, but you finish on the ground.
    a. diving b. trekking c. zip lining d. kayaking

46. I love .... because I'm good at swimming under the water.

a. sailing b. zip lining c. trekking d. diving

47. We can't sail because there is no ....

a. snow b. wind c. rain d. fog

48. It is usually very .... in August.

a. rainy b. sunny c. funny d. snowy

49. There is .... at the top of that mountain. Look, it is all white!

a. snow b. wind c. rain d. storm

50. It is not very hot today because there are a lot of .... in the sky.

a. storms b. wind c. clouds d. sun

51. A .... is something you sleep in when you go camping.

a. boat b. journey c. guide d. tent

52. The roads are dangerous when it is ....

a. clear b. fine c. foggy d. hot

53. Travelling to Aswan by car is a long ....

a. journey b. voyage c. flight d. picnic

54. I'd rather .... chess.

a. playing b. to play c. play d. to playing

55. Phileas Fogg travels from .... USA to the UK by ship.

a. a b. the c. an d. any

56. I'd prefer .... tennis.

a. to play b. playing c. play d. to playing

57. We sometimes go .... across the desert.

a. windsurfing b. sailing c. trekking d. diving

58. Don't swim in the sea when it is .... It is dangerous.

a. funny b. sunny c. cloudy d. windy

59. I love waking up in a/an .... and hearing the birds sing in the mornings.

a. tent b. surface c. equipment d. adventure

60. We want to have a/an .... to show us the market.

a. tent b. guide c. adventure d. boat

61. Dalia doesn't want to go zip ....

a. lining b. climbing c. biking d. diving

62. Tamer .... his leg. He was playing football.

a. heard b. hurt c. had d. helped

63. I don't want to have a/an .... on holiday. I want to sleep by a pool.
    a. weather b. equipment c. guide d. adventure
64. It .... eight years to build Sydney Harbour Bridge.
    a. take b. took c. to take d. taking
65. There was a/an .... to find out who could spell the most words correctly.
    a. aquarium b. population c. competition d. funfair
66. Gold is an expensive ....
    a. plastic b. metal c. cotton d. glass
67. You can turn the .... to get water.
    a. roof b. brick c. oven d. tap
68. There weren't any cars in .... Egypt.
    a. modern b. new c. ancient d. special
69. What .... did they paint their house?
    a. size b. colour c. age d. number
70. We use .... to make jumpers.
    a. plastic b. wood c. metal d. wool
71. A/An .... designs buildings.
    a. teacher b. artist c. architect d. pilot
72. Wind .... use the wind to produce electricity.
    a. printers b. panels c. robots d. turbines
73. A/An .... can fly, but it doesn't have a pilot.
    a. dream b. drone c. racket d. electric car
74. People will get .... from the sun and the wind in the future.
    a. space b. water c. email d. electricity
75. We put .... panels on a roof. They produce electricity from the sun.
    a. solar b. sunny c. stormy d. windy
76. Will there be .... cars in the future?
    a. electricity b. windy c. music d. electric
77. I .... we will live on the moon; it is a dream.
    a. think b. design c. produce d. promise
78. We can use the sun or the wind to get ....
    a. petrol b. space c. electricity d. air
79. .... is an area that you can move around in.
    a. Spice b. Piece c. Space d. Peace

80. .... is nice temperature that is hot but not too hot.
    a. Cool b. Freezing c. Cold d. Warm
81. A/An .... happens when the ground suddenly moves.
    a. earthquake b. igloo c. volcano d. yurt
82. This is a triangular shape, it is a ....
    a. rectangle b. circle c. triangle d. square
83. It was hot outside, but it was nice and .... in my bedroom.
    a. warm b. cool c. round d. modern
84. This is a .... shape. It is a rectangle.
    a. circle b. triangular c. rectangular d. circular
85. A window is usually made of wood and ....
    a. leather b. glass c. stone d. wool
86. In 2080, we will build houses using 3D ....
    a. cars b. planes c. printers d. turbines
87. We use .... to build a wall.
    a. bricks b. ovens c. roofs d. taps
88. This is a .... shape. It's a circle.
    a. rectangular b. triangular c. cubic d. round
89. A/An .... car does not use petrol.
    a. ordinary b. electric c. driverless d. wind
90. Shoes are usually made of ....
    a. metal b. cotton c. glass d. leather
91. Some houses fell to the ground after the ....
    a. space b. earthquake c. earth d. temperature
92. .... are machines which can do many things for us. Some of them can talk.
    a. Panels b. Turbines c. Rockets d. Robots
93. The jellyfish is poisonous. It .... you when you touch it.
    a. grows b. smiles c. rings d. stings
94. A sea turtle has a hard .... to protect itself.
    a. shelf b. shell c. ship d. shore
95. The .... is one of the most dangerous sea animals.
    a. crab b. turtle c. shark d. tiger
96. Trees are very good for our .... because they give us clean air.
    a. rubbish b. plastic c. environment d. road

97. You can see birds and animals in the Ras Mohammed ....

a. reserve b. ocean c. beach d. river

98. Don't throw away those glass bottles. We can .... them.

a. cycle b. recycle c. cook d. hear

99. We don't need that dirty piece of paper. You can put it with the ....

a. environment b. beach c. planet d. rubbish

100. Earth is one of eight .... that go around the sun.

a. planets b. planes c. plates d. plants

101. Every year, more than 100,000 sea animals and birds .... from plastic.

a. live b. buy c. die d. stay

102. The top part of the Earth, where we stand is the ....

a. soil b. sky c. ground d. sea

103. Some people like listening to music on their ....

a. headlines b. headmasters c. headaches d. headphones

104. Judy felt very .... when she was ill, but she is better now.

a. weak b. strong c. happy d. active

105. To .... is to put something over something else to protect or hide it.

a. dry b. plant c. cover d. water

106. My grandmother is 85 and knows a lot! We all .... what she says.

a. hate b. respect c. dislike d. throw

107. Ahmed's mother was .... when he didn't phone her.

a. worried b. interesting c. funny d. excited

108. In the museum, we saw a .... of a very old animal. Its bones were very big.

a. character b. hole c. seed d. skeleton

109. Plants grow in a good ....

a. floor b. mail c. sail d. soil

110. A .... is an empty space in something.

a. hole b. pole c. ball d. role

111. A stingray is a big, ... fish.

a. empty b. flat c. plastic d. warm

112. If something is ...., it can make you very ill or kill you.

a. poisonous b. tired c. funny d. noisy

113. A lot of .... catch fish from the Red Sea.

a. teachers b. nurses c. fishermen d. engineers

SB & WB Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Nahla .... a fantastic weekend last month.
   a. has b. have c. having d. had
2. It's January now. It was December .... month.
   a. ago b. next c. last d. in
3. ...., our family moved to our new house in Alexandria.
   a. Now b. Next week c. Tomorrow d. Yesterday
4. It's Wednesday today, so it was Tuesday ....
   a. yesterday b. this morning c. tomorrow d. next week
5. What did you do .... weekend?
   a. next b. ago c. last d. now
6. A: .... time is it? B: It is quarter past ten.
   a. What b. Where c. How d. When
7. A: How .... you come to school? B: I come to school by bus.
   a. did b. do c. does d. done
8. A: .... you like classical music? B: No, I don't.
   a. Are b. Have c. Do d. Did
9. A: When .... go to the sports centre?
   B: I went there four days ago.
   a. did b. you c. you did d. did you
10. A: .... you like jazz? B: No, I don't like jazz, but I like pop.
    a. Are b. Will c. Did d. Do
11. A: Have you got a new jacket? B: No, I ....
    a. don't b. doesn't c. am not d. haven't
12. A: .... do you go to school? B: At half past seven.
    a. When b. What c. Where d. How
13. .... your best friend speak French?
    a. Do b. Is c. Can d. Are
14. A: Did you have a mobile phone? B: Yes, I .... one.
    a. did b. had c. was d. has
15. I .... to the museum four days ago.
    a. go b. goes c. went d. am going

16. .... the film was interesting, I did not understand it.
   a. Although b. Since c. When d. Because

17. Tuesday 20^{th} April was two months ....
   a. when b. ago c. because d. in

18. Old cars are .... than modern cars.
   a. noisier b. noisy c. noisiest d. as noisy

19. The plane is the .... means of transport.
   a. expensive b. more expensive c. most expensive d. much expensive

20. Ali is tall, but Rami is ....
   a. taller b. tallest c. tall d. as tall

21. My friend lives .... the school than me.
   a. nearest b. nearer c. near d. most nearer

22. The Nile River is longer .... the Amazon.
   a. as b. most c. more d. than

23. My cousins felt .... after they moved to a new flat.
   a. happiest b. happier c. more happier d. as happy

24. This car is .... expensive one in the park.
   a. the most b. more c. more d. less

25. My sister didn't like the book, ... I loved it.
   a. so b. because c. but d. although

26. I don't like this hotel .... it is not very modern.
   a. because b. so c. although d. but

27. Ahmed did not come to school .... he was ill.
   a. but b. so c. because d. although

28. We went to the shop for some bread, ... it was closed.
   a. or b. but c. because d. so

29. Let's buy green apples because the red apples are ....
   a. more expensive b. as expensive
   c. expensive than d. the expensive

30. The museum is usually .... on a Saturday than a Sunday.
   a. crowded b. more crowded c. as crowded d. most crowded

31. I think the blue dress is .... than the red dress.
   a. nice b. nicest c. nicer d. as nice

32. .... Reem going to try rock climbing?

a. Are b. Is c. Am d. Will

33. Who .... to cook your meal this evening?

a. going b. is go c. is going d. to go

34. What is Reem .... to do tomorrow morning?

a. go b. to go c. gone d. going

35. Ahmed's journey .... start in March.

a. to go b. is going to c. going to d. going

36. What .... going to wear tomorrow?

a. were you b. you will c. you are d. are you

37. .... you going to travel home by bus after school?

a. Are b. Is c. Will d. Am

38. Children usually enjoy .... when they play on the beach.

a. ourselves b. herself c. themselves d. himself

39. I didn't buy this cake. I made it ....

a. yourself b. itself c. herself d. myself

40. We enjoyed .... when we went sailing.

a. themselves b. ourselves c. myself d. himself

41. Fatma took .... a photo with a camel.

a. myself b. himself c. itself d. herself

42. Karim made .... some salad for lunch.

a. yourself b. himself c. myself d. ourselves

43. Sara has a jacket to keep .... warm.

a. myself b. himself c. themselves d. herself

44. The birds sleep in caves to protect .... from eagles.

a. ourselves b. themselves c. yourselves d. yourself

45. Sami came out of the sea and dried .... with a towel.

a. himself b. herself c. itself d. themselves

46. What .... we do this weekend?

a. have b. are c. does d. shall

47. Would you like to make .... a cup of tea?

a. ourselves b. yourself c. herself d. themselves

48. My sister and I like taking photos of .... when we go out.

a. ourselves b. herself c. myself d. himself

49. .... you going to eat before you do your homework this evening?
    a. Will b. Is c. Are d. Am
50. The cats sat by the fire to keep .... warm.
    a. itself b. ourselves c. themselves d. herself
51. I'm .... try rock climbing next weekend.
    a. going to b. going c. to go d. to going
52. My little brother enjoyed .... at the family party.
    a. yourself b. herself c. himself d. myself
53. What .... pencil cases made of?
    a. is b. was c. 's d. are
54. The television is .... of glass and plastic.
    a. made b. making c. to make d. make
55. The table is made .... wood.
    a. from b. of c. in d. about
56. There .... any cars in ancient Egypt.
    a. weren't b. are c. wasn't d. was
57. Scarves are usually made .... wool.
    a. at b. in c. from d. of
58. The wallet .... of leather.
    a. is made b. made c. is making d. are made
59. The chairs .... made of wood.
    a. has b. are c. is d. was
60. When we visited Deir el-Madina, there .... any bedrooms.
    a. aren't b. isn't c. weren't d. were
61. I hope we .... to the moon in the future.
    a. will go b. are going to c. went d. going
62. People .... all use electric cars in the future.
    a. would b. will c. are d. were
63. I think we .... drones for post in the future.
    a. use b. using c. used d. will use
64. In the future, people .... to the beach for holidays. They will go to the moon.
    a. will go b. didn't go c. won't go d. go
65. In 2080, we .... in cities under the sea.
    a. live b. lived c. living d. will live

66. If it .... very hot, I turn on the fan.
a. were b. was c. are d. is

67. If I .... my pencil case, I often feel sad.
a. forgot b. forget c. forgets d. forgetting

68. When I .... hungry, I have something to eat.
a. was b. were c. am d. be

69. When I .... home from school, I take a shower.
a. got b. gets c. getting d. get

70. If my sister .... a lot of TV, she feels tired.
a. watches b. watch c. watched d. watching

71. If we are noisy in class, our teacher usually .... us.
a. punish b. punishes c. punished d. punishing

72. When I've got a test, I always .... nervous.
a. felt b. to feel c. feel d. feeling

73. .... a shark loses a tooth, a new one grows.
a. But b. If c. Where d. What

74. When a stingray .... a shark is coming, it jumps out of the water.
a. knows b. know c. knowing d. knew

75. When you work together, you .... share your ideas with others.
a. mustn't b. should c. shouldn't d. can't

76. When you cross a road, first you .... find a safe place to cross.
a. can't b. shouldn't c. must d. mustn't

77. There is a good view of the lake from here. You .... take a photo.
a. should b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. can't

78. You .... walk in the mountain when the weather is bad. It's dangerous.
a. should b. must c. can d. mustn't

79. You .... look left and right when you cross a road.
a. mustn't b. can't c. must d. shouldn't

80. The animals .... eat plastic. It is very bad for them.
a. should b. mustn't c. must d. can

81. When I ...., I make my bed.
a. gets up b. got up c. getting up d. get up

82. .... we hear something funny, we all laugh.
a. What b. Who c. Whose d. When

83. If you touch a jellyfish, it .... you.
   a. sting   b. stings   c. stung   d. stinging
84. The octopus swims away fast .... it's in danger.
   a. why   b. what   c. how   d. when
85. If water is 100°c, it ....
   a. boil   b. boiling   c. boils   d. boiled
86. What .... do to get better marks in my next exams?
   a. should I   b. I should   c. was I   d. I was
87. A pilot is a person .... flies a plane.
   a. which   b. when   c. who   d. where
88. A scientist is a person .... studies science.
   a. who   b. which   c. when   d. where
89. A teacher is a person .... teaches students.
   a. when   b. where   c. which   d. who
90. Hany is the boy .... lives next door to me.
   a. when   b. who   c. where   d. which
91. My cousins are people .... call me every week on the phone.
   a. who   b. which   c. where   d. when
92. Ali is a photographer .... takes photos.
   a. which   b. what   c. where   d. who
93. He's fast, ... he?
   a. is   b. aren't   c. was   d. isn't
94. He needs rest, ... he?
   a. doesn't   b. aren't   c. isn't   d. don't
95. You .... like sweets, do you?
   a. didn't   b. don't   c. do   d. doesn't
96. Ali can't speak English, ...?
   a. can he   b. he can   c. he can't   d. can't he
97. Ashraf doesn't play football, ...?
   a. doesn't he   b. he doesn't   c. does he   d. he does
98. Smoking can make you ill, ...?
   a. it can't   b. can't it   c. it can   d. can it
99. The story is interesting, ... it?
   a. don't   b. doesn't   c. isn't   d. aren't
100. If you want to see the doctor, you ...... to wait.
   a. will have   b. have will   c. will   d. won't

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Adam did his homework an hour .... (age).
2. He .... (driving) to Alex with his family last Saturday.
3. Hassan .... (move) to Cairo ten years ago.
4. .... (Do) you taller than your brothers and sisters?
5. .... (Has) you got any sisters?
6. What did you .... (did) last weekend?
7. I .... (go) to the museum last weekend.
8. An elephant is .... (big) than a camel.
9. Cairo is .... (most) crowded than Aswan.
10. He was poor .... (and) he was happy.
11. The computer was very expensive .... (because) I bought it.
12. Tennis is .... (little) dangerous than football.
13. What .... (is) you going to do next Saturday?
14. Ahmed is going to .... (sleeping) in a tent.
15. A camel is going to .... (carried) the food and water.
16. We all looked at .... (yourselves) in the school photo.
17. The lamp is .... (making) of glass.
18. The sofa is made .... (from) leather.
19. I think we will .... (having) solar panels on planes in the future.
20. .... (When) is your bag made of?
21. The socks .... (is) made of wool.
22. If I feel ill, I .... (went) to bed.
23. When it .... (was) very cold, water turns to ice.
24. When a turtle .... (be) in danger, it goes into its shell.
25. When I get home from school, I .... (always does) my homework.
26. I always .... (laughed) when I watch that film.
27. They .... (aren't) tall trees, aren't they?
28. Your brother can't play the guitar, can .... (she)?
29. If I finish my homework before seven o'clock, I will .... (came) and visit you.
30. If we move to Cairo, my father .... (would) get a new job.
31. She .... (speaks) French, does she?

32. It is cold in England in winter, ... (doesn't) it?

33. You did your homework last night, ... (did) you?

34. You .... (should) eat too many cakes, should you?

35. There .... (were) many people at the match, were there?

36. Nasser will write to me when he gets there, ... (will) he?

3 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

Your last weekend

....
....
....
....
....
....

An adventure story

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

What the people in your family like doing

....
....
....
....
....
....

Your visit to Luxor Temple

....
....
....
....
....

An important building in Egypt (The Grand Egyptian Museum)

The Tahya Masr Bridge

Your favourite adventure sport

Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words:

- To your pen friend John about an exciting trip you made.
- Your name is Omar and your email address is omar22@yahoo.com. Your pen friend's email address is john55@gmail.com.

- To your pen friend Sally about transport today and in the past.
- Your name is Nourhan and your mail address is nour85@yahoo.com. Your pen friend's email address is sally14@gmail.com.

- To your friend Sara about ways to help the environment.
- Your name is Salma and your email address is salmazaki@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is sarahamdi@yahoo.com.

- To your friend Gamal about a nature reserve you visited.
- Your name is Reda and your email address is reda90@hotmail.com. Your friend's email address is gamal@yahoo.com.

- To your friend Eyad about the importance of recycling old materials.
- Your name is Yasin and your email address is yasin@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is eyad@yahoo.com.

- To your friend Adham about your dream job.
- Your name is Karma and your email address is karma2017@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is adham@yahoo.com.

End of Term Practice

مجاب عنه فى آخر الكتاب

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. What does the woman want to buy?

   a. a newspaper b. a new bag c. a new phone d. some photographs

2. The thing she decides to buy is ....

   a. large and expensive b. small and expensive
   c. small and cheap d. large and cheap

3. What does the assistant ask the woman about?

   a. her name b. her job c. her hobbies d. the price

4. The woman is a ....

   a. photographer b. painter c. journalist d. doctor

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Tarek : You're going to go to university in September, aren't you?

Ali : Yes, but before ❶ .... to university, I want to improve my English.

Tarek : How are you going to do that?

Ali : I'm going to travel to ❷ .... in the summer holidays. Then, I'm going to a language school.

Tarek : England! ❸ .... you go to the USA to learn English? In ❹ ...., American English is easier.

Ali : I'm not ready. It's expensive to go there. I'd rather go to London.

Tarek : You went there before, didn't you? ❺ .... was it there?

Ali : It was great. It was really interesting.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

There are many beautiful mosques, but perhaps the most unusual is the Great Mosque in Mali, Africa. It is not made of bricks like most mosques. It is made of something called mud. This is the brown soil you often find at the bottom of a river. It is very soft in water. If you dry it, it becomes very hard. The building is usually very strong, but there is a problem. People must put new mud on the building every year. If they don't, it will collapse when it rains! There are always enough people to do this because the people who help get respect for their work.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

....

2. Do you think we should keep ancient buildings? Why? Why not?

....

3. What is unusual about the Great Mosque in Mali?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. When it is dry, mud becomes ....

a. soft b. hard and strong c. difficult to use d. very old

5. What do you think the word "collapse" means?

a. fall down b. get bigger c. disappear d. turn to water

6. The underlined word "It" refers to ....

a. mud b. Africa c. Mali d. The Great Mosque in Mali

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Most windows are made of ....

a. wool b. glass c. cotton d. paper

2. You can usually .... paper, so don't throw it away.

a. recycle b. cycle c. heat d. hit

3. We are going to go .... across Sinai.

a. trekking b. tricking c. fishing d. swimming

4. We decided to play basketball at the sports ....

a. match b. wheel c. funfair d. centre

5. The teacher asked the students to work in pairs and .... a quiz.

a. throw b. do c. make d. let

6. The story is interesting, ... it?

a. does b. doesn't c. isn't d. is

7. I hope we .... to the moon in the future.

a. will go b. are going to go c. went d. going

8. The old car is .... than the new car.

a. noise b. more noise c. noisier d. noisiest

9. Children usually enjoy .... when they play on the beach.

a. themselves b. herself c. ourselves d. himself

10. Khalid went to the park ten minutes ....

a. since b. then c. ago d. next

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If I feel tired, I usually .... (will go) to bed.
2. My uncle is a .... (seller); he works on a big ship.
3. A doctor is someone .... (which) looks after sick people.
4. Which animals have a .... (shall) or a tail?

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of seventy - eighty (70 - 80) words on "How to keep a beach clean".

- Start with a topic sentence.- Write details on how to keep a beach clean"
- Write a short conclusion.

....

....

....

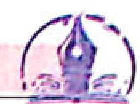
....

....

Final Exams



القاهرة - الزاوية الحمراء





1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Ahmed is a ....
   a. doctor b. student c. teacher d. musician
2. Ahmed goes to his school by ....
   a. bus b. car c. taxi d. train
3. Ahmed has a .... family.
   a. sad b. big c. small d. bad
4. Ahmed plays the ....
   a. guitar b. cello c. drums d. violin

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Adel is talking to Amir about reading.

Adel : Hi! How are you?

Amir : ❶ ....

Adel : What are you doing now?

Amir : ❷ ....

Adel : A book! Do you like reading ?

Amir : ❸ ....

Adel : ❹ ....?

Amir : I go to the library twice a week.

Adel : ❺ ....?

Amir : I go there with my friends.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The world widest suspension bridge; Tahya Masr Bridge opened in Cairo in May 2019. **It** is 67.36 meters wide and 540m long. More than 4,000 people helped to build. They **started** building it in 2016 and they finally finished it in 32 months later. The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. More than 100,000 people live on the island. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet! The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

----

2. What does the bridge cross?

----

3. What is best time to cross the bridge?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....

a. Cairo b. Warraq Island c. Tahya Masr Bridge d. The Nile

5. The bridge has a .... floor.

a. metal b. glass c. paper d. wool

6. The underlined word "**started**" means ....

a. began b. stopped c. ended d. wool

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It is important to .... your skin from the sun.

a. damage b. stop c. agree d. protect

2. The Red Sea is famous for its .... reef.

a. corn b. born c. coral d. flat

3. .... in the desert is tiring but enjoyable.

a. Swimming b. Diving c. Kayaking d. Trekking

4. .... panels produce electricity using the sun.

a. Sky b. Solar c. Wind d. Moon

5. They put .... on windows to protect them from the sun.
   a. curtains   b. lamps   c. carpets   d. scarfs
6. Let's go on the big wheel at the .... this weekend!
   a. stadium   b. aquarium   c. funfair   d. museum
7. He writes what happens to him every day in a ....
   a. dairy   b. diary   c. photo   d. search
8. They will .... a lot of things there.
   a. do   b. does   c. did   d. doing
9. We .... share our ideas with each other.
   a. mustn't   b. shouldn't   c. can't   d. should
10. If he .... a lot of food, he feels ill.
   a. eat   b. eating   c. eats   d. will eats

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

5. You should .... (studying) hard.
6. He played tennis .... (tomorrow).
7. The museum is the .... (good) place for holiday.
8. He did it .... (herself). Nobody helped him.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your summer holiday"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Exam 2 الجيزة - الحوامدية التعليمية





A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Farida goes to Dahab with her ....
   a. friends b. family c. teachers d. cousins
2. Farida likes to go .... in the desert.
   a. fishing b. diving c. trekking d. shopping
3. Farida loves the ....
   a. ocean b. aquarium c. planetarium d. museum
4. In the evenings, Farida likes going to the ....
   a. farm b. swimming pool c. funfair d. sports centre

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Eyad is asking Ahmed about his favourite hobbies.

Eyad : Hello Ahmed. How are you?
Ahmed : 1 ....
Eyad : 2 ....?
Ahmed : I'm reading a book now.
Eyad : 3 ....?
Ahmed : Yes, I like reading very much.
Eyad : Where do you read?
Ahmed : 4 ....
Eyad : Do you like music?
Ahmed : 5 ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Doctors are important because they look after people. Doctors are people who take care of others and help them get well when they are <u>sick</u>. Doctors help sick people get better by giving them medicine. <u>They</u> work in hospitals. They are helpful.

To be a doctor, You should work hard. You should like working with people and helping others. You should be kind. If you aren't kind, people won't love you.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

....

2. What do you think of the doctor's job?

....

3. Where do doctors work?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. If you aren't a kind doctor, people will .... you.

a. love b. like c. dislike d. admire

5. The underlined word "**They**" refers to ....

a. doctors b. patients c. nurses d. farmers

6. .... means the same as "sick".

a. tall b. happy c. ill d. thin

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An .... is a place where you can play or watch sports matches.

a. aquarium b. stadium c. funfair d. museum

2. Egypt is a great .... in Africa.

a. town b. city c. capital d. country

3. The Tahya Masr .... goes over the Nile in Cairo.

a. Pyramid b. Tunnel c. Bridge d. Tower

4. When we go camping, we sleep in a.......... .

a. tent b. castle c. hotel d. theatre

5. I looked at myself in the ....

a. door b. mirror c. book d. chair

6. Many chairs are made of ....

a. wood b. stone c. brick d. paper

7. I write what happens to me every day in a.......... .

a. photo b. picture c. diary d. glass

8. .... you watch the match yesterday?

a. Do b. Did c. Does d. Is

9. Cairo is .... than Tanta.

a. bigger b. big c. biggest d. as big

10. What should I .... to get high marks?

a. did b. does c. doing d. do

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Marwa made this cup of tea by .... (himself).
2. There will .... (being) a lot of solar panels in the future.
3. How .... (much) do you go swimming? - Twice a week.
4. If you put ice outside a freezer, it .... (melt).

E Writing

6 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words:

- To your friend Asmaa about a place you visited.
- Your name is Mona and your email address is mona18@hotmail.com. Your friend's email address is asmaa@gmail.com.

....

....

....

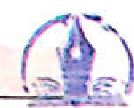
....

....

....

....

....

القليوبية - بنها التعليمية



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. I go to the beach in ....
   a. summer b. winter c. spring d. fall
2. I go there with ....
   a. my friends b. my school c. my parents d. my family
3. When a wave comes, I .... up.
   a. jump b. throw c. run d. fill
4. On the beach, his brother likes to play with his beach ....
   a. bag b. ball c. bike d. car

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Asmaa asks Eman about the book she is reading.

Asmaa : What are you reading?
Eman : ❶ ....
Asmaa : ❷ .... ?
Eman : It's called "The Old Man and the Sea".
Asmaa : ❸ .... ?
Eman : The main character is an old man called Santiago.
Asmaa : What's his job?
Eman : ❹ ....
Asmaa : Is it a good story?
Eman : ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Egypt is a very beautiful country. Many tourists come to visit Egypt all year round. Egypt has very nice weather. In summer, tourists can go to Alexandria. **There**, they can see the lighthouse and enjoy the sea. In winter, they can go to Aswan. They enjoy

the warm weather there. There are many interesting things which tourists can see in Egypt. They can see the pyramids, the zoo and many museums in Cairo. Last Friday, my pen-friend Robert came from England to visit Egypt. He went to Aswan by train. He stayed at a nice hotel. He saw many temples and beautiful places.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Put a suitable title to the text.

----

2. What did Robert see in Aswan?

----

3. Why do you think tourists like to visit Egypt?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Tourists visit Egypt ....

a. in spring b. in summer c. all year round d. in winter

5. Robert is ....

a. Japanese b. French c. Egyptian d. English

6. The underlined word "**There**" refers to.......... .

a. England b. Cairo c. Aswan d. Alexandria

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I didn't enjoy the film because it was ....

a. exciting b. amazing c. funny d. terrible

2. When I was a young child, I really .... like chocolate.

a. am not b. won't c. didn't d. don't

3. .... Climbing is the most dangerous sport.

a. Tree b. Mountain c. Cave d. Wall

4. I .... with your opinion. I have another one.

a. dislike b. agree c. disagree d. think

5. The lion is .... dangerous than the dog.

a. the most b. the more c. most d. more

6. People sleep in .... when they go camping.

a. tents b. pools c. holes d. palaces

7. Ali and I enjoyed .... when we went sailing.

a. himself b. ourselves c. themselves d. myself

8. In winter, people wear heavy clothes to .... warm.

   a. have b. take c. keep d. make

9. He is a famous writer because he has .... ideas.

   a. busy b. fast c. expensive d. creative

10. Some people like listening to music on their ....

   a. gloves b. posters c. headphones d. leaflets

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You .... (mustn't) listen to your teacher's advice.
2. .... (Because) I am hungry, I don't want to eat.
3. .... (Ahmed is) going to fly to London?
4. You should .... (are) helpful.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A trip to a famous place."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Exam 4 المنوفية - أشمون التعليمية





A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. How long did they take to finish the bridge? ....
   a. 23 months b. 32 months c. 13 months d. 30 months
2. In which city did they open it? - In ....
   a. London b. Paris c. Cairo d. Tokyo
3. The bridge is the world's .... suspension bridge.
   a. longest b. shortest c. tallest d. widest
4. How many people helped to build it? - More than ....
   a. 4,000 b. 2,000 c. 400 d. 40,000

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Aya and Manal are talking about music.

Aya : Do you like music, Manal?
Manal : ❶.. .
Aya : ❷..?
Manal : I like classical music.
Aya : ❸..?
Manal : I will go to a concert next week.
Aya : Do you have the tickets?
Manal : ❹..............................You can come with me to buy them.
Aya : ❺.. .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

It was Mother's Day. My sister and I went to buy presents for our mother. I bought her a dress and my sister bought her a pair of shoes. At home, we made a party. We invited our three cousins and many of our friends. The girls sang beautiful songs. We gave the presents to our mother who thanked us. All the guests ate cakes and drank tea. My mother was happy because all people loved her. At ten pm, our guests left our house. <u>They</u> were very happy.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What does the passage talk about?

----

2. What do you think about the writer?

----

3. What presents did the mother take?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "**They**" refers to the ....

a. girls b. cousins c. guests d. daughters

5. The guests left the house ....

a. in the morning b. in the afternoon c. at noon d. at night

6. The opposite of the word beautiful is ....

a. surprising b. terrible c. nice d. friendly

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We learned about the Earth and the moon at the ....

a. funfair b. aquarium c. bowling alley d. planetarium

2. Cairo-Alexandria Desert .... is 220 km long.

a. Road b. River c. Pavement d. Street

3. There are valuable .... in the Egyptian Museum.

a. centuries b. treasures c. picnics d. plans

4. .... means without making much noise; not noisy.

a. Quite b. Tunnel c. Crowded d. Quiet

5. .... is a sport where one or two people travel in a narrow boat.

a. Diving b. Trekking c. Kayaking d. Swimming

6. The .... is made of glass and plastic.

a. curtain b. cup c. sofa d. television

7. The .... is a large, dangerous sea animal with sharp teeth.

   a. lizard   b. shark   c. turtle   d. dolphin

8. My father .... his car in 2007.

   a. is buying   b. buy   c. bought   d. buys

9. What .... you going to wear tomorrow?

   a. do   b. are   c. have   d. were

10. Ali is tall, but Helal is ....

   a. taller than   b. tallest   c. taller   d. the tallest

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Boys, do your homework .... (myself).
2. The bag .... (making) of leather.
3. There wasn't .... (some) pen on the table.
4. If we boil water, it .... (turning) into water vapour.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A fantastic day."



الشرقية - ديرب نجم التعليمية





1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Where is the Valley of the Kings? It's in ....
   a. Sohag b. Aswan c. Minia d. Luxor
2. Who likes to visit it? ....
   a. Guides b. Tourism c. Tourists d. Thieves
3. When did you go there?
   a. Late b. Early c. At night d. At dawn
4. Why did you prefer that time? As it is the .... time.
   a. quietest b. quickest c. noisiest d. highest

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mona is telling Rabab about what she is going to do next holiday.

Mona : The holiday will be in two weeks. Are you happy?
Rabab : Of course, ❶ ....
Mona : ❷ ....?
Rabab : I'm going to travel to London.
Mona : ❸ ....?
Rabab : I'm going to travel with my family.
Mona : How long will you stay there?
Rabab : ❹ ....
Mona : I hope you will enjoy your time there.
Rabab : ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The ancient Egyptians were very powerful. They built tombs to be buried in. They thought that the king was a god. They didn't wear many clothes. Most men wore a kind of short skirt, but women used to wear long dresses. Women didn't go out to work. They stayed at home. Most men were farmers. Their children did the same jobs

as their parents. Girls stayed at home with their mothers. They learned to look after their families. Boys worked with their fathers. <u>They</u> only went to school if they wanted to learn to do new jobs. Children used to run, jump and play games. Their toys were made of wood.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage?

....

2. Why do you think the ancient Egyptians didn't wear many clothes?

....

3. Where were the Kings of Ancient Egypt buried?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Most .... in Ancient Egypt wore skirts.
   a. women b. boys c. girls d. men
5. The ancient Egyptians thought that their king was a ....
   a. queen b. good c. god d. prince
6. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to.......... .
   a. sons b. men c. girls d. children

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When I share a post, my friends write ....
   a. comments b. blogs c. plays d. pictures
2. The .... says, "Don't walk on the grass.".
   a. signal b. sign c. list d. menu
3. We should put .... in the bins.
   a. rockets b. money c. rubbish d. information
4. What do you think .... animals like horses and cats?
   a. in b. for c. under d. about
5. We can't go .... today as there is no wind.
   a. diving b. biking c. trekking d. windsurfing
6. A .... is a person who shows a place to tourists.
   a. pilot b. visitor c. guide d. nurse

7. Remember that we all have a .... in helping our environment.

a. rule b. role c. ruler d. roll

8. .... I see rubbish on the ground, I throw it in the bin.

a. If b. So c. Although d. Because

9. I'd .... play chess.

a. rather b. prefer c. refer d. got

10. Insects make .... people ill than any other animals.

a. much b. more c. many d. some

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Basmala, clean your room .... (himself).
2. Sugar is .... (bad) for you than fruit.
3. When it rains, the grass .... (got) wet.
4. .... (Does) you taller than your brother?

E Writing

6 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words:

- To your friend Seif about your prediction for the future.
- Your name is Adam and your email address is adam@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is seif@gmail.com.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Exam 6 البحيرة - كوم حماده التعليمية



A Listening

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. What kind of story is Robinson Crusoe? ....
   a. Funny b. Adventure c. Comedy d. Historic
2. What was Crusoe's job? ....
   a. A tailor b. A doctor c. A vet d. A sailor
3. Why did Crusoe's ship sink?-Because there was a terrible ....
   a. storm b. snow c. cloud d. fog
4. Where did Crusoe go after his ship sank?-He went to a nearby ....
   a. animals b. book c. island d. statue

B Language Functions

② Complete the following dialogue:

Omar is talking to Hamdi about visiting the zoo.

Omar : Where did you go yesterday?
Hamdi : ① ....
Omar : To the zoo! Who did you go with?
Hamdi : ② ....
Omar : ③ .... ?
Hamdi : We went by bus.
Omar : What did you do there?
Hamdi : ④ ....
Omar : ⑤ .... ?
Hamdi : Yes, I enjoyed it a lot.

C Reading Comprehension

③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

Today was a terrible day! My baby sister woke me up at 5 a.m. I was so tired. I went to the kitchen for breakfast, but we had no milk or bread. So my mom asked me to go to the shop but **it** was closed because it was only 6:30 a.m. Then I tried to do my maths homework on my computer but I lost my work as the electricity went off. Although we planned to play football in the afternoon, it was raining. We couldn't play. I hope tomorrow will be better.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage?

----

2. Why did the writer's mother ask him to go to the shop?

----

3. Do you think the writer was happy today? Why/ Why not?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to the ....

a. milk　b. bread　c. shop　d. breakfast

5. The word "terrible" means very ....

a. bad　b. good　c. nice　d. pleasant

6. They couldn't play football because it was.......... .

a. deep　b. foggy　c. sunny　d. rainy

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What about going on a big wheel at the .... this weekend.

a. aquarium　b. planetarium　c. stadium　d. funfair

2. Do you think this stone will .... in the water?

a. sink　b. think　c. thank　d. thick

3. A car door is made of ....

a. wool　b. metal　c. wood　d. leather

4. A person who shows tourists famous places is called a ....

a. gamer　b. farmer　c. guide　d. guard

5. We can turn on the .... to get water.

a. tab　b. tent　c. tap　d. snail

6. You can't go .... today because there is no wind.

a. fishing　b. swimming　c. hunting　d. windsurfing

7. Plants grow in the ....

a. sail b. soil c. seal d. sole

8. Sara cut .... on some broken glass.

a. herself b. myself c. ourselves d. himself

9. How .... your last weekend?

a. did b. was c. were d. does

10. You .... work hard.

a. must b. must to c. mustn't d. shouldn't

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The Nile is .... (long) than the Thames.
2. This table is .... (make) of strong plastic.
3. If water is 100°C, it .... (boiling).
4. I am .... (go) to visit Sinai.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your last weekend"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

6. My sister .... nine years old next month.

a. going b. is going c. will be d. going to

7. Most windows are made of ....

a. wool b. glass c. cotton d. paper

8. We use .... panels to make electricity.

a. solar b. wooden c. woolen d. golden

9. Trees are very good for our .... because they give us clean air.

a. plants b. oceans c. environment d. rubbish

10. Sharks are dangerous sea ....

a. animals b. rocks c. shapes d. subjects

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What did you .... (did) last weekend?
2. An elephant is .... (big) than a camel.
3. Aya sent the letter .... (himself).
4. You must .... (follows) traffic rules.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your favourite sport"

Exam 8 الدقهلية - إدارة شرق المنصورة التعليمية

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. When did Ali go to Sami's house? ....
   a. Last Saturday b. Last Sunday c. Last Monday d. Last Tuesday
2. Which sport did they play? ....
   a. Basketball b. Handball c. Volleyball d. Football
3. What is in the sports center? ....
   a. A playground b. A gym
   c. A swimming pool d. A stadium
4. Who helped Ali with his homework? ....
   a. His father b. His mother c. His friend d. His grandmother

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Salma is talking to Heba about her new shoes.

Salma : I like your new shoes. What are they made of?

Heba : 1 ....

Salma : Leather! 2 ....?

Heba : I bought them last week.

Salma : Who bought them for you?

Heba : 3 ....

Salma : Your father is very nice. 4 ....?

Heba : Because it was my birthday.

Salma : Great. Can you come with me to buy new shoes for me?

Heba : 5 ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Reading is a very helpful habit. It gives us new ideas and it improves our language. You should read in a **quiet** place. You should read different topics. To remember what you read, underline or circle the important points with your pen. Try to discuss what you read with your friends. People read for different goals. Some people read for enjoyment just to feel happy and spend a nice time. Others read for work. Students read for **their** study or research. All of us read the news and the weather report. We also read messages, emails and letters that we receive.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

....

2. How can you remember what you read?

....

3. Why do people read?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The opposite of the underlined word "**quiet**" is ....

a. calm b. good c. better d. noisy

5. Some people read to feel happy. They read for ....

a. enjoyment b. exams c. research d. work

6. The underlined word "**their**" refers to ....

a. points b. people c. topics d. students

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Noha made this cake ....

a. yourselves b. myself c. herself d. himself

2. I'm going .... my friends for dinner tomorrow.

a. meet b. to meet c. met d. meets

3. Which bridge is ....,Tahya Masr Bridge or Qasr El-Nil Bridge?

a. long b. longer c. longest d. the longest

4. You should wear a hat to .... yourself from the sun.

a. protect b. help c. sting d. hit

5. I loved the fish, but I didn't see any whales at the ....

a. aquarium b. funfair c. planetarium d. bowling alley

6. The food was .... We didn't like it all.

a. nice b. terrible c. delicious d. good

7. The .... of Egypt is about 100 million people.

a. pollution b. population c. crowded d. public

8. Don't throw away those glass bottles. We can.......... them.

a. cycle b. recycle c. do d. redo

9. We need to repair the .... to save the water coming down from it.

a. tap b. type c. tape d. tablet

10. We put ....panels on a roof. They produce electricity using the sun.

a. sun b. solar c. moon d. wind

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Did you ....(went) shopping yesterday?
2. Mohamed Salah is the .... (better) player in Egypt.
3. I don't like this hotel .... (but) it is not very modern.
4. There ....(will) be any ordinary cars in the future.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

A famous person "Mohammed Salah"

....

....

....

....



Exam 9 الغربية - إدارة زفتى التعليمية





A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Mum doesn't like ....

   a. watching sports b. playing chess c. eating pizza d. driving cars

2. Dad likes ....

   a. English b. science c. history d. French

3. Nadia is .... years old.

   a. 15 b. 50 c. 5 d. 51

4. Dad is always ....

   a. sad b. happy c. angry d. busy

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Salem and Ameer are talking about playing sports.

Salem : What shall we do tomorrow?

Ameer : 1 ....

Salem : Are you good at playing basketball?

Ameer : 2 .... Do you like playing it?

Salem : 3 ...., but I'm not tall enough.

Ameer : Don't worry. I'm not tall, either. But I practise it a lot.

Salem : Is he good at scoring goals?

Ameer : 4 ....

Salem : I practise it at school or in the club.

Ameer : 5 ....

Salem : I practise it every day.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dear Karim,

I'm really excited that you are going to come and stay with us next week. I'm looking forward to seeing you again. What time is your train going to arrive? We can meet you at the station.

Our new home is <u>by</u> the beach. We can go swimming every day. There are lots of other things to do, too. How about going windsurfing or diving?

On Thursday, grandad is going to visit us. Let's make <u>him</u> a special present. Why don't we find photos of ourselves and our other cousins? We can make him a photo album.

See you on Saturday!

Yours

Maher

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for this letter.

----

2. Where's Maher's new home?

----

3. Do you think Maher's grandad will be happy with the photo album? Why / Why not?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "**by**" means ....

a. across b. beside c. over d. in front of

5. The underlined pronoun "him" refers to ....

a. Maher b. Karim c. grandad d. cousin

6. Karim and Maher can go ....

a. swimming b. windsurfing c. diving d. a,b &c

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We can get electricity from solar ....

a. planes b. panels c. pens d. poles

2. I enjoyed my journey. It was really ....

a. amazing b. amazed c. expensive d. excited

3. I .... with you, you're completely right.

a. describe b. agree c. cross d. disagree

4. This is the .... company in the world.

a. more big b. biggest c. bigger d. big

5. In the museum, we saw a .... of a very old animal. Its bones were very big.

a. sand b. skeleton c. soil d. star

6. "............" means to put something you don't need somewhere.

a. Catch b. Turn to c. Cut down d. Throw away

7. What .... to get high marks?

a. I should do b. should I do c. do I should d. should do

8. During a trekking adventure, you need a .... to help you find the way.

a. tourist b. rider c. guide d. driver

9. .... type of music does he like? He likes pop music.

a. When b. What c. Whose d. Where

10. Cairo is .... than Aswan.

a. crowded b. most crowded c. more crowded d. the most crowded

(5) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What year .... (is) it four years ago?
2. You .... (mustn't) listen to other students ideas.
3. What will holidays .... (been) like in the future?
4. My bed is made .... (up) wood.

E Writing

(6) Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words:

- To your friend Hassan about a future plan for holiday.
- Your name is Sherif and your email address is sherif@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is hassan@gmail.com.

....

....

Exam 10 اسكندرية - وسط التعليمية



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الدائم بعد السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. I go to the beach in ....

a. fall b. winter c. summer d. spring

2. I go there with my ....

a. parents b. school c. friends d. family

3. When a wave comes, I .... up.

a. jump b. throw c. run d. fill

4. On the beach, his brother likes to play with his beach ....

a. bag b. ball c. bike d. car

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mayar asks Donia about her visit to the zoo.

Mayar : Which place did you visit last weekend?

Donia : 1 ....

Mayar : What did you see there?

Donia : 2 ....

Mayar : 3 ....?

Donia : I went with my family.

Mayar : Did you have lunch there?

Donia : 4 .... The food was delicious.

Mayar : 5 ....?

Donia : We went back home at 09:00 in the evening.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Amir. I am twelve years old. We have a small toy shop. Fridays are the busiest days in our shop. So, my mom takes me there to help dad. That's why I like

Fridays. We let children play with the toys in the **store**. My dad says I should watch the toys and make sure nothing is broken. Many children from my school come to the shop and look at our new toys. It is always noisy there because there are a lot of babies and small children. Little girls like to come to see dolls while boys come for cars. Some children just want to play with toys, but some others want to buy **them**. It's a bit tiring for me, but I like going to the shop and helping my father.

A. Choose the following from a,b,c,or d:

1. The underlined word "them" refers to ....

a. boys b. girls c. toys d. parents

2. The word "store" means a ....

a. house b. shop c. town d. school

3. Amir is .... years old .

a. 7 b. 8 c. 12 d. 10

B. Answer the following question:

4. What is the passage about?

....

5. What do the girls like to do at the shop?

....

6. Why do you think Amir loves Fridays?

....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The car can't go into this street. It's very ....

a. wide b. narrow c. deep d. low

2. He used a .... to write down what happened to him.

a. diary b. dairy c. dialogue d. diagram

3. To .... means to get money by working.

a. fly b. grow c. feed d. earn

4. Terrible means very ....

a. good b. relaxed c. bad d. relaxing

5. How long is the Cairo-Alexandria desert .... ?

a. street b. way c. line d. road

6. The .... is the most dangerous sea animal in the ocean.

a. camel b. shark c. jellyfish d. octopus

7. .... will do some of the jobs that people do today.

a. Birds b. Animals c. Robots d. Rabbits

8. Mahmoud, ... the poor.

a. help b. helps c. helping d. helped

9. Ola, do you do the washing .... ?

a. yourselves b. ourselves c. yourself d. themselves

10. My sister feels tired if she .... a lot of TV.

a. watch b. watched c. watching d. watches

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My pencil case .... (are) made of plastic.
2. Are you going to .... (visiting) Sinai?
3. I'm .... (tall) than my friend.
4. She passed the exam .... (so) it was difficult.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Life in Ancient Egypt"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Exam 11 الفيوم - إدارة سنورس التعليمية



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. The Tahya Masr Bridge opened in .... 2019.

   a. May b. December c. October d. April

2. The bridge has a/an .... floor.

   a. ceramic b. glass c. plastic d. wood

3. The bridge crosses the Nile's .... Island.

   a. Maadi b. Embaba c. Gazira d. Warraq

4. The best time to cross the bridge is at ....

   a. night b. the morning c. sunset d. the after

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Reem and Dalia are talking about Dalia's cousin.

Dalia : This is a photo of my cousin.

Reem : 1 ....?

Dalia : Her name is Aisha.

Reem : 2 ....?

Dalia : She is 13 years old.

Reem : Where does she live?

Dalia : 3 ....

Reem : What's her favourite sport?

Dalia : 4 ....

Reem : Does she go to a prep school?

Dalia : 5 ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Nader is a famous teacher of science in a prep school for boys and girls. He likes his job very much. He is also helpful to his students. He helps them to do experiments in the science lab. He enjoys growing flowers in the school garden. He is about twenty five years old. He is married. He has got two daughters and one son. He starts work at half past seven. He finishes <u>it</u> at half past two pm. He's very kind to his students. They will always go to him if they have any problems.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage?

----

2. Do you think students like Mr. Nader? Why/ Why not?

----

3. How many children has Mr. Nader got?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Mr. Nader enjoys .... flowers in the school garden.

a. drawing b. planning c. growing d. painting

5. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....

a. work b. garden c. lab d. problem

6. The word "**helpful**" means that he.......... .

a. learns a lot b. has problems c. grows flowers d. helps others

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We learn a lot about the Earth and the moon at the ....

a. museum b. aquarium c. planetarium d. funfair

2. The Cairo .... is the tallest building in Egypt.

a. Bridge b. City c. Tunnel d. Tower

3. We can't go .... today because there is no wind.

a. trekking b. diving c. zip lining d. windsurfing

4. There is .... at the top of the mountain. Look, it is all white.

a. snow b. rain c. wind d. storm

5. Walls are usually made of ....

a. bricks b. cotton c. wool d. flour

6. Don't throw away those glass bottles. We can .... them.

a. cycle b. recycle c. cook d. eat

7. Some houses fell to the ground after the ....

a. space b. earthquake c. igloo d. temperature

8. .... you like classical music?

a. Does b. Is c. Do d. Are

9. Old cars are noisier .... modern cars.

a. as b. than c. more d. most

10. I think we .... a driverless car in the future.

a. have b. having c. had d. will have

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When I .... (gets) up, I make my bed.
2. What .... (are) Ahmed going to do next Friday?
3. .... (Has) you got any brothers or sisters?
4. There .... (was) too many people in the street yesterday.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Different houses"

....

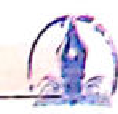
....

....

....

....

Exam 12 بنى سويف - إدارة ببا التعليمية



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Our planet is the ....
   a. Earth b. Mars c. Jupiter d. Uranus
2. .... trees keeps our air healthy.
   a. Buying b. Climbing c. Selling d. Planting
3. Throwing rubbish is ....
   a. safe b. healthy c. dangerous d. good
4. We should help to .... our planet.
   a. save b. throw c. plant d. draw

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Adam asks Essam about a story he is reading.

Adam : What are you reading?
Essam : ❶.. .
Adam : What kind of story is it?
Essam : ❷..
Adam : Adventure! ❸..?
Essam : It's about "Robinson Crusoe".
Adam : Who is Robinson Crusoe?
Essam : ❹............................ His ship sank and he swam to an island.
Adam : ❺..?
Essam : Yes, he was alone on the island.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I don't know which job I want to do when I'm older, but I think that education is very important. I hope that I pass my exams so that I can go to university. I'm going to work

hard. If I go to university, I'll study maths. **It** is my best subject. I don't like flying, so I don't want to travel around the world. I want to get a good job in Egypt. I want to teach maths. If I have enough money, I'll buy an **apartment** near the Red Sea, I'll get married but, how many children will I have? I don't know.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

....

2. What do you think about the writer?

....

3. What's the writer's favourite subject?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The writer wants to get a good job in ....

a. Syria b. England c. Egypt d. America

5. The underlined word "**apartment**" means ....

a. flat b. park c. garden d. beach

6. The underlined word "it" refers to ....

a. job b. maths c. work d. money

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like playing on the big .... at the funfair.

a. wall b. whale c. wheel d. hole

2. Terrible means very ....

a. good b. relaxed c. fun d. bad

3. Cairo .... is very amazing with its view from the top.

a. Bridge b. Tower c. Tour d. Tunnel

4. The teacher was angry because all the students were very ....

a. deep b. empty c. quiet d. noisy

5. The ship sank because of a terrible ....

a. windy b. storm c. island d. heat

6. My grandfather was a .... and visited countries all over the world.

a. seller b. driver c. farmer d. sailor

7. A .... is something you sleep in when you go camping.

a. camel b. guide c. tent d. journey

8. Are you going .... your homework this evening before you eat?

a. to doing b. doing c. do d. to do

9. Sara has a jacket to keep .... warm.

a. herself b. myself c. yourself d. himself

10. In my opinion, my mum is .... cook in the world.

a. good b. better c. best d. the best

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She went .... (shop) yesterday.
2. Heba is the .... (taller) girl in the class.
3. The bag is made.............. (by) leather.
4. You .... (must to) wash your hands before eating.

E Writing

6 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words:

- To your friend Amina about nature reserve.
- Your name is Aisha and your email address is aisha@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is amina@gmail.com.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....





المنيا - إدارة العدوة التعليمية



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Last Monday was ....'s birthday.
   a. Arwa   b. Mona   c. Dalia   d. Mariam
2. They went to the ....
   a. museum   b. bowling alley   c. funfair   d. aquarium
3. Did dad go to the museum with Arwa? ....
   a. Yes, he does.   b. Yes, he did.   c. Yes, he will.   d. No, he didn't
4. They saw some ....
   a. old statues   b. old columns   c. old gardens   d. old pictures

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Nageh is telling Basiony about his visit to Al Azhar Park.

Basiony : Where did you go yesterday?
Nageh : 1 ....
Basiony : 2 ....?
Nageh : I went with my friends.
Basiony : 3 ....?
Nageh : We saw trees and flowers.
Basiony : Did you see any fountains?
Nageh : 4 ....
Basiony : Did you enjoy your time there?
Nageh : 5 ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

New technology means that forms of communication are changing all the time. For example, think about how phones have developed over the last 20 years. In the past, people used to type messages using special letters on their phones. Then, people started to touch the screens on their phones to type their message.

Now phones are able to understand people's voices and many people are speaking to their phones to send messages. Some scientists think that phones are going to know what people think in the future. Perhaps our phones will read our <u>**facial**</u> expressions before <u>**they**</u> send a message!

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the best title for the passage?

....

2. What did people use to send messages on phones?

....

3. Do you think that phones will know what we think in the future?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "**they**" refers to ....

a. messages b. phones c. people d. scientists

5. Phones are able to understand people now ....

a. shapes b. forms c. voices d. messages

6. The underlined word "**facial**" means for the ....

a. brain b. arm c. hand d. face

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mohsen went to the hotel and .... there for three days.

a. staying b. stayed c. stays d. stay

2. I .... something to drink when I'm hungry.

a. had b. hasn't c. have d. has

3. I'm going to .... Sinai next month.

a. visiting b. visited c. visit d. visits

4. We can learn about things and people in the past in ....

a. physics b. science c. geography d. history

5. Cars and planes are kinds of ....

a. ports b. transport c. trips d. subjects

6. The balls are very heavy at the ....

a. swimming pool b. stadium c. handball d. bowling alley

7. The .... of our school is wide and full of plants and flowers.

a. window b. entrance c. end d. door

8. Can you .... what you mean?- I can't understand.

a. take b. read c. explain d. stay

9. I like to have a meal with my friends in the school ....

a. laboratory b. canteen c. gate d. class

10. It's good to .... your ideas with others.

a. give b. cover c. share d. protect

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Did they help .... (ourselves)?
2. Abeer is .... (tallest) than Mariam.
3. Did you .... (gave) your uncle his jacket?
4. I think it will .... (rained) tomorrow.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A visit to the pyramids"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Exam 14 أسيوط - إدارة أسيوط التعليمية



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Many ....enjoy walking across the Tahya Masr Bridge.
   a. animals b. birds c. people d. buses
2. It has a/an .... floor.
   a. wood b. glass c. iron d. rubber
3. You can see the .... under your feet.
   a. river. b. sea c. lake d. cars
4. They best time to cross the bridge is at ....
   a. sunset b. night c. afternoon d. morning

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mostafa and Ziad are talking about their next weekend.

Mostafa : Where are you going next weekend?
Ziad : ❶..
Mostafa : The desert! ❷..?
Ziad : To go trekking in the mountains.
Mostafa : ❸..?
Ziad : No, I don't think it is tiring.
Mostafa : Who is going to go with you?
Ziad : ❹.. What about you?
Mostafa : ❺..
Ziad : That's great! I like diving, too.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Santiago was an old fisherman .He felt worried because he didn't catch any fish for a long time. One day, he caught a big fish, but the fish was stronger than Santiago. It took two days for him to pull the fish to his boat. Then, the sharks came and ate it.

Then Santiago returned to the beach, <u>**He**</u> had no fish, only a skeleton. Santiago felt weak and slept for a long time but fishermen saw that big fish and knew that he was very brave,

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of this passage?

----

2. Why was Santiago worried?

----

3. What did the other fisherman think of Santiago?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Santiago took .... days to pull the fish to his boat.

a. two b. three c. four d. five

5. Santiago had .... fish when he returned to the beach.

a. zero b. one c. four d. ten

6. The underlined pronoun (<u>He</u>) refers to ....

a. Santiago b. fish c. boat d. shark

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Let's go on the big wheel at the .... this weekend.

a. funfair b. aquarium c. museum d. stadium

2. We need to buy some more water. This bottle is ....

a. noisy b. crowded c. empty d. low

3. A .... is someone who works on a boat or a ship.

a. vet b. sailor c. nurse d. scientist

4. You can use a/an .... to cook food or bread.

a. oven b. tap c. brick d. roof

5. We can't go .... today because there is no wind.

a. diving b. windsurfing c. biking d. swimming

6. I didn't buy this cake. I made it ....

a. myself b. herself c. yourself d. himself

7. Don't throw away those glass bottles. We can .... them.

a. space b. grow c. planet d. recycle

8. I hope we .... on the moon in the future.

a. will go b. going c. goes d. went

9. Some houses fell to the ground after the ....

a. cool b. earthquake c. space d. warm

10. They .... the bus to the city last Sunday.

a. takes b. take c. took d. taking

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You .... (must) play games in the road.
2. Have you got a new jacket? Yes, I .... (do).
3. Books are .... (make) of paper.
4. My uncle is the .... (older) person in my family.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"An important building in Egypt "The Grand Egyptian Museum"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Exam 15 الوادى الجديد - إدارة الداخله التعليمية



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Al Azhar Park is the ....and most beautiful Park in Cairo.
   a. smallest b. largest c. longest d. furthest
2. That Park has a few .... and plants.
   a. people b. benches c. trees d. palms
3. People .... going there.
   a. hate b. dislike c. don't like d. enjoy
4. Lots of people go there because it is very ....
   a. beautiful b. smallest c. small d. worse

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Kareem is talking with Ali about a visit to the funfair.

Kareem : How was your weekend?

Ali : ❶.. .

Kareem : ❷..?

Ali : I went to the funfair.

Kareem : ❸..?

Ali : At about 7am.

Kareem : ❹..?

Ali : I rode on the big wheel.

Kareem : How did you feel after your visit?

Ali : ❺..

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dina Hassan is a famous architect. She is working on a project for houses for the future. **They** will be a bit different to our houses today. Dina thinks we'll need more gardens in the future but there won't be much space. So the garden will be on the roof.

And she thinks people will all use electric cars in the future, so there will be chargers for electric cars next to the house. People will get electricity by using solar panels and a wind turbine, In 2050, she thinks, there will be robots to do all the housework and drones to bring food and parcels to the house. We'll use very strong plastic bricks and a lot of glass and metal. Oh it's beautiful. I think I like living in this house!

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

----

2. What does the underlined word "**They**" refer to?

----

3. What do you think the world will be in 2050?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. "Homes of the future" will be a bit .... to our houses today.

a. look like b. similar c. different d. the same

5. The gardens will be on the roof because there won't be much ....

a. spice b. speed c. spicy d. space

6. Solar panels and wind turbines make ....

a. food b. electricity c. water d. iron

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We learn a lot about the Earth and the moon at the ....

a. bowling alley b. aquarium c. planetarium d. football stadium

2. Do you like working with other people, or do you prefer to work .... ?

a. lonely b. alone c. only d. not

3. .... is the time when the sun disappears.

a. Sunlight b. Sunscreen c. Sunset d. Sun cream

4. We can't sail because there is no ....

a. snow b. wind c. train d. fog

5. Gold is an expensive ....

a. plastic b. metal c. cotton d. glass

6. Earth is one of eight .... that go around the sun.

a. planets b. planes c. plates d. plants

7. Ahmed's mother was .... when he didn't phone her.

a. interesting b. funny c. worried d. excited

8. A: Did you have a mobile phone? B: Yes, I .... one.

a. did b. had c. was d. has

9. Old cars are .... than modern cars.

a. noisier b. noisy c. noisiest d. as noisy

10. Sarah has a jacket to keep .... warm.

a. myself b. himself c. themselves d. herself

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The lamp is .... (making) of glass.
2. There .... (is) too many people in the street yesterday.
3. If I .... (drank) much coffee, I don't sleep at night.
4. We .... (must) throw rubbish into the ocean.

E Writing

6 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words:

- To your friend Mohamed about the Tahya Masr Bridge.
- Your name is Farid and your email address is farid@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is mohamed@yahoo.com.

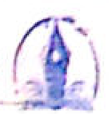
....

....

....

....

....



Exam 16 البحر الاحمر - إدارة سفاجا التعليمية



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Hisham's mum took him to the ....

   a. shops b. school c. hospital d. park

2. His mother wanted to buy him a new ....

   a. shoes b. shirt c. school bag d. shorts

3. They went there by ....

   a. car b. bus c. plane d. train

4. They came back home at .... o'clock.

   a. six b. seven c. eight d. nine

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Eman is talking with Hend about last weekend.

Eman : Where did you go last weekend?

Hend : I went to Hurghada.

Eman : 1 ....?

Hend : Yes. It's very beautiful.

Eman : Who did you go with?

Hend : 2 ....

Eman : 3 ....?

Hend : We went by car.

Eman : What did you do there?

Hend : 4 ....

Eman : Did you enjoy your weekend?

Hend : 5 ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Our school made a trip to Al Azhar park. The trip was very exciting. The place was very beautiful. Many people came from different places to enjoy <u>it</u>. We played, watched the beautiful fish in the lake and took some photos. We had our lunch in a restaurant there. Then we played again until it became dark. The park closed at seven o'clock, we left sadly and hoped we'll visit it once again.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage?

----

2. What did they do there?

----

3. Do you think the trip was beautiful?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The school made a school .... to Al Azhar.

a. trip b. project c. research d. party

5. The underlined word "**it**" refers to ....

a. the trip b. the school c. the park d. people

6. The park closed at .... o'clock.

a. six b. seven c. eight d. nine

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We learn a lot about the Earth and the moon at the ....

a. aquarium b. planetarium c. funfair d. stadium

2. I don't like Jazz, ... I like pop.

a. but b. because c. so d. and

3. I'm going .... rock climbing next weekend.

a. try b. to try c. trying d. tries

4. Ahmed didn't come to school yesterday .... he was ill.

a. because b. but c. so d. and

5. We go won't ....today because there is no wind.

a. climbing b. windsurfing c. trekking d. kayaking

6. We .... follow traffic rules.

a. must b. mustn't c. should d. shouldn't

7. The Tahya Masr .... goes over the Nile in Cairo.

a. city b. tower c. bridge d. tunnel

8. The roads are dangerous when it is .... because you can't see very well.

a. stormy b. snowy c. sunny d. foggy

9. I think we .... have more robots in our school.

a. will b. can c. are d. would

10. Sara has a jacket to keep .... warm.

a. yourself b. myself c. herself d. itself

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He .... (driving) to Alex last Saturday.
2. A train is ....(fast) than a bus.
3. A car door .... (are) made of metal.
4. If people ....(didn't) eat well, they become weak.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Transport today and in the past"

....

....

....

....

....



مطروح - إدارة مطروح التعليمية





1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. The shark is a sea ....
   a. bird b. plant c. animal d. insect
2. The shark is very ....
   a. safe b. dangerous c. funny d. weak
3. The shark lives in ....
   a. oceans b. rivers c. pools d. jungles
4. The shark has very strong ....
   a. glasses b. teeth c. legs d. shells

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Nader and Hamdy are talking about Mohamed Salah.

Nader : Do you know Mohamed Salah?

Hamdy : 1 ....

Nader : 2 ....?

Hamdy : He was born in 1992.

Nader : 3 ....?

Hamdy : He plays in England for Liverpool.

Nader : Is he good at scoring goals?

Hamdy : 4 ....

Nader : What did you know about his character?

Hamdy : 5 ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Every winter, thousands of tourists come to Egypt from all over the world. They come from Europe, Asia and Africa to spend their holiday in our great country, Egypt. They also come to enjoy the sunshine of Egypt. They enjoy the wonderful beaches

in Sharm Elsheikh and Hurghada Most of them visit the Egyptian Museum in Cairo to see the statue of Tutankhamun. They also visit the Pyramids and the Sphinx at Giza. When it is very cold in their countries, they visit Luxor and Aswan.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do tourists come to Egypt?

....

2. When do they come to Egypt?

....

3. Where do they see the statue of Tutankhamun?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun **it** refers to ....

a. Hurghada b. the weather c. museum d. Tutankhamun

5. Tourists like to see .... at Giza.

a. temples b. the Pyramids c. statues d. beaches

6. Egypt is a .... place for tourists to visit.

a. bad b. sad c. good d. terrible

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like to .... diving when I visit Hurghada.

a. play b. go c. do d. have

2. I think people .... on the moon in the future.

a. live b. living c. lived d. will live

3. The ship .... because of a terrible storm.

a. flew b. drove c. sank d. swam

4. I have no .... in my bedroom for a big table.

a. space b. spices c. column d. fountain

5. We must .... our environment.

a. damage b. protect c. stop d. hit

6. I always write the most important events in my ---------- .

a. dairy b. daily c. diary d. date

7. If it ---------- hot, I always stay at home.

a. be b. was c. is d. are

8. The Egyptian Museum has a lot of valuable ---------- .

a. sharks b. treasures c. adventures d. tents

9. My sunglasses ---------- of plastic.

a. is made b. is making c. are made d. were make

10. We need to buy more water because the bottle is ---------- .

a. full b. busy c. noisy d. empty

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ------------ (Do) you go to the park yesterday?
2. Cairo is ------------ (most) crowded than Alexandria.
3. Animals can clean ------------ (himself).
4. You ------------ (must) be noisy in the library.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Things in your home"

Exam 18 الاقصر - إدارة إسنا التعليمية





A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. What is the most dangerous sea animal in the ocean? ....
   a. The whale b. The shark c. The jellyfish d. The octopus
2. How many teeth does a shark use in its life? ....
   a. 200 b. 200,000 c. 2,000 d. 20,000
3. A: What is the shark? B: It's a ...... animal.
   a. desert b. forest c. sea d. wild
4. What is the text about? ....
   a. The whale b. The shark
   c. The dolphin d. The jellyfish

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is asking Said about what he did last weekend.

Ahmed : Where did you spend your last weekend?

Said : ❶ ....

Ahmed : ❷ ....?

Said : I went with my cousins.

Ahmed : What did you do there?

Said : ❸ ....

Ahmed : Did you enjoy your time there?

Said : ❹ ....

Ahmed : ❺ ....?

Said : Sure, you can come with me the next time.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The 382 metre-long Qasr al-Nil Bridge, with its two lion statues at each end crosses over the Nile. It's 10.5 metres wide. There was a bridge in its place, Gezira Bridge in 1872 but the bridge became too busy, so Cairo needed a bigger **one**. King Fuad opened Qasr al-Nil Bridge in 1933. The bridge took about thirty months to complete. During that time ferries, boats and **feluccas** once again were the main transport to the island, crossing from the east side of the Nile in front of the Semaramis Hotel to the other side of Zamalek. Many people like to walk along the bridge in the evenings. You can walk across it from the east side to Gezira Island. There are wonderful views of the river from the bridge.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What does the underlined word "**one**" refer to?

 ----

2. Who built Qasr al Nil Bridge?

 ----

3. Why do you think Many people like to walk along the bridge in the evenings?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Qasr al-Nil Bridge is .... m wide.
 a. 105 b. 382 c. 10.5 d. 115
5. The word "felucca" is similar to a ....
 a. small boat b. big boat c. small ship d. big ship
6. The bridge took about ....
 a. two years b. two and a half years
 c. three years d. four years

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Let's go on the big wheel at the ....
 a. funfair b. aquarium c. museum d. stadium
2. My father likes to listen to .... music. He likes old songs.
 a. traditional b. pop c. jazz d. rock
3. Our school gave prizes to some students for their ....,
 a. dreams b. achievement c. bridges d. floor
4. Car Windows are made of ....
 a. plastic b. sand c. stone d. glass

5. We have nature .... to keep plants, birds and animals.

a. bus stations b. cinema's c. reserves d. bookshops

6. He took my mobile .... mistake.

a. by b. for c. into d. up

7. A bike is .... expensive than a scooter.

a. most b. many c. less d. least

8. There are dark clouds, it ....

a. will rain b. is raining

c. is going to rain d. rains

9. There .... no cars in ancient Egypt.

a. were b. is c. was d. has

10. The Grand Egyptian Museum has .... for a lot of objects.

a. house b. space c. fountain d. entrance

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My uncle .... (buy) his house last summer.
2. I can't walk very well because I hurt .... (himself) while playing football.
3. When a turtle is in danger, it .... (go) into its shell.
4. You .... (shouldn't) share your ideas with others.

E Writing

6 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words:

- To your friend Saleh about ways to help the environment.
- Your name is Amr and your email address is amr@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is saleh@hotmail.com.

....

....

....

....

....

Exam 19 الأزهر الشريف - البحر الأحمر



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Yesterday, we went to the ....
   a. Zoo b. Park c. Pyramids d. Museum
2. We had a lot of ....
   a. fans b. fun c. funny d. far

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mona : Hello, Heba. How are you?

Heba : ❶.. What about you?

Mona : I'm fine, too ❷..?

Heba : I visited the Egyptian Museum last holiday.

Mona : ❸..?

Heba : Because I like historical places.

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The teacher was angry because the students were ....
   a. good b. clever c. noisy d. happy
2. Next Thursday will ...... the 1st of Ramadan.
   a. bee b. be c. been d. being
3. We can't sail because there is no ....
   a. fog b. storm c. wind d. clouds
4. My sister and I made it by ....
   a. myself b. himself c. themselves d. ourselves
5. Be careful when you ...... the road.
   a. across b. a cross c. cross d. course

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

There are many beautiful mosques, but perhaps the most unusual is the Great Mosque in Mali, Africa. **It** is not made of bricks like most mosques; it is made of something called mud. This is the brown soil you often find at the bottom of the river. It is very soft in water. If you dry it, it becomes very hard. The building is usually very strong, but there is a problem. People must put new mud on the building every year. If they don't, it will collapse when it rains.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

....

2. Do you think we should keep ancient buildings? Why/Why not?

....

3. What is unusual about the Great Mosque in Mail?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "It" refers to ....

a. mud b. Africa
c. Mali d. The Great Mosque

5. What do you think the word (collapse) means? ....

a. fall down b. get bigger c. disappear d. turn to water

5 Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. your - **How** - weekend - was? ....
2. person - a - pilot - flies - **A** - is - who - a - plane. ....
3. cook - this evening - your - is going to - meal - **Who**? ....
4. breakfast - **What** - have - for - did - you - morning - this? ....

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"How to keep our beaches clean"

....

....

....

Exam 20 الأزهر الشريف - بالقليوبية الأزهرية



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. The Red Sea was ....
   a. amazed b. surprised c. boring d. amazing
2. He wanted to try ...... but there was no time.
   a. climbing b. serving c. windsurfing d. trekking

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Sara asks Mona about this visit to the zoo.

Sara : Which place did you visit last weekend?

Mona : ① ....

Sara : What did you see there?

Mona : ② ....

Sara : ③ ....?

Mona : I went with my family.

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Yesterday, we had a/an ...... at school.
   a. theatre b. stadium c. concert d. aquarium
2. Today, the weather is ...... than yesterday.
   a. as cold b. coldest c. colder d. the coldest
3. Behave ...... or I'll punish you.
   a. himself b. herself c. yourself d. themselves
4. Remember to be ...... when you plan your house.
   a. active b. creative c. voluntary d. related
5. If you ...... a jellyfish, it stings you.
   a. touched b. will touch c. touches d. touch

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

We have a lot of great projects and achievements in Egypt so we should be proud of our country. One of the newest and greatest achievements is the Tahya Masr Bridge. It's the world's widest suspension bridge. More than 40,000 people helped to build it. Work began in May 2016. It opened in May 2019. <u>**It**</u> is 67.36m wide. It crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. More than **100,000** people live on the Island. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset, for a beautiful view of the city. It's really a great project.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why should we be proud of our country?

....

2. What is the best time to cross the bridge?

....

3. What can you see when you walk on the bridge?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "**It**" refers to ....

a. The bridge b. Warraq c. Egypt d. Helwan

5. The bridge has a ...... floor.

a. plastic b. stone c. brick d. glass

5 Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. you - listen - <u>**Did**</u> - to - music - yesterday? ....
2. who - <u>**A**</u> - person - a - photographer - photographs - is - takes. ....
3. going - next - <u>**What**</u> - Saturday - are - do - you - to? ....
4. will - tonight - see - if - go out - <u>**Who**</u> - you - you? ....

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Famous places in Egypt"

....

....

Exam 21 الأزهر الشريف - قطاع المعاهد الأزهرية



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Robinson Crusoe is an adventure story by ....
   a. Daniel Defoe b. Daniel Etto c. Dalia d. Daina
2. Crusoe swam to a nearby ....
   a. city b. country c. town d. island

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Farah is asking Jana about the Great Pyramid in Giza.

Farah: Did you visit the Great Pyramid?

Jana : 1 ....

Farah: 2 ....?

Jana : It is in Giza.

Farah: 3 ....?

Jana : It is 139 m high.

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Great Pyramid is 146 metres ....
   a. wide b. high c. long d. heavy
2. Is Amira going to ...... trekking this afternoon?
   a. go b. goes c. went d. going
3. The ...... are made of cotton.
   a. televisions b. tables c. lamps d. cushions
4. Mariam ...... take a taxi. She is very late.
   a. can b. must c. can't d. mustn't
5. An engineer is the person who ...... machines and engines.
   a. plays b. acts c. designs d. cooks

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Many traditional houses in the past were round. Today, many modern houses are also round. Why is this? There are lots of reasons! A round shape means the building is very strong. This is important when there is an earthquake or strong winds. Also, heavy snow or rain will fall from the **roof**. A round house is also easier to keep warm or cool. It is also quieter inside a round building than a building that is a rectangle or square in shape. Finally, a round building uses fewer materials, so it is cheaper to make. **It** also has more space inside. How fantastic!

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What was the shape of many traditional houses in the past?

----

2. What does a round shape mean?

----

3. What happens to round buildings when there's heavy snow or rain?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The "**roof**" is the place ------ of a building.

a. at the bottom   b. at the top   c. outside   d. inside

5. The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to a ------ building.

a. round   b. space   c. square   d. rectangle

5 Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. a-teacher-who-students-**A**-is-person-teaches.----------------------------
2. wear - **What** - tomorrow - you - going to - are?----------------------------
3. will - take - this year - you - go - you - a holiday - **Where** - if?--------------------
4. play - musical instrument - a - you - **Can**?----------------------------

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Sea Animals"

Exam 22 الازهر الشريف - لمنطقة المنيا الأزهرية



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. You can plant a ....
   a. nut b. plum c. tomato d. banana
2. Trees help to keep our ...... healthy.
   a. land b. air c. sky d. water

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Taha is asking Ramy about his favourite hobby.

Taha : What is your favourite hobby?

Ramy: 1 ....

Taha : Playing football! 2 ....?

Ramy: In the club.

Taha : 3 ....?

Ramy: By bus.

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I ...... tired when it's late.
   a. feel b. feels c. felt d. feeling
2. Will we live ...... the moon.
   a. in b. on c. at d. above
3. The lamp is made of ....
   a. stone b. leather c. glass d. wool
4. He out on a hat to protect ....
   a. myself b. herself c. itself d. himself
5. My grandmother is ...... oldest member in the family.
   a. the b. a c. an d. some

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Plastic is everywhere! we use it for many different things. The problem is, plastic stays in the environment for a very long time. We must try to use other materials- paper and glass because they are easier to recycle. We mustn't throw away rubbish.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why is there a lot of plastic in the environment?

   ----

2. Which two materials are easier to recycle than plastic?

   ----

3. Do we use plastic for many things?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. We ------ throw away rubbish.
   a. should   b. must   c. mustn't   d. have to
5. ------ is hard to recycle.
   a. Plastic   b. Paper   c. Glass   d. Wool

5 Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. whiteboard - **Is** - a - classroom - there - your - in? ----------------------
2. scientist - is - a - who/science - **A** - studies - person ----------------------
3. after - to - school - going - travel - home - **Are you** - by bus?

   ----

4. tonight - will - if - do - you - TV - don't - **What** - watch - you?

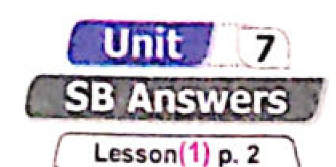
E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Reading"

SB / WB Answers

اجابات كتابي الطالب والتدريبات



Unit 7

SB Answers

Lesson(1) p. 2

Find

Robinson Crusoe is an adventure story. Daniel Defoe wrote it.

Page 3

1 **1- Read the answers.**

His friends went to...

- a football stadium - a funfair
- an aquarium - a planetarium
- a bowling alley - a sports centre

2- Verbs in the past simple tense.

- What did you do last weekend?
- I watched a football match. [regular]
- I rode on the big wheel.
- I saw an exhibition about dolphins.
- I looked at the stars. [regular]
- I went bowling.
- I played tennis. [regular]

2 **Listen to Dina talk about her birthday.**

- Diary 2

3 **Listen to Dina again and answer the questions.**

1- It was last Saturday.

2- They went Saturday night and four months ago.

3- It is Tuesday.

Lesson(2) p. 4

1 **Read Adam's diary. What do you think the word nervous means and why does Adam feel this?**

- If you are nervous, you feel worried about something.
- Adam felt this because it was his first day at a new school.

2 **Read again and answer the questions.**

1- They moved on Saturday 7th May.

2- It was in Cairo.

3- He felt/was quite nervous.

4- He was happy. We know this because he said Sami was friendly, and he drew a smiley face.

5- Students' own answers.

3 **Read another page from Adam's diary. What is great?**

- The sports centre is great.

Page 5

4 **Read all the diary pages again. Who did Adam do these things with?**

1- He drove to Alexandria with his family.

2- He went shopping with his mum.

3- He had lunch in the school canteen with Sami.

4- He played football with Sami and Sami's brothers.

5- He did his homework with his mum.

6- He went to the sports centre with his dad.

5 **Ask and answer the questions in pairs.?**

1- He doesn't usually like football.

2- Because Sami's wanted to play.

3- Suggested answer: Because it is fun to play games together and it is a good way to know new people.

Lesson(3) p. 6

1 **Listen to an interview with the musician Marvin Allstar. Which four types of music do they talk about?**

1- ✔ jazz 4- ✔ pop 5- ✔ rock 6- ✔ traditional

2 **Listen again and complete these sentences.**

1- jazz 2- four 3- trumpet 4- traditional

3 **Listen and write the types of music you hear in your notebook.**

1. traditional 2. classical 3. pop

4. opera 5. jazz 6. rock

4 **Listen to the interview with Marvin again. Write down the three questions that the interviewer asks.**

1- What type of music do you like?

2- When did you learn to play the trumpet?

3- Do you like pop music?

5 **Listen to the questions again and answer the questions.**

1- (1) What type of music do you like? ↓

(2) When did you learn to play the trumpet? ↓

(3) Do you like pop music? ↑

2- The voice falls with the first two questions (whquestions) but rises with the last question (a yes/no question).

Page 7

7 **Correct the underlined words.**

1- is 2- do 3- went 4- haven't 5- she

Lesson(4) p. 8

1 **Read about Robinson Crusoe. What did Crusoe want to find?**

He wanted to find a warm place to sleep/a cave.

2 **Read the story again and answer the questions.**

1- It's an adventure story.

2- He arrived on 14th December.

3- He ate a dead fish and a coconut. He preferred the coconut.

4- Because it rained last night and he got cold and wet.

Lesson(5) p. 9

1 Answer the questions.

1- He was a brave person, because he lived on the island alone. He was probably patient, too.
2- There were no people on the island. There was a jungle and some rocks but not much for Crusoe to eat, and it was cold at night.
3- Students' own answers.
4- The storm was terrible. The dead fish was terrible. The coconut was great.
5- Students' own answers.

2 Listen to three people talk about their weekend. Match the person to the photos.

1. c 2. b 3. a

3 Listen again and match to make sentences.

1. b 2. d 3. a 4. c

Lesson(6) p. 10

1 Read Dalia's diary and the writing tips. What was her opinion of the terrible day? Why?

She thought it was a terrible day because her baby brother woke her up early, there was no milk or bread for breakfast, the shop was closed, her laptop stopped working and they could not have a barbecue.

2 Read the diary again and answer the questions.

1. Because you write a diary about things that happened in the past.
2. Because you write about things that happened to you.
3. Then
4. Suggested answers: feel, think, believe

Lesson(7) p. 11

1 Look and say the type of music. Which do you like?

A- classical B- traditional
C- jazz D- opera

WB Answers

Lesson(1) p. 70

1 Where did these people go? Complete the sentences with words from the box.

1- funfair 2- aquarium 3- football stadium
4- planetarium 5- bowling alley

2 Correct the underlined words in these sentences.

1- yesterday 2- last week
3- December 4- this morning

3 Answer the questions.

1. It was yesterday.

Lesson(2) p. 71

1 Complete Nahla's diary with the correct past tense form of the verbs in brackets.

1- had 2- was 3- took 4- went
5- didn't go 6- enjoyed 7- visited 8- saw
9- remembered 10- taught 11- ate 12- came

2 Hany did all the things on his plan for last Saturday. Write the sentences in the past tense.

1- He took the bus to the city.
2- He visited a sports centre.
3- He played tennis with Hatem.
4- He had lunch in a café.
5- He went shopping with his grandad.
6- He bought some new shoes.
7- He watched TV with his family.
8- He went to bed early!

3 Read about Ismail's family. Where should they go and what activities should they do for Ismail's birthday? Make a decision and give your reasons.

They should go to the beach because Dad can swim, Mum can make a picnic, Ismail can be outside and play with a beach ball. Ismail's sister can build sand castles because she likes making things.

Lesson(3) p. 72

1 Write the type of music for each photo. Tick (✔) the music you like and compare your answers with your partner.

1. classical 2. traditional 3. jazz
4. opera 5. pop

2 Match to make questions.

1. f 2. e 3. a
4. b 5. c 6. d

4 Read the answers. Write the questions.

1. When did you go to the museum?
2. Do you like jazz?
3. Have you got a sister/any sisters?
4. Why do you like fruit?
5. How do you come/travel to school?
6. Can you play chess?

Lesson(4) p. 73

1 Read and match the words with their meanings.

1. d 2. a 3. e
4. b 5. c

2 Now complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 1.

1. coconuts 2. sailor 3. alone
4. terrible 5. sink

3 Does the noun sink mean the same as the verb? Use a dictionary to find out.

No, it does not. The noun sink is a place where you wash plates and cups in a kitchen. The verb sink means to go down in water.

4 Put the events from another day in Crusoe's diary in the correct order.

a. 2 b. 4 c. 3 d.1

5 **Who do you think is on the island? Write five questions Crusoe can ask the person when they meet.**

1. What's your name?
2. Where are you from?
3. Do you speak English?
4. Are you alone?
5. Why are you on the island?

Lesson (5) p. 74

1 **Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?**

1. T
2. F, It sank near an island.
3. F, It was not nice.
4. F, It was cold in the night.
5. T

2 **Put the words in the correct order from bad to good.**

1. terrible 2. OK
3. very good 4. fantastic

3 **What do you think the people said in the following situations? Use expressions from Exercise 2.**

1. It was fantastic. 2. It was OK.
3. It was terrible. 4. It was very good.

4 **Write what you would say in the following situations. Give a reason using although or because.**

1. It was fantastic because all my friends were there.
2. It was terrible, although it was nice to be out of the city.
3. It was OK, although I did not understand the end.
4. It was terrible because the hotel was very old.

Lesson (6) p. 75

1 **Read Amir's diary and complete with capital letters, full stops or exclamation marks (!).**

Today was a fantastic day! First, I got up at 5 am and had breakfast. Then I got in the car with my family and we drove to Siwa. Although it was a very long journey, I enjoyed reading my favourite book in the car. We arrived very late but it is a beautiful place. We planned to look around, but we stayed in the hotel because we were all very tired. I think tomorrow will be very interesting!

2 **Read the diary again and match the writing tips to the text.**

a. was / got / drove / enjoyed
b. I got up at 5 am.
c. First/Then.
d. because we were all very tired/I think tomorrow.

Lesson (7) p. 76

1 **Write the words.**

1. coconut 2. sink 3. traditional
4. rock 5. alone 6. sailor

2 **Complete the sentences with these time expressions.**

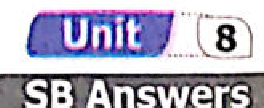
1. this morning 2. night 3. week
4. ago 5. year

3 **Choose the correct words.**

1. How 2. do 3. Have
4. can't 5. although 6. Can

4 **Complete the questions with the correct form of the words in brackets.**

1. Do you like 2. did you last go
3. Have you got 4. Can I come 5. Are you



SB Answers

Lesson (1) p. 12

Quiz

Find these things in the photos. Can you guess the countries they are in?

1. pyramid (El Castillo in Chichen Itza, Mexico)
2. city (Tokyo city, Japan)
3. bridge (Tahya Masr bridge, Egypt)
4. tower (Leaning Tower of Pisa, Italy)
5. tunnel (Gotthard tunnel, Switzerland)

Research

The pyramid of El Castillo is in Mexico. It is about 1,100 years old.

Find

It's 67.3 meters wide.

Lesson (1) p. 13

1 **Match the measurements and the photos on page 12.**

a. 1 b. 3 c. 2 d. 4 e. 5

3 **Work in pairs. Make questions. Then ask and answer.**

1. How long is the Cairo–Alexandria desert road? It's 220 kilometres long.
2. How deep is Lake Baikal in Russia? It's 1,642 metres deep.
3. How high is Abraj Al-Bait Clock Tower in Saudi Arabia? It's 601 metres high.
4. How old is the Luxor Temple? It's just under 3,500 years old.
5. How many people live in Cairo? More than 20 million people.

Lesson (2) p. 14

1 **Ask and answer the questions in pairs.**

2. a. crowded, old
   b. empty, old, quiet, wide, tall
   c. modern, narrow, tall
   d. modern, tall, narrow
   e. modern, crowded, wide, noisy
   f. empty, modern, quiet, wide

Lesson (2) p. 15

3 **Listen and check your answers to Exercise 2.**

1. The Great Pyramid of Giza is taller.
2. The Red Pyramid is further from the centre of Cairo.

3. The Great Pyramid of Giza is more crowded. That makes it noisier.
4. The Shanghai Tower is taller.
5. The Shanghai Tower is more modern.
6. Bangkok is older.
7. Bangkok has a bigger population. Ten million people live there. Around four and a half million people live in Brasilia.

4 Listen and complete the table with the missing examples.

1. taller 2. more /less 3. further

5 Work in pairs. Make sentences with these words.

1. Mount Everest is higher than Mount Kilimanjaro.
2. The Nile River is longer than the Amazon.
3. Cairo is more crowded than Aswan.
4. The pyramids at Giza are easier for tourists to visit than the Red Pyramid.

Lesson(3) p. 16

1 Work in pairs. Choose adjectives to describe the bridge in the photo.

The bridge is beautiful and modern. It is very wide.
I don't think it was cheap to build, I think it was expensive!

3 Listen and complete the information.

1. 2016 2. 100,000

4 Read about the Tahya Masr bridge and answer the questions.

1. It is 67.36 metres wide.
2. It is 540 metres long.
3. 4,000 people helped to build it.
4. It took 32 months to build.
5. Suggested answer: Sunset is the time when the sun goes down before it is night. It is the best time to walk across the bridge to see the beautiful view of the city.

6 Listen and complete the table.

1. fastest 2. the busiest 3. popular
4. most/least expensive 5. the best

Lesson(3) p. 17

7 Say the superlative form of these adjectives.

the most beautiful, the cheapest, the most dangerous, the deepest, the emptiest, the longest, the lowest, the most modern, the narrowest, the oldest, the quietest, the safest, the ugliest, the widest

8 Complete the sentences with the comparative or superlative form of the adjective in brackets.

1. the most difficult, easier
2. shorter, taller, the tallest
3. safer, the most dangerous, the most expensive
4. quieter, busiest
5. the oldest, the most beautiful

9 Describe and compare these buildings. Use comparative and superlative adjectives.

A is the tallest building. B is taller than C. C is the lowest building.
C is the furthest from the city centre. A is further from the city centre than B. B is the nearest to the city centre.
A is the most modern building. C is more modern than B. B is the oldest building.

Lesson(4) p. 18

1 Listen and complete the sentences.

1. subject, difficult, science
2. science, most difficult
3. Dahab, beautiful beach
4. least crowded
5. ice skating, dangerous, mountain climbing
6. don't agree
7. think
8. the funniest

Lesson(5) p. 19

2 Read the text. What is the main idea of the article?

The main idea of the text is why a new museum needed to be built for Egypt's most valuable treasures.

3 Read the text again and match the headings a–c with the paragraphs 1–3.

a. 3 b. 1 c. 2

4 Read the text again and say what these numbers refer to.

1. 2 – the number of kilometres from the pyramids of Giza to the new GEM
2. 80 – the number of countries that sent in designs for the building
3. 1,557 – the number of designs for the competition 4. 12 – the height of the statue of Ramses II
5. 160,000 – the number of objects on display in the old building
6. 2002 – the year there was a competition to design a bigger and more modern museum

Lesson(6) p. 20

1 Look quickly at the text. Choose the correct answer.

b. a website review

2 Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. The writer went early because it is the quietest time.
2. It was 5,000 square metres.
3. The Hypostyle Hall (it was more crowded than the Valley of the Kings).
4. The writer preferred the Habu Temple (it was the best and quietest place).
5. The writer's brother said, "This is fantastic." Speech marks show this.

3 Work in pairs and answer the questions.

1. The first person
2. I think, In my opinion

3. because
4. the most interesting; one of the most popular; the quietest time; it get busier; the biggest place, more crowded than; the best and quietest place, less crowded; for longer

Lesson (7) p. 21

1 Look, read and complete the questions and answers about these buildings.

1. old, (own answers depending on year)
2. deep, 10 metres
3. long, two kilometres
4. high, 23 metres
5. most, Nile View

2 Now compare the buildings in Exercise 1. Use the comparative and superlative forms of these adjectives.

Alexandria House is taller than King's House.
Nile View is the tallest building.
King's House is older than Nile View.
Alexandria House is the oldest building.
Nile View is the newest building.
King's House is newer than Alexandria House.

3 Complete the sentences using the words in brackets. Do you agree or disagree?

1. the oldest
2. faster
3. sunnier, hotter
4. the most interesting
5. more dangerous
6. the longest, longer

WB Answers

Lesson (1) p. 77

1 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

1. Bridge
2. Tower
3. city
4. Tunnel

2 Listen and write the large numbers.

1. 48,000,000
2. 287,000
3. 252
4. 6,412,000

3 Complete the fact file with these dates and numbers.

When did building start? 1969
When did it open? 1996
How high or long is it? 20.5
Interesting fact: 500,000

Lesson (2) p. 78

1 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

1. empty
2. low
3. narrow
4. noisy
5. wide
6. crowded

2 Correct the underlined words in these sentences.

1. bigger
2. happier
3. higher
4. worse
5. more expensive

3 Complete the sentences with the correct comparative form of the word in brackets.

1. noisier
2. faster
3. more crowded
4. nicer
5. taller

Lesson (3) p. 79

1 Match the opposites.

1. beautiful–ugly
2. cheap–expensive
3. dangerous–safe
4. high–low
5. modern–old
6. noisy–quiet
7. short–tall

2 Complete the text with the superlative form of the words in brackets.

1. biggest
2. noisiest
3. fastest
4. most dangerous
5. smallest

Lesson (4) p. 80

1 Complete the questions with words from the box.

1. think
2. best
3. opinion
4. agree
5. better

2 Write the correct questions from Exercise 1.

1. What's your opinion of doing a sport every week?
2. Which sport do you think is better, football or tennis?
3. What's the best place to play tennis near here?
4. Do you agree that Thursday evening is the most expensive time to go to a sports club?
5. What do you think about going to the sports club tonight?

Lesson (5) p. 81

1 Complete the text with the superlative form of these adjectives.

1. oldest
2. largest/biggest
3. most important
4. most beautiful
5. largest/biggest
6. most modern

2 Read the text again and write what these numbers refer to.

1. The year the Rosetta Stone arrived at the British Museum.
2. The number of visitors at the museum each year.
3. The number of objects in the museum.
4. The number of languages on the Rosetta Stone.
5. The year the Great Court opened.

3 Write these numbers and dates as words.

1. Twenty eighteen
2. One thousand, four hundred and thirty
3. Four million
4. Nineteen ninety-eight
5. Fourteen thousand, five hundred and sixty-seven

Lesson (6) p. 82

1 Complete the sentences with and, but or because.

1. because
2. but
3. because
4. but
5. and

2 **Circle the correct words and add any missing punctuation.**

Missing punctuation: "I love it here".

Lesson (7) p. 83

1 **Match the words and the definitions.**

1. cheap 2. noisy 3. wide
4. deep 5. safe

2 **Complete the questions with the correct word from Exercise 1.**

1. cheap 2. wide 3. safe
4. deep 5. noisy

3 **Write sentences to answer the questions.**

1. Building A is bigger than Building C.
2. Suggested answer: Building A is the ugliest building.
3. Building A is more modern than Building C.
4. Suggested answer: Building B was the most expensive to build.
5. Building C is the oldest.
6. Suggested answer: Building B is the most beautiful.



SB Answers

Lesson (1) p. 22

Quiz

Which are water sports? Which are mountain sports?

water sports: diving (3), kayaking (7), sailing (2), windsurfing (1)

mountain sports: mountain biking (6), rock climbing (4), trekking (8), zip lining (5)

Research

Mount Catherine is in Sinai and it is 2,630 metres high.

Find

Ras Shetan is in Sinai.

Lesson (1) p. 23

1 **Listen to Hassan and Imad. Which of the quiz activities do they talk about?**

Hassan and Imad talk about diving, windsurfing, rock climbing, trekking, mountain biking and zip lining.

2 **Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?**

1. T 2. F (He would like to try it.)
3. T 4. T
5. F (It looks scary.) 6. T

3 **Read the email and answer the questions.**

1. Yes, she is.
2. No, she isn't.
3. She is going to go windsurfing.
4. She is going to go diving.
5. No, she isn't. Because there is no time.

4 **Listen to Mustafa and Hazem playing a game. Which bags do they choose?**

They choose bag D and bag B

Lesson (2) p. 24

1 **When is he going to climb Mount Catherine and what do you think a tent is?**

He is going to climb Mount Catherine on 1st April

A tent is something you can sleep in when you go trekking.

2 **Read the webpage again and complete the sentences with words from the box.**

1. year 2. 500 3. tent
4. camel 5. 43 6. March
7. April

Lesson (2) p. 25

3 **Listen and write the dates in your notebook.**

1st April 2nd May
3rd August 14th September
21st December 30th January

4 **Work in pairs. Look at the plan on page 24 and say what Ahmed is going to do.**

- On the third of March, Ahmed's going to leave Ras Shetan.
- On the fourteenth of March, he is going to arrive at Ein Kidd.
- On the thirtieth of March, he is going to arrive at St - Catherine.
- On the first of April, he is going to climb Mount Catherine.
- On the fifteenth of April, he is going to arrive at Serabit El Khadem.

5 **Listen to Mariam talking about her plan. Complete her notes.**

1. go sailing down the Nile 2. Aswan
3. Luxor 4. 28th December
5. 4th January

Lesson (3) p. 26

1 **Which activity are they going to do tomorrow?**

c. zip lining

2 **Read again and choose the correct answers.**

1. b 2. a 3. c
4. d 5. a

3 **Which letter/letters do you add to make the adjective?**

1. rainy 2. sunny 3. cloudy
4. windy 5. snowy 6. stormy
7. foggy

You add y (and double the letter before you add y to some words)

4 **Listen to the descriptions a-d. Which one describes the photo in Exercise 1?**

c

Lesson(3) p. 27

5 **Describe the weather in a photo below. Do not say which one. Can your partner guess?**

- It is very windy and there are grey clouds. I think it's a storm!
- It's very sunny and there aren't any clouds in the sky.
- I think it's a very hot day.
- It's a bit foggy. I don't think it's very hot.

6 **Complete the sentences with the reflexive pronouns from the box.**

1. ourselves 2. himself 3. myself
4. herself 5. yourself

7 **Put these pictures in the correct order to tell a story. Then listen to Nader's presentation and check your answers.**

c. 2 b. 1 c. 3 d. 4

8 **Now answer the questions using reflexive pronouns and the verbs in the box.**

1. He put on a hat to protect himself.
2. He made himself breakfast.
3. She took a photo of herself.
4. They sat by the fire to keep themselves warm.

Lesson(4) p. 28

1 **Which forms of transport did people use in 1872?**

They used ships and trains.

2 **Look at Phileas Fogg's plan and answer the questions.**

1. He is going to leave on 2nd October.
2. It takes seven days.
3. He is going to travel by/take a train.
4. The longest part of the journey is from Japan to the USA (22 days).
5. He is going to return to London on 21st December.

3 **Read the end of the story and circle the correct words.**

1. the USA 2. bad
3. early 4. completes

Lesson(5) p. 29

1 **Ask and answer the questions in pairs.**

1. The ship was probably the most dangerous because there were storms.
2. Today we also have planes, cars, taxis, helicopters, the underground, etc.
3. Some water sports and mountain sports are also forms of transport, such as sailing, kayaking and skiing. Cycling and horse riding are also both hobbies and forms of transport.

2 **Listen to Ola and Lamia. Tick (✔) the activity they decide to do.**

2. ✔

3 **Put the conversation in order from 1-7.**

a. 3 b. 1 c. 7 d. 2
e. 5 f. 6 g. 4

4 **Read the completed conversation in Exercise 3.**

1. Make suggestions:
   What shall we do tomorrow?
   Shall we go rock climbing?
   Let's play tennis.
   How about playing basketball?
2. Responding to suggestions:
   I'm not sure.
   Good idea!
   I don't know.

Lesson(6) p. 30

2 **Read the email. Who is Karim?**

c. Maher's cousin

3 **Read the email again. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.**

1. T
2. F, they can swim every day.
3. T
4. T
5. F, he asks him to find photos of themselves and their other cousins.

4 **In what order can you put the following?**

a. 5 b. 3 c. 2 d. 4 e. 1

Lesson(7) p. 31

1 **Reorder the letters to make weather words. Then complete the circles.**

1. windy 2. storm 3. fog
4. cloud 5. snow 6. sunny
7. rainy 8. foggy

- Nouns: storm, fog, cloud, snow
- Adjectives: windy, sunny, rainy, foggy

3 **Rewrite each pair of sentences as one sentence, using reflexive pronouns.**

1. I made myself a cup of tea.
2. Omar took a photo of himself.
3. We bought ourselves a new book.
4. Mona drew a picture of herself.

WB Answers

Lesson(1) p. 84

1 **Match the sports to the sentences.**

1. windsurfing 2. sailing 3. kayaking
4. trekking 5. diving 6. zip lining

2 **Reorder the words to make questions.**

1. Are you going to travel home by bus after school?
2. What are you going to wear tomorrow?
3. What are you going to do next Saturday?

4. Are you going to do your homework before you eat this evening?
5. Who is going to cook your meal this evening?

Lesson (2) p. 85

1 Match the words to the definitions.

1. guide 2. journey 3. adventure 4. tent

2 Complete the sentences with words from Exercise 1.

1. tent 2. guide 3. journey 4. adventure

3 Write the dates.

1. 2nd March 2. 31st October
3. 12th August 4. 23rd February

4 Listen and write the dates.

1. 25th July 2. 30th July
3. 3rd August 4. 6th August
5. 10th August

Lesson (3) p. 86

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of these words.

1. sunny 2. clouds
3. snow 4. foggy
5. stormy 5. wind

2 What is the weather going to be like on each day?

1. On Sunday, it is going to be sunny.
2. On Monday, it is going to be rainy.
3. On Tuesday, it is going to be cloudy and windy.
4. On Wednesday, it is going to be snowy.

3 The word son sounds the same as sun but has a different meaning. Think of other words that are like this.

ate-eight, blew-blue, buy-by, for-four, sail-sale, threw-through, two-too-to, weather-whether, would-wood

4 Circle the correct reflexive pronoun.

1. myself 2. themselves
3. herself 4. ourselves

Lesson (4) p. 87

1 Complete the crossword.

Down: 1. Japan 2. world 3. ship 4. India
Across: 3. USA 5. railway line 7. challenge

2 Complete the chart with these forms of transport for travelling around the world today. You can use each word more than once.

1. plane 2. ship 3. train 4. plane
5. plane 6. train 7. ship

3 What is the same? What is different?

Today transport is quicker and more comfortable than in the past. You can travel by plane. This is faster than a train or ship. It is also quicker today to travel across the USA by train (it was 7 days for Phileas Fogg but is only 3.5 days today). But some journeys now take longer. The journey from Egypt to India now takes two weeks. Phileas Fogg did this journey in 13 days. Phileas Fogg travelled to London from the USA by ship in 9 days. Today, it takes ten days.

Lesson (5) p. 88

1 Match to make sentences or questions.

1. c 2. e 3. b 4. a 5. d

2 Put the dialogue into the correct order.

a. 5 b. 3 c. 7 d. 1 e. 6
f. 2 g. 4

Lesson (6) p. 89

1 Where do these sentences go in Judy's email to Manal?

1. It's going to be fun but busy.
2. I'm very excited about that.
3. I'm going to have tennis lessons!
4. What about going to the beach?
5. Write to me soon so I know your plans!

2 Read the email again and answer the questions.

1. She's going to visit her cousins in Alexandria.
2. She is going to see the famous library.
3. She is going to learn to play tennis.
4. She wants to go to the beach.
5. "Write to me soon! From Judy."

Lesson (7) p. 90

1 Match to make mountain and water sports. Which of the answers is one word?

1. c 2. d
3. b (one word) 4. a

2 How are these people going to travel?

1. He is going to travel by train.
2. They are going to fly/travel by plane.
3. She is going to drive/travel by car.
4. They are going to travel by boat.

3 Complete the sentences with reflexive pronouns from the box.

1. itself 2. myself 3. themselves
4. himself 5. ourselves 6. yourself



Review C

SB Answers

Lesson (1) p. 32

1 Read the emails. Did Amy and Dareen both climb Sydney Harbour Bridge?

No, Amy climbed it, but Dareen did not.

2 Read the emails again and answer the questions.

1. She climbed Sydney Harbour Bridge.
2. They took a selfie of themselves.
3. She went to Bondi Beach and went windsurfing and kayaking.
5. Scary means frightening.

3 Complete the table with these verbs from the text.

Past: climbed, did not climb, was, went, were

Present: am, are, hope, is, love

Future: going to go, going to listen to, going to swim

Lesson (2) p. 33

1 Read the answers and then write the questions.

1 How long is Sydney Harbour Bridge?

2 How long did it take to build the bridge?

3 When did it open?

4 How many cars cross the bridge every day?

3 Listen, check your answers to Exercise 2 and complete the table.

	Egypt	Australia
Size	1,000 000 km^2	7, 600, 000 km^2
highest mountain	Mount Catherine 2.600 m	Mount Kosciuszko 2.200 m
longest river	Nile 6.600 km	River Murray 2.500 km
oldest building	Khufu 4.600 years	Elizabeth Farm 200 years old

WB Answers

Page 91

1 Read the text and answer the questions.

1 He was a sailor and he spent four years alone on an island

2 He spent four years on the island.

3 Robinson Crusoe Island has cooler weather

4 About 800 people live there today

5 Those refers to a new school and a hospital.

2 Listen and answer the questions.

a 2   b 4   c 1   d 3

3 Listen again and circle the correct answer.

1 walked   2 One of the boys likes

3 not very near   4 book

Page 92

4 Read and correct the mistakes in these sentences.

1 I like this book because it is very funny

2 Did you go to the theatre yesterday?

3 The hotel by the park is the most modern hotel in the city

4 The market is further from my house than the school

5 I'm going to try rock climbing next weekend!

6 My little brother enjoyed himself at the family party

5 Match the words with the same stress. Then listen and check.

1 b   2 d   3 e

4 c   5 a

6 Complete the sentences with the correct words from Exercise 5.

1 competition   2 canteen   3 population

4 empty   5 protect

Unit 10

SB Answers

Lesson (1) p. 34

Discuss

cotton 4   glass   3 leather 5

metal 2   plastic   8 stone 6

wood 7   wool 1

A glass has the same name as its material.

Research

The Stone Age was from around 8700 to 2000 BCE and was called this because people only used stones for tools.

Find

A round house is strong, easier to keep warm or cool, quieter, uses fewer material and cheaper.

Page 35

1 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?

1. T

2 T

3 F (it is made of wood)

4 F (they are made of cotton)

5 F (it is made of plastic and glass)

6 T

3 What are they made of?

1 The wallet is made of leather.

2 The skirt is made of cotton.

3 The socks are made of wool.

4 The tablet is made of glass and plastic.

5 The bag is made of leather.

6 The statue is made of stone

7 The toy is made of wood

8 The teaspoons are made of metal.

Page 36

1 What is the main idea of the article?

It is about an old village in ancient Egypt and how people lived there

2 Match the words and the pictures.

1 bricks   2 taps   3 oven   4 roof

3 Read the text again and answer the questions.

1 There were 68

2 The doors were made of wood

3 They painted them white

4 Because it was very hot at night

5 They got their water from the Nile Valley

6 Students' own answers

Lesson (2) p. 37

1 Read the text again. Use these words to make sentences about the homes in Deir el-Medina.

There weren't any bedrooms

There were doors

There was a kitchen.

There were painted walls.

There weren't any taps.

There wasn't any water.

Lesson (3) p. 38

1 Find these things in the picture.

1. drone 2. wind turbine 3. solar panels

4. robot 5. electric car 6. a sign for electricity

2 Listen to an interview with an architect, Dina Hassan. Which three sentences does Dina say about her house of the future?

1. ✔ 2. ✔ 4. ✔

3 Listen again and answer the questions.

1. An architect designs buildings.
2. Because there won't be much space.
3. They will get it from solar panels and wind turbines.
4. glass, metal and plastic bricks

4 Choose the correct answer.

1. won't 2. will 3. be

Lesson (3) p. 39

5 Read and circle the correct words.

1. won't 2. go 3. will 4. take

5. will 6. won't 7. any 8. read

Lesson (4) p. 40

2 Read the text and check your answers to Exercise 1.

They are round because houses this shape is very strong, is easier to keep warm or cool, is quieter and cheaper to make, and they have more space.

3 Read the sentence before and after the word, then match the words and the definitions.

1. space 2. warm 3. earthquake

4 Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. in bad weather or during earthquakes
2. Yes, they are.
3. Because it uses fewer materials when you build it.
4. Suggested answer: You can build fewer round houses in a small space; they are probably harder to build; if you have round walls, it is hard to put furniture next to the walls and harder to put up pictures, etc.

Lesson (5) p. 41

1 Listen and write the years.

1. 2050 2. 2020 3. 2035 4. 1999

2 Say these years in pairs. Then listen and check.

- ten sixty-six
- two thousand
- nineteen twenty-three
- two thousand and eight
- three thousand and one
- twenty seventy-five

3 Listen to Basel and complete the timeline.

- born in 2007
- started school in 2012
- learned to ride a bike in 2013
- moved to a new house in 2018
- went to Red Sea on holiday in 2019
- will climb Mount Kilimanjaro in 2023

Lesson (6) p. 42

Writing Skills

1 c 2 b 3 a

Lesson (7) p. 43

2 Which do you use in your house?

1 wind turbine 2 oven

3 drone 4 solar panel

5 electricity 6 electric car

WB Answers

Lesson (1) p. 93

1 What are these things usually made of? Match the words to the materials in the box. Can you add any words?

1. wool: a hat, a scarf
2. leather: a bag, a jacket
3. metal: a spoon, a fork
4. plastic: a pen, a pencil case
5. stone: a wall, steps
6. cotton: a T-shirt, trousers
7. glass: a glass, glasses
8. wood: a chair, a door

2 Complete the sentences with materials from Exercise 1.

1. metal 2. glass 3. leather 4. plastic

4 What is the difference between the words wood and would?

wood is a material (a table is made of wood).

would is a modal verb used for polite questions, for example, I would like some tea, please.

(It is also used in second conditional sentences: If I was taller, I would be good at basketball.)

Lesson (2) p. 94

1 Match the words and the definitions.

1. tap 2. roof 3. bricks 4. oven

2 What was different in the year 1900? What was the same?

There were trains in 1900. There weren't any TVs.

There were phones. There weren't any emails.

There were cars. There weren't any mobile phones.

3 Describe this student's room in 1900.

There were beds, they were made of metal. There were cushions on the bed, they were made of cotton.

They were rugs on the floor, they were made of cotton or wool. There was a basket for clothes or rubbish. There wasn't any technology. There weren't any pictures on the walls.

Plus students' own answers.

Lesson (3) p. 95

1 Complete the crossword.

Down: 1. solar 3. robots 4. drone

Across: 2. electricity 5 wind turbines 6 electric

2 Make predictions about the year 2080 using will/won't.

1. I think we will/won't have more robots in our schools.
2. I think we will/won't use drones for our post.
3. I think we will/won't have wind turbines on our roofs.
4. I think we will/won't have solar panels on planes.
5. I think we will/won't have trains that travel under the sea.

Lesson (4) p. 96

1 Complete the sentences with the correct word from the box.

1. cool 2. space 3. warm 4. earthquake

2 Complete the sentences.

1. rectangular/rectangle
2. triangular/triangle
3. round/circle

3 What shape are the things in the photos? Why do you think they are this shape?

1. The ship's window is round. This shape is stronger than a square window.
2. The door is rectangular so people can walk through it.
3. The roof is triangular so snow and rain fall from it.
4. The box is square so you can put things in it.

Lesson (5) p. 97

1 Match the words and numbers and complete the years in words.

- 1c, eighty-six - 2e, Eighteen
- 3a, Nineteen - 4b, thousand
- 5d, twenty-two

2 Write these years in words.

1. Eight hundred and four 2. Eleven fifty-four
3. Nineteen ninety 4. Two thousand and two
5. Twenty fifty-six 6. Twenty thirty-eight

3 Listen to the life of Mohamed Salah and complete the dates.

1. 1992 2. 2010 3.2012 4. 2014
5. 2017 6. 2017 7. 2019

Lesson (6) p. 98

1 Complete the table with these words.

1. c 2. b 3. a

Lesson (7) p. 99

1 Complete the table with these words.

materials	old objects	modern objects	shapes
glass metal plastic stone	brick oven roof top	drone electric car solar panel wind turbine	rectangular round square triangular

2 Now match the descriptions with three of the objects from Exercise 1.

1. oven 2. roof 3. solar panel



SB Answers

Lesson (1) p. 44

Discuss

1. stingray 2. turtle 3. shark
4. coral reef 5. jellyfish 6. octopus 7. whale

A stingray is dangerous because it can sting with its tail. A shark is dangerous because it can bite with its teeth. A jellyfish is dangerous because it can sting.

Research

Animals with a shell: tortoise, turtle, snail, shellfish, etc.
Many animals have tails, e.g. horse, dog, cat, monkey, elephant, etc.

Find

Ernest Hemingway

Lesson (1) p. 45

1 Read and complete the text with a word from the photos.

1. shark 2. stingray 3. coral reef 4. turtle
5. octopus 6. jellyfish 7. whales

3 Match to make zero conditional sentences.

1. c 2. e 3. d
4. b 5. a

Lesson (2) p. 46

3 Read the text and check your answers to Exercise 2.

1. It is about the problem of plastic in the environment.
2. When we use plastic shopping bags, we mustn't throw away these bags in rivers, we can recycle plastic and use other materials like paper and glass because they are easier to recycle. We can clean the plastic rubbish from our beaches and the ocean.

4 Look at the words in red in the text. Match the words and the definitions.

1. throw away 2. environment, planet
3. recycle 4. rubbish

5 Answer the questions.

1. Plastic stays in the environment for a long time.
2. It goes into the ocean.
3. Plastic is poisonous for sea animals./ More than 100,000 sea animals and birds die every year from it.

4. glass, paper
5. It will take a long time.
6. Suggested answer: Fuel that goes out from ships in the sea.

Lesson (2) p. 47

6 Work in pairs. Complete the sentences with must/mustn't or should/shouldn't.

1. must 2. should 3. mustn't, must
4. shouldn't 5. mustn't 6. shouldn't, should

Lesson (3) p. 48

1 Work in pairs and answer the questions.

1. It is an area of land where animals and plants are safe.
2. Suggested answer: To help the animals and plants that live in them.
3. Suggested answer: They mustn't make a lot of noise or leave the road through the reserve, they mustn't give food to the animals, they must take away rubbish.

3 Listen to the talk again and answer the questions.

1. A lot of noise will frighten them.
2. They live in the plants next to the road (in the nature reserve).
3. They must find their own food.
4. They must take all their rubbish.
5. They are going to do a project.

4 Now match the rules and the reasons.

1. b 2. d 3. a
4. c 5. f 6 e

Lesson (3) p. 49

5 What problems can you see in the picture? Make sentences with must and mustn't.

- They mustn't leave the road.
- They mustn't make a lot of noise.
- They mustn't play games.
- They mustn't give food to the birds.
- They must take their rubbish home.
- They must work together.

Life Skills

1. shouldn't 2. must 3. should
4. shouldn't 5. must 6. shouldn't

Lesson (4) p. 50

1 Circle the things you need to plant a tree.

plastic pot, small stones, soil, seed, a warm place, water, a bigger pot / the ground

2 Read the instructions again and match them to the pictures. Then listen and check your answers.

a. 8 b. 3 c. 7 d. 4
e. 2 f. 1 g. 6 h. 5

3 Ask for and give instructions about how to do the following.

Student A: I want to make a phone call. What should I do first?
Student B: First, you should turn the phone on.
Student A: Like this?
Student B: Yes, that's right! Second, find the name or number of the person you want to call.
Student A: Should I press the person's number?
Student B: Yes, you should.
Student A: Finally, wait for the person to answer!

Lesson (5) p. 51

1 What do you think the story is about?

It is about a man who catches a big fish.

2 Read the story quickly and put the pictures in the correct order.

A. 3 B. 2 C. 1

3 Read the story again and answer the questions.

1. Santiago, an old fisherman
2. He felt worried.
3. Because the fish was very big and strong.
4. The sharks ate the big fish.
5. They respected him.
6. Suggested answer: The story teaches us that life is difficult for fishermen and they must work hard to live. They must also respect the fish because they, too, work hard to live.

Lesson (6) p. 52

1 Read the leaflet. Write the headings in the correct places.

1. Where and when is the event?
2. What do we need?
3. Why must we clean the beaches?
4. How can we tell people about our event?
5. What should we do with the rubbish we find?

Lesson (7) p. 53

1 Complete the crossword.

Across: 2. turtle 3. whale 6. octopus 7. shark
Down: 1. jellyfish 2. tail 4. lines 5. coral

2 Make zero conditional sentences.

1. When you leave ice in the sun, it becomes water.
2. When you throw away plastic, it stays in the environment for years.
3. If I see rubbish on the ground, I throw it in the bin.
4. When a seed gets water and light, it grows into a healthy plant.
5. If you do not water plants, they do not grow.
6. I walk to school if the bus does not arrive.

3 Rewrite these sentences using must or mustn't.

1. You mustn't swim here. It's dangerous.
2. You must take water when you go to the desert.

3. You mustn't eat too many sweets.
4. You must study for the test.
5. You must buy a ticket when you travel on the bus.
6. You mustn't throw rubbish on the ground.

WB Answers

Lesson(1) p. 100

1 Read and complete the words. Tick (✔) those with a tail.

1. jellyfish 2. octopus 3. shark ✔
4. stingray ✔ 5. turtle ✔ 6. coral reef

2 Match the photos and sentences.

a. 3 b. 1 c. 4 d. 2

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets to make zero conditional sentences.

1. feel, go 2. watches, feels
3. is, turns 4. hear, laugh

4 Complete these sentences.

1. I do my homework. 2. I read my book.
3. they die. 4. he falls asleep.

Lesson(2) p. 101

1 Complete the sentences with the correct words from the box.

1. recycle 2. environment
3. planets 4. rubbish

2 Circle the correct words.

1. mustn't 2. must 3. must
4. must 5 mustn't, must

3 What do you think these people are saying? Write sentences with must or mustn't.

1. You must come here.
2. You must stop.
3. You must be quiet./You mustn't talk.
4. You must go/leave.

Lesson(3) p. 102

1 Complete the text with must or mustn't.

1. must 2. mustn't 3. must
4. must 5. must

2 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.

1. F, you can also see birds and animals.
2. T
3. F, you mustn't give food to any of the fish.
4. F, you can use knives to cut fishing lines.
5. F, you mustn't take fish from the water.

3 Match to make sentences about working together.

1. b 2. d 3. a 4. e 5. c

Lesson(4) p. 103

1 Match the words and the definitions.

1. ground 2. soil 3. hole
4. cover 5. seed

2 Complete the sentences with the correct word from Exercise 1.

1. ground 2. hole 3. soil
4. seed 5. cover

4 Listen and check your answers to Exercise 3.

1. First, find a sunny place in the garden.
2. Second, look at the ground. It must not have lots of stones or other plants in it.
3. Then, make a small hole in the soil.
4. Next, put some water in the hole so it is not too dry.
5. Finally, put the seed in the hole and cover it with soil.

Lesson(5) p. 104

1 Complete the sentences with these words from the story.

1. fishermen 2. respect 3. worried
4. weak 5. skeleton

2 Which of the following can you catch? Check in a dictionary.

1. [✔] a fish 2. [✔] a ball
3. [✔] an illness 4 [✔] a plane, train or bus

3 Read part of The Old Man and the Sea and answer the questions.

1. Because he smiled when he saw him.
2. He suggests they fish together next time.
3. He feels ill./He doesn't feel well.
4. Because he says he can learn from him.
5. Students' own answers.

Lesson(6) p. 105

1 Use the photos to complete the crossword.

Down: 1. rubbish 3. gloves Across:
Across 2. rubbish bag 4. headphones

2 Match the headings with the conclusions to these three different texts.

1. b 2. c 3. a

Lesson(7) p. 106

1 Match to make compound words. Which of the answers is one word?

1. e 2. c 3. b (one word)
4. a 5. d

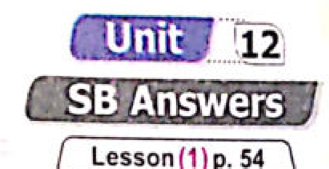
2 Correct the underlined words.

1. go 2. if/when 3. laugh
4. travels 5. boils

3 Make sentences with must or mustn't.

1. You mustn't catch fish here.
2. You must recycle this.

3. You mustn't swim here.
4. You must wear a helmet.



Lesson (1) p. 54

Quiz

Can you name each job?

1. dentist 2. scientist 3. engineer
4. accountant 5. photographer 6. businesswoman
7. computer programmer 8. writer
9. architect

Find

Making traditional baskets and making jewellery.

Research

Azza Faiad is famous for finding a way to turn plastic into a type of fuel when she was a teenager.

Lesson (1) p. 55

1 Which job from the quiz is she talking about?

an accountant

2 Read about Amir's uncle. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?

1. T 2. F, He designs them for planes.
3. T 4. F, She is a businesswoman.
5. T 6. T

3 Reorder the words to make sentences with a relative pronoun.

1. A teacher is a person who teaches students.
2. A scientist is a person who studies science.
3. A pilot is a person who flies a plane.
4. A photographer is a person who takes photographs.

Lesson (2) p. 56

2 Listen to the interview and check your answers to Exercise 1.

a. 3 b. 1 c. 5
d. 4 e. 2

3 Read the interview again and answer the questions.

1. A marine biologist studies the ocean and the plants and animals in it.
2. She is good at science.
3. She goes diving around coral reefs.
4. She writes the results of tests.
5. She thinks it is important to look after the planet.
6. The worst thing is when she goes diving in bad weather.

Lesson (2) p. 57

4 Listen to the rest of the interview with Nesma. Choose the correct answers.

1. a 2. c 3. d 4. a

5 Match to make sentences with question tags.

1. d 2. b 3. a
4. e 5. c

Lesson (3) p. 58

1 Which of these life events can you see in the photos?

- get a job - get married
- learn to drive - go to university

2 Read about Munir's plans for the future. Which sentence is true?

b

Lesson (3) p. 59

3 Read the blog again and circle the correct words.

1. doesn't know 2. wants 3. wouldn't like
4. 'd like 5. doesn't know

4 Listen to Rami and Amira talking about their plans for the future. Tick (✔) the things they want to do. What do they both want to do?

	pass my exams	go to university	travel	buy an apartment	learn to drive	get married	live in Cairo
Rami	✔	✔	✔			✔	
Amira	✔	✔		✔	✔	✔	✔

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. 'll take 2. won't learn 3. go
4. gets 5. won't go

Lesson (4) p. 60

1 Read quickly and match the photos A–D to the texts. There is one extra photo.

1. B 2. D 3. A

2 Read the text again and complete the sentences.

1. thousands of years ago in Egypt.
2. at a school in Fayoum.
3. markets all over the country.
4. to sell jewellery to people in different countries.
5. earn money.

3 Ask and answer the questions in pairs.

1. We don't want people to forget traditional skills; we also want local people to earn money.
2. They can use the internet / social media to sell things.
3. I think that people will use machines for some of these jobs in the future; however, I think that people will keep learning these skills; I think that there will be more African businesses making these things.

Lesson (5) p. 61

1 Listen and complete the fact files.

1. guitar 2. a video game
3. doctor 4. city
5. learn a new language 6. drive
7. school 8. get married

Lesson 6 p. 62

3 Read the text again. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.

1. T
2. F, They will be more important
3. F, We won't have these
4. F, The cars will drive themselves
5. T
6. T

Lesson 7 p. 63

1 Complete the sentences with the correct job.

1. doctor 2. engineer 3. accountant
4. businesswoman 5. dentist

2 Complete the descriptions of these jobs using a verb and a noun from the box.

1. A writer is a person who writes books.
2. A pilot is a person who flies planes.
3. A photographer is a person who takes photos.
4. An architect is a person who designs buildings.
5. A scientist is a person who studies science.
6. A sailor is a person who works on a ship or boat.

3 Circle the correct words.

1. don't, won't 2. won't
3. goes, 'll study 4. 'll buy, move

4 How well do you know your partner?

1. Your best subject is English, isn't it?
2. Your favourite hobby is drawing, isn't it?
3. You have two brothers and three sisters, don't you?
4. You come to school by bus, don't you?

WB Answers

Lesson 1 p. 107

1 Match the words and the definitions.

1. accountant 2. businessman/businesswoman
3. dentist 4. scientist
5. architect 6. engineer

2 Match to make sentences.

1. e 2. c 3. b 4. a 5. d

Lesson 2 p. 108

1 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

1. terrible 2. result 3. marine biologist
4. ocean 5. laboratory

2 Circle the correct words.

1. doesn't 2. does 3. isn't
4. didn't 5. won't 6. there

3 Check the information about Nawal using question tags.

1. Nawal, isn't it? 2. 12, aren't you?
3. tennis, isn't it?
4. run fast and jump high, can't you?
5. fish with rice, don't you?
6. a doctor, don't you?

4 Choose the correct answer.

1. don't they? 2. aren't they?
3. didn't live? 4. never speaks

Lesson 3 p. 109

1 Complete the table with the correct words from the box (some words can go in more than one place).

Buy	Get	go to	have	learn to	pass	travel
an apartment a car	married a job an apartment a car	school university	children a car an apartment exams a test a job	drive	exams a test	around the world

2 Match to make first conditional sentences.

1. e 2. d 3. a 4. b 5. c

3 Complete these sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1. will be 2. won't catch 3. see
4. will speak 5. have

Lesson 4 p. 110

1 Match the words and the definitions.

1. earn 2. jewellery 3. adult
4. workshop 5. skill 6. culture
7. pottery

2 Complete the sentences with the correct words from Exercise 1.

1. skill 2. pottery 3. workshop
4. adult 5. earn 6. culture
7. jewellery

3 Many verbs become adjectives by adding -ful. Complete the table. Can you add any words?

1. colourful 2. help 3. useful 4. hopeful

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words from Exercise 3.

1. colourful 2. use 3. hopeful
4. useful/helpful

Lesson 5 p. 111

1 Answer the questions with a word from the box.

1. app 2. design 3. countryside

2 Read Khaled's plan for his life and complete the sentences with an expression from the box.

1. In two weeks' time 2. Next month
3. In three months' time 4. In four years' time
5. Before I get a job

3 Listen and put Dina's plans in the correct order (from first to last).

a. 3 b. 4 c. 1 d. 5 e. 2

Lesson 6 p. 112

1 Complete the crossword.

Down: 1. spend 3. disappear 4. cure
Across: 2. prediction 5. exciting

2 Put the text in the correct order 1–4.

a. 2 b. 4 c. 1 d. 3

3 **Now answer the questions.**

1. Today, I am going to write about ...
2. First/Second ... 3. In conclusion ...

Lesson(7) p. 112

1 **Match to make sentences.**

1. c 2. d 3. a 4. b

Review D

SB Answers

Lesson(1) p. 64

1 **Why is Tarek worried?**

1. He is worried about the dangers to our planet.

2 **Read the story again and answer the questions.**

1. If you pick up rubbish from the beach, the animals won't eat it.
2. If you have a shorter shower, you will save water.
3. You mustn't buy plastic bags.
4. He will do all those things (pick up rubbish, have a shorter shower and buy a cotton bag).
5. Students' own answers.

4 **Which of these must you do to help the planet? Which mustn't you do?**

1. You mustn't have long, hot showers. You must have short showers.
2. You must walk or ride a bike more often.
3. You mustn't put rubbish on the ground. You must pick up rubbish.
4. You mustn't buy plastic bags. You must buy cotton or paper bags.

Lesson(2) p. 65

1 **Hala and Malok are doing a recycling project at school. Listen and tick (✓) the materials you hear.**

1. cotton √ 2. glass √ 3. metal √
4. leather 5. paper √ 6. plastic √
7. wood 8. wool

2 **Listen again. What are they made of?**

1. b 2. d 3. a 4. e 5. c

3 **What goes into each box? Make zero conditional sentences.**

- If it's made of plastic, it goes into the yellow box.
- If it's made of glass, it goes into the blue box.
- If it's made of paper, it goes into the red box.
- If it's made of metal, it goes into the green box.
- If it's made of cotton, it goes into the orange box.

WB Answers

Page 114

1 **Read and complete the article with the words in the box.**

1. traditional 2. aren't 3. who
4. want 5. interesting 6. will
7. carry 8. won't

2 **Read the article again and answer the questions.**

1. Because people did these jobs in the past and still do them.
2. An aeronautical engineer designs things that fly.
3. It is an example of future technology.
4. Because many people think that drones will carry our post, so the skies will have many drones.

3 **Listen and match each speaker with what they are doing.**

a. 3 b. 1 c. 4 d. 2

4 **Listen again and circle the correct answer.**

1. souvenir 2. bananas
3. teacher 4. for a charity

5 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.**

1. find 2. get 3. can't
4. will be 5. were 6. will ('ll) go

Page 115

6 **Match the words with the same stress. Then listen and check.**

1. e 2. d 3. a 4. b 5. c

7 **Complete the sentences with the correct words from Exercise 6.**

1. recycle 2. respect 3. architect
4. environment 5. poisonous 6. planet

8 **Read and correct the mistakes in these sentences.**

1. What are these cushions made of, cotton or wool?
2. There were 68 houses in the village of Deir el- Medina.
3. Will there be electric cars in the future?
4. I always feel very tired if I eat a big lunch.
5. A dentist is a person who checks people's teeth.
6. This is an easy test, isn't it?

End of Term Practice Answer

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. c 2. c 3. b 4. c

2 **Complete the following dialogue.**

1. going 2. England 3. why don't
4. Fact 5. How

3 **Read the following. Then answer the questions.**

1. An unusual mosque in Mali, Africa.
2. Students' own answers.
3. It is made of mud.
4. b 5. a 6. d

4 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. b 2. a 3. a 4. d 5. b
6. c 7. a 8. c 9. a 10. c

5 **Read and correct the underlined words.**

1. go 2. sailor 3. who 4. shell

6 **Write a paragraph of seventy-eighty (70-80) words on "How to keep a beach clean".**

Students' own answers.

Listening material



Unit 7

Azhar Listening

Yesterday our family moved to our new house in Alexandria. It took three hours to drive from our old house in Cairo.

Test Listening

I had a fantastic weekend! It was my friend Ali's birthday. In the morning, we went to the funfair. In the afternoon, we visited a museum. In the evening, we came home.



Unit 8

Azhar Listening

Al Azhar Park is the largest and most beautiful park in Cairo. That park has a few trees and plants and people enjoy going there.

Test Listening

The oldest museum in Cairo opened in 1835. It was a wonderful museum. There were a lot of treasures on display, but it didn't have space for many other objects.



Unit 9

Azhar Listening

In 1872, the writer Jules Verne wrote a story about a British man called Phileas Fogg. He takes a challenge to travel around the world in just 80 days.

Test Listening

Tomorrow, we're going to try windsurfing in the morning and in the afternoon, we're going to go diving! We're not going to go kayaking.

Review C

Test Listening

I went to Australia last year. I visited Sydney Harbour Bridge. It was very high and scary. The views from the top were fantastic.



Unit 10

Azhar listening

Mohamed Salah was born in 1992. He started playing football in 2010. He then moved to Switzerland to play for Basel in 2012.

Test Listening

Many traditional houses in the past were round. A round shape means the building is very strong. This is important when there is an earthquake or strong winds.



Unit 11

Azhar Listening

Ras Mohammed reserve is famous for its birds and animals. Many people go diving in the coral reefs there to see the many beautiful fish and turtles.

Test Listening

The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals. It lives in oceans. If it loses a tooth, a new one grows. A shark uses more than 20,000 teeth in its life!

Unit 12

Azhar Listening

People started making pottery thousands of years ago in Egypt. If you go to Fayoum, you will see many people making pottery.

Test Listening

I'd like to be a teacher. I'd like to learn a new language. I want to learn to dive. In 15 years' time, I'll get married.

Review D

Test Listening

Ras Mohammed reserve is famous for its birds and animals. Many people go diving to the coral reefs to see the many beautiful fish and turtles. They mustn't touch or give food to any of the fish.

WB End of Term Practice Listening

Woman	:	Hello. I'd like to buy a new phone.
Assistant	:	Certainly. Which phone would you like?
Woman	:	I like this one. It's small enough to go in my bag, too. I hope it's not too expensive!
Assistant	:	No, it is a good price. Excuse me, could you tell me what job you do?
Woman	:	Well, I'm a person who takes photographs for a newspaper.
Assistant	:	Ah, you're a photographer, aren't you?
Woman	:	That 's right.

Final Exams Listening Material

القاهرة - الزاوية الحمراء  1

My father is called Ahmed. He is a music teacher. He goes to the school in his car. He has a big family. He plays the violin well.

2 الجيزة - الحوامدية التعليمية

Farida's family is on holiday. They go to Dahab. Farida likes to go trekking in the desert. In the evening, she likes going to the funfair after that she loves going to the aquarium.

3 القليوبية - بنها التعليمية

In summer, I go to the beach. I go by car with my family. I jump up high when there is a wave. My brother likes playing with his beach bike.

4 المنوفية - أشمون التعليمية

The Tahya Masr Bridge is the world's widest suspension bridge. It opened in Cairo. It is 540 m long. More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They took 32 months to finish the bridge.

5 الشرقية - ديرب نجم التعليمية

Tourists visit Egypt every day. They go to The Valley of the Kings in Luxor. At dawn is the best time to go there. It's the quietest time of the day.

6 البحيرة - كوم حماده التعليمية

Robinson Crusoe is an adventure story by Daniel Defoe. Crusoe was a sailor. One day, his ship sank because of a terrible storm. Crusoe went to a nearby island.

7 الاسماعيلية - الاسماعيلية التعليمية

There are many famous places in the world. The Great Pyramid is in Egypt in Giza. China is famous for The Shanghai Tower. Kuwait has Al Hamra Tower.

8 الدقهلية - شرق المنصورة التعليمية

Ali visited his friend Sami in his house last Tuesday. They played volleyball. They went to the sports center to go swimming in the pool. When he came back home his mother helped him with his homework.

9 الغربية - زفتى التعليمية

My family likes many hobbies. My dad likes reading English stories. My mum doesn't like playing chess. My sister Nadia is fifteen years old. We like our Dad, He is always happy.

10 اسكندرية - وسط التعليمية

In summer, I go to the beach. I go by car with my family. I jump up high when there is a wave. My brother likes playing with his beach bike.

11 الفيوم - سنورس التعليمية

The Tahya Masr Bridge opened in May 2019. It crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. It has a glass floor. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset for a beautiful view of the city.

12 بني سويف - ببا التعليمية

We should save our planet, the Earth. We can plant trees to keep our air healthy. We shouldn't throw rubbish because it is dangerous.

13 المنيا - العدوة التعليمية

Arwa is ten years old. Last Monday was her birthday. Her family went to the museum. Her father was at work. He couldn't go with her. They saw some old statues.

14 أسيوط - أسيوط التعليمية

There are many places in Egypt. People enjoy walking across the Tahya Masr Bridge. It has a special glass floor. You can see the river under your feet. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset.

15 الوادي الجديد - الداخلة التعليمية

Al Azhar Park in Egypt is the largest and most beautiful Park in Cairo. The Park has trees and plants. Many people like going there in their free time. They go there because it is beautiful.

16 البحر الأحمر - سفاجا التعليمية

Hisham and his mum went to the shops. She wanted to buy him a new shirt. They went there by car. They came back home at 3 o clock.

17 مطروح - مطروح التعليمية

There are many sea animals. The shark is one of them. It is very dangerous -It lives in the oceans. The Shark has very strong teeth.

18 الأقصر - إسنا التعليمية

There are many sea animals like sharks. It is the most dangerous sea animal. It uses 20,000 teeth in its life.

19 الأزهر الشريف - البحر الأحمر

Yesterday , my family and I went to the park. We had a lot of fun.

20 الأزهر الشريف - بالقليوبية الأزهرية

We went to the Red Sea. It was amazing. My friend likes windsurfing but there was no time to try it.

21 الأزهر الشريف - قطاع المعاهد الأزهرية

Daniel Defoe wrote Robinson Crusoe. It is an adventure story. When there was a big storm, he swam to a nearby island.

22 الأزهر الشريف - لمنطقة المنيا الأزهرية

Trees are important things in our life. You can plant some trees like banana, peach and mango trees. Planting trees helps our air to be clean.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

أهم الافعال غير المنتظمة الواردة بالمنهج

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
bear	تلد	bore	born
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
break	يكسر / ينكسر	broke	broken
build	يبنى	built	built
catch	يصطاد/يمسك	caught	caught
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
drive	يقود/يصطحب (بالسيارة)	drove	driven
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
fall	يسقط	fell	fallen
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
find	يجد	found	found
fly	يطير	flew	flown
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
get up	يستيقظ	got up	got up
give	يعطى	gave	given
go	يذهب	went	gone
grow	ينمو/يزرع	grew	grown
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
hide	يخفى/ يختفى	hid	hidden
hit	يضرب/يصدم	hit	hit
hurt	يصيب/يؤذى	hurt	hurt
keep	يحتفظ بـ/يحفظ	kept	kept
know	يعرف	knew	known

learn	يتعلم	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
lose	يخسر / يضيع	lost	lost
make	يصنع / يجعل	made	made
mean	يعني	meant	meant
meet	يقابل	met	met
pay	يدفع (مالاً)	paid	paid
put	يضع	put	put
read	يقرأ	read	read
ride	يركب	rode	ridden
show	يعرض	showed	shown
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
spend	يقضي/ينفق	spent	spent
take	يستقل (مركبة) - يستغرق (وقت) - يأخذ	took	taken
take off	يخلع (ملابس)	took off	taken off
teach	يدرّس	taught	taught
think	يعتقد/يفكر	thought	thought
throw away	يتخلص من	threw away	thrown away
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	woken up
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
win	يفوز	won	won
write	يؤلف (موسيقى)/يكتب	wrote	written